







STEIGER's Latin Series.

AHN'S
LATIN GRAMMAR.

WITH
REFERENCES TO THE EXERCISES

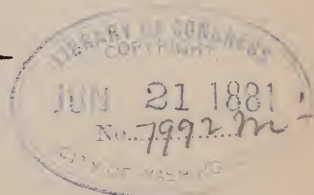
IN THE
FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD LATIN BOOKS.

BY
Dr. P. HENN.

NEW YORK:

E. STEIGER & CO.

1881.



97

PA 2087
A 475
1881

REQUEST.

The undersigned, in their efforts to secure the greatest possible correctness in their educational publications, will feel obliged for the suggestion of improvements.

E. Steiger & Co., Publishers.

Copyright, 1881, by E. STEIGER & Co.

Press of
E. Steiger & Co., N. Y.

P R E F A C E.

AHN'S Latin Grammar forms part of a series which has been undertaken with the design to facilitate the study of Latin for beginners. The author desires to state at the outset that this volume is in no respect a condensation of the *First*, *Second*, and *Third Latin Books*. It is constructed on a plan of its own, and with a twofold object in view: first, to provide a complete grammatical course for those teachers who prefer the synthetic method to the exclusion of the analytic, and secondly, to supply for reference in study a really compendious grammar, which may answer the needs of young scholars, while it is sufficiently comprehensive and full for more advanced students — in a word, the first and also the last grammar in the student's hands.

In pursuance of this plan, the *Grammar* retains from the *First*, *Second*, and *Third Latin Books* the general statement of grammatical facts in the exact form and language of those books, but, of course, in the traditional presentation of synthetic grammar. In the treatment of **Etymology** the following have been the leading features. While scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Of the stem theory especially the author has meant to place before the learner just so much as may be used to explain difficulties — not to multiply them. The pupil's attention should be directed first to what most needs to be learned, viz.: **the etymological forms themselves**. With this in view, the *Grammar* embraces all the important features of the series which are of practical assistance to the learner, particularly during the first year. The sharp distinction, for instance, of inflectional endings by **bold-faced** type is a matter of no small importance if we wish to make the pupil from the very outset so familiar with all the inflections that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur.

Of course, a *real* understanding he will obtain only by learning *how those inflections arose*, and here again the brief, clear and practical rules on the subject will be found to simplify a very complex matter, and to remove perhaps the greatest difficulty in the study of Latin grammar. As complementary to the etymological part the careful classification and definition of derivative endings cannot fail to be valuable for constant reference, if not for class study.

In the treatment of **Syntax** the points which have received particular attention are: to set forth the facts of classical Latin (represented by Caesar and Cicero) just as they are in themselves; to describe as fairly and briefly as possible the actual uses of syntactical forms, to illustrate them by carefully selected examples, and, withal, to bear constantly in mind that this Course is meant to lead at the earliest possible moment to the reading of the classical authors. It will be for professional teachers to say whether the endeavor to reach this practical end has been successful.

To furnish to teachers who may so desire, the opportunity of drilling their pupils in the more important rules and principles while they are learning them, references to the corresponding exercises in the *First*, *Second*, and *Third Latin Books* are inserted throughout this *Grammar*. The detailed **Index of Subjects** will be found to contain every topic in the text.

To summarize: the design of this Latin Series is to enable pupils to gain a thorough knowledge of Latin — not without honest exertions, yet with the greatest possible ease.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

<i>General Division of the Subject.</i>	Page 1
PART I. — PHONOLOGY.	
<i>Alphabet; Classification</i>	1
<i>Pronunciation</i>	3
<i>Roman Method</i>	3
<i>Continental Method</i>	4
<i>English Method</i>	5
<i>Syllables</i>	6
<i>Quantity</i>	6
<i>Accent</i>	7
PART II. — ETYMOLOGY.	
<i>The Parts of Speech</i>	7
SUBSTANTIVES	8-48
<i>Gender</i>	8
<i>Number and Case</i>	10
<i>Declensions</i>	10
<i>General Rules</i>	11
<i>First Declension</i>	12
<i>Second Declension</i>	13
<i>Adjectives</i>	16
<i>Third Declension</i>	20
<i>Formation of the Genitive</i>	20
<i>Adjectives</i>	33
<i>Remarks on Certain Cases</i>	35
<i>Greek Nouns</i>	38
<i>Gender in Third Declension</i>	38
<i>Fourth Declension</i>	42
<i>Fifth Declension</i>	43
<i>Irregular Nouns</i>	44
<i>Proper Names</i>	47
ADJECTIVES	48-53
<i>Declension</i>	48
<i>Comparison</i>	50
NUMERALS	54-59
<i>Numeral Adjectives</i>	54
<i>Numeral Adverbs</i>	58

PRONOUNS	Page 59-65
<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	59
<i>Pronouns of the Third Person</i>	61
<i>Demonstrative</i>	61
<i>Determinative</i>	62
<i>Relative</i>	63
<i>Interrogative</i>	64
<i>Indefinite</i>	64
<i>Pronominal Adjectives</i>	65
VERBS.....	66-145
<i>Voices</i>	66
<i>Tenses</i>	67
<i>Moods</i>	67
<i>Verbal Nouns and Adjectives</i>	68
<i>Numbers and Persons</i>	69
<i>The Four Conjugations</i>	69
<i>Simple Forms</i>	70
<i>Compound Forms</i>	72
<i>Periphrastic Conjugation</i>	75
<i>First Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	77
<i>Second Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	80
<i>Third Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	84
<i>Fourth Conjugation (Paradigm)</i>	88
<i>Deponent Verbs (Paradigms)</i>	92
<i>Appendix to Third Conjugation (Verbs in īō)</i>	100
<i>Special Forms in Conjugation</i>	103
<i>Formation of the Principal Parts</i>	105
<i>in the First Conjugation</i>	106
<i>in the Second Conjugation</i>	108
<i>in the Third Conjugation</i>	112
<i>Stems in u, v</i>	113
<i>Verbs in īō</i>	114
<i>Stems in d, t</i>	115
<i>Stems in b, p</i>	118
<i>Stems in c, g, q, h, ct</i>	119
<i>Stems in l, m, n, r</i>	121
<i>Stems in s, x</i>	124
<i>Stems in sc (Inceptives)</i>	124
<i>in the Fourth Conjugation</i>	129
<i>Irregular Verbs</i>	130
<i>Defective Verbs</i>	141
<i>Impersonal Verbs</i>	144

ADVERBS.....	Page 145-151
<i>Primitive and Derivative</i>	145
<i>Comparison</i>	150
PREPOSITIONS	151
CONJUNCTIONS	152-154
<i>Co-ordinating</i>	152
<i>Subordinating</i>	153
INTERJECTIONS	155
WORD-FORMATION	155-168
<i>Derivation of Verbs</i>	155
<i>of Substantives</i>	158
<i>of Adjectives</i>	161
<i>Composition of Verbs</i>	164
<i>of Substantives</i>	168
<i>of Adjectives</i>	168

PART III. — SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE.....	169
<i>Subject and Predicate</i>	169
<i>Attribute and Apposition</i>	172
<i>Agreement of Pronouns</i>	173
<i>The Order of Words</i>	175
CONSTRUCTION OF CASES	176-208
<i>Genitive with Substantives</i>	176
<i>with Adjectives</i>	178
<i>with Verbs</i>	179
<i>Accusative, Direct Object</i>	182
<i>two Accusatives</i>	183
<i>with Impersonal Verbs</i>	184
<i>Idiomatic Uses</i>	185
<i>Dative with Verbs</i>	185
<i>with Adjectives</i>	189
<i>Ethical Dative</i>	190
<i>Ablative of Cause</i>	190
<i>of Means and Instrument</i>	191
<i>of Limitation</i>	191
<i>of Comparison</i>	191
<i>of Manner</i>	192
<i>of Quality</i>	193
<i>of Price</i>	193
<i>of Separation, Plenty and Want</i>	194
<i>in Special Constructions</i>	196

<i>Time, Space, Place</i>	Page 197-207
<i>Use of Prepositions</i>	197
<i>Time</i>	204
<i>Space</i>	206
<i>Place</i>	207
SPECIAL USES of <i>Substantives</i>	209
of <i>Adjectives</i>	210
of <i>Pronouns</i>	211
SYNTAX OF THE VERB	214-246
<i>Use of Tenses</i>	214
<i>Sequence of Tenses</i>	217
<i>Use of the Indicative</i>	219
<i>Independent Uses of the Subjunctive</i>	220
<i>Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive</i>	221
<i>Consecutive and Final Conjunctions</i> ..	221
<i>Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions</i>	225
<i>Temporal Conjunctions</i>	226
<i>Causal Conjunctions</i>	227
<i>Conditional Conjunctions</i>	228
<i>Relative Clauses with Subjunctive</i>	230
<i>Direct Questions</i>	231
<i>Indirect Questions</i>	233
<i>The Imperative</i>	234
<i>The Infinitive</i>	235
<i>Accusative with the Infinitive</i>	236
<i>Tenses of the Infinitive</i>	238
<i>Nominative with the Infinitive</i>	239
<i>Direct Discourse</i>	239
<i>Indirect Discourse</i>	239
<i>Participles</i>	241
<i>Ablative Absolute</i>	242
<i>Gerund</i>	243
<i>Gerundive</i>	243
<i>Supine and its Equivalents</i>	245
CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	246-259
<i>Copulative</i>	246
<i>Disjunctive</i>	247
<i>Adversative</i>	248
<i>Causal</i>	249
<i>Illative</i>	249
<i>Corresponsive</i>	249

POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY	Page 250-256
<i>Quantity. General Rules</i>	250
<i>Middle Syllables</i>	251
<i>Final Syllables</i>	253
<i>Monosyllables</i>	254
<i>Compounds</i>	255
<i>Figures of Prosody</i>	255
ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION	257-268
<i>Feet. Rhythm</i>	257
<i>Dactylic Hexameter</i>	260
<i>Elegiac Pentameter</i>	261
<i>Iambic Trimeter</i>	261
<i>Compound Verses</i>	261
<i>Metres of Horace</i>	263
<i>Index of the Metres of Horace</i>	267

MISCELLANEOUS.

<i>The Roman Calendar</i>	269
<i>Roman Money, Weights, and Measures</i>	272
<i>Abbreviations</i>	273
<i>Principal Latin Authors</i>	274
INDEX OF VERBS	277
INDEX OF SUBJECTS	288

LATIN GRAMMAR.

GENERAL DIVISION OF THE SUBJECT.

I. Latin Grammar is a description of the usages of the Latin language according to the different ways in which words (*vocabŭla*) are put together to form speech (*oratio*). It is divided into three parts:

I. Phonology which deals with the elementary sounds in the Latin language.

II. Etymology which treats of the forms of single words—**Inflection**—and of derivation and composition—**Word-formation**.

III. Syntax which treats of the arrangement and combination of words in sentences.

PART FIRST.

PHONOLOGY.

2. Nearly all words are composed of articulate sounds. These are represented to the eye by the letters of the **Alphabet** which is the same as the English, except that it has no **w**.

The **Latin Alphabet** consists, strictly, of but twenty-three letters, **i** and **j** being anciently but one character, as likewise **u** and **v**. During the classical age, **y** and **z** were recognized as *Greek* letters, and **x** was the twenty-first and *last* letter of the Latin alphabet (see **4.** below).

3. The **Alphabetical Names** still most generally used in English schools, are the English. Yet, it is more probable that in the ancient spelling of Latin the letters were named in the following manner:

a	A	ah	m	M	em
b	B	bay	n	N	en
c	C	kay	o	O	o
d	D	day	p	P	pay
e	E	ay	q	Q	koo
f	F	eff	r	R	er
g	G	gay	s	S	ess
h	H	hah	t	T	tay
i	I	ee (<i>vowel</i>)	u	U	oo (<i>vowel</i>)
j	J	ee (<i>consonant</i>)	v	V	oo (<i>consonant</i>)
k	K	kah	x	X	ix
l	L	el	y	Y	ipseelon
z			Z	tsaytah	

The Latin uses capital initial letters at the beginning of sentences; also for all proper names, and for substantives and adjectives derived from proper names.

4. The **Vowels** are: a, e, i, o, u, y. All other letters, except the aspirate h, are consonants. Originally, i and u were used both as vowels and as consonants, and supplied the place of j and v. y and z occur in Greek words only.

5. The **Diphthongs** are: ae, oe, au, eu.

6. **Consonants** are classified according to the principal *organs* by which they are produced, as:

Labials (*lip-sounds*): b, p, f, v, m;

Dentals (*tooth-sounds*): d, t, n, s;

Linguals (*tongue-sounds*): l, r;

Gutturals (*throat-sounds*): c, g, k, q;

and according to the *mode of utterance*, as:

Liquids which can be uttered without a vowel:

l, m, n, r, s;

Mutes which cannot be perfectly sounded without a vowel:

b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t.

7. **Double Consonants** are:

z = dz in *adze*; x = cs (*gs*).

PRONUNCIATION.

8. The **Pronunciation** of Latin is different in different countries. In the United States, general usage is now strongly in favor of either the **Roman** or the **Continental Method**, the difference between these two not being very considerable. Many persons, however, prefer to retain the **English Method**, which has been the prevailing system of pronunciation among English-speaking scholars for the last two or three centuries.*

Roman Method.

9. By the **Roman, or Phonetic Method**, *every letter has always the same sound.*

Sounds of the Vowels.

10. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long or short. Vowels marked thus: **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** are long; marked thus: **ǎ ě ĭ** **ō ũ ŷ** are short.

ā = *a* in *father*

ē = *e* in *prey*

ī = *i* in *machine*

ō = *o* in *bone*

ū = *oo* in *boot*

ŷ = *i* in *machine*

ǎ = *a* in *idea*

ě = *e* in *met*

ĭ = *i* in *holiest*

ō = *o* in *obey*

ũ = *u* in *full*

ŷ = *i* in *holiest*

Sounds of the Diphthongs.

11. **Diphthongs** are pronounced by the rapid successive utterance of the elements forming them.

ae = *ay* in *aye*

oe = *o* in *world*

au = *ou* in *house*

eu = *oy* in *boy* (nearly)

The sound of **eu** is much disputed; many scholars contend for **eu** as English *ew*, in *few*.

12. All diphthongs are long, as: **fōedŷs**, *a treaty*.

13. To denote that two successive vowels which might otherwise be taken for a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, the **Diæresis** (") is placed over the second vowel, as: **pōĕtā**, *a poet*.

* For class-instruction in Latin pronunciation and current reading **AHN-HENN'S Latin Reading Charts** will be found valuable.

Sounds of the Consonants.

14. The **Consonants** are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

c is hard and sounds in all situations like **k**, as: **Cicĕrŏ** = **Kikĕro**.

ch in Latin words is a **k**; in Greek words a **k** with the subaddition of **h**, commonly pronounced as **ch** in German. The latter sound can only be acquired through means of oral instruction.

g is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

j has the sound of **y** in *you*.

qu = **kw** (nearly). **gŭ** and **sŭ** before another vowel when both vowels belong to the same syllable = **gw, sw**, as: *lingŭă, lingwa; sŭĕtŭs, swetus*.

rh is pronounced like **r** simply.

s and **x** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

t has the same sound as **t** in English, but is never aspirated; **th** is pronounced like **t** simply.

v = **w** in *we*.

Continental Method.

15. In the pronunciation of the vowels, the **Continental Method** is identical with the Roman. As to the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English Method, the following letters deserve special notice.

t before **ĭ** (short **i**) with another vowel, has the sharp sound of **th** in *thin*; when preceded by another **t, s, or x**, or when **i** is long (**ī**), and in Greek words, **t** retains its original sound, as: *mix' tī ō, a mixture*.

c before **e, i, y, ae, oe, eu**, is pronounced like **ts** in *nets*; in every other position it is hard like the English **k**. **cĭ** before a vowel has nearly the same sound as **tĭ** in the same position, and they are sometimes interchangeable.

ch = **k** with the subaddition of **h**, has a hard guttural sound like the German **ch**. **sch** is pronounced by the successive utterance of **s** and **ch**. Neither of these sounds (**ch** and **sch**) has an equivalent in English, and they must be learned from the lips of a teacher.

English Method.

16. As a general rule, those who prefer to retain the **English Method**, should read a Latin sentence *just as if the words were English*, carefully observing the directions which follow, especially the Rules of Accent (**29–31.**), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters.

Sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs.

17. Vowels have their long English sounds, as in *fate, me, pine, no, tube, type*, in the following situations:

at the end of a word, as: *dōm' ī nī, masters; cor' nū, a horn; lē' ō, a lion;*

before another vowel or diphthong, as: *Dē' ūs, God; vī' ā, a way; jā' nū ā, a door;*

when ending an accented syllable; as: *pā' tēr, a father; dē' dīt, he gave; vī' vūs, living; sō' lūs, alone; lŷ' rā, a lyre.*

EXCEPTIONS: **a** unaccented has the sound of final **a** in *America*; as: *men' sā, a table.* In *tibī, to thee*, and *sibī, to one's self*, final **i** has its short sound.

18. Vowels have their short English sounds, as in *fat, met, pin, not, tub, symbol*, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable, as: *mag' nūs, great; fin' gō, I fashion; cor' pūs, a body; mens, the mind.*

EXCEPTIONS: *pōst, after*, is pronounced as the same word in English; the termination **ēs** like the English word *ease*, and the termination **ōs** like *ose* in *morose*, as: *ā' vēs, birds; pū' ē rōs, boys.*

19. The Diphthongs **ae** and **oe** are pronounced as **e** would be in the same place; **au** like *aw*, and **eu** like *ew*, as: *poe' nā, punishment; au' rūm, gold; Eurō' pā, Europe; Cae' sār, Caesar.*

Sounds of the Consonants.

20. The Consonants are pronounced, in general, as in English. The following, however, require special notice:

c and **g** are soft (like **s** and **j**) before **e, i, y, ae**, and **oe**, and hard in other situations, as: *cen' tūm, a hundred; cī' vīs, a citizen; cā' dō, I fall; gē' nū, the knee; grā' nūm, a grain.*

ch is hard like **k**, as: **ch**ö'rŭs, *a choir*.

The consonants **c**, **s**, **t**, immediately preceded by the accent, and standing before **i**, followed by another vowel, are aspirated, **c**, **s**, and **t** taking the sound of **sh**, **x** that of **ksh**, as: sŏ' cĭ ŭs (so'-she us), *a companion*; Hel vĕ' tĭ ħ (Hel ve' shi a), *Switzerland*. — **c** following an accented syllable has also the same sound before **eu** and **yo**, as: cā dŭ' cĕ ŭs (ca du' she us), *a herald's staff*. — **t** preceded by another **t**, **s**, or **x**, has its hard sound, as: o' stĭ ŭm, *a door*; mix' tĭ ŏ, *a mixture*.

Syllables.

21. A **Syllable** is one or more sounds pronounced by a single impulse of the voice; it consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

22. A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the latter, as: si'tis, *thirst*.

23. Of several consonants coming together between two vowels, those which can be used to begin a Latin word, belong to the next syllable, as: men'să, *a table*; tem'plŭm, *a temple*; ca'stră, *a military camp*.

24. Compound words must be divided into the words which compose them, as: post'ĕă, *afterward*. But if the former part has dropped its termination, the compound word is to be divided like a simple word, as: tă met' sĭ (contracted from tă'mĕn et'sĭ), *although*.

25. The last syllable of the word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

Quantity.

The following are general Rules of **Quantity**:

26. A syllable is long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as: sŏl, *the sun*; aurum, *gold*; *by position* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or by **j**, **x**, **z**; as: aptus, *fit*; collis, *hill*; saxum, *rock*.

27. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with **l** or **r** is common (anceps), that is, it may be long or short in verse, as in tenĕbrae, *darkness*; in prose it is invariably short.

28. A vowel before another vowel is short, no account being taken of **h**, as: Dĕŭs, *God*; trăhŏ, *I draw*.

Accent.

The following are Rules of **Accent**:

29. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as: *lă' nă, wool.*

30. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *penult*, if that is long, as: *man dă' tă, orders*; if it is short, then on the *antepenult*, as: *ă' dă măs, the diamond.*

31. When **-quě, -ně, -vě** are joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before these words, whether it be short or long, as: *terră'quě, and the earth.*

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

32. The classes into which words are divided, according to their uses, are called **Parts of Speech**; namely,

the **Substantive**, which is the name of a person, thing, or idea; as: *vîr, a man; dômûs, a house; diēs irae, the day of wrath*;

the **Adjective**, which is used to qualify a noun, as: *rără âvis, a rare bird*;

the **Pronoun**, which points out some person or thing, as: *tû, thou; hœc, that*;

the **Verb**, which is used to assert or declare something, as: *dûm spîrô, spērô, while I breathe, I hope*;

the **Adverb**, which is used to qualify a verb or an adjective, as: *nôtă bënë, mark well*;

the **Preposition**, which joins a word to some other word to show the relation between them, as: *lûpûs în fâbûlă, the wolf in the fable*;

the **Conjunction**, which connects sentences together, or words used in the same sentence, as: *ôră ęt lâbôră, pray and work*;

the **Interjection**, which is an exclamation, expressive of feeling; as: *O cûrăs hómînûm! O the cares of men!*

33. The word **Noun** is used as a name for both Nouns and Adjectives, the former being distinguished as **nouns substantive**, or **Substantives**, and the latter as **nouns adjective**, or **Adjectives**.

34. Inflection is a change made chiefly in the end of a word, to show its grammatical relation.

35. *Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns* have inflections of Declension, to denote number, gender, and case. *Verbs* have inflections of Conjugation, to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

36. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called *Particles*; these are *Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections*.

SUBSTANTIVES.

✓ **37.** The **Substantive** is the name of a *Person* or *Thing* (**Concrete**), or of a *Quality* (**Abstract**).

38. Concrete Substantives are either:

Proper, *i. e.* peculiar to certain persons or things, as: *Hömērūs, Homer; Tībērīs, Tiber;* or

Common to a whole class, as: *arbōr, a tree;* or

Collective, denoting in the singular *more than one*, as: *exercītūs, an army.* To this class belong also the names of **Materials**, as: *lignūm, wood.*

Gender.

39. There are, as in English, three **Genders**: **Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.** The gender of Latin nouns, in many instances, is to be determined by their *signification*, according to the following

General Rules.

40. **Masculine** are the names of males, rivers, winds, and months, as: *nautā, a sailor; Rhēnūs, the Rhine; nōtūs, the south-wind; Aprīlis, April.*

41. **EXCEPTIONS:** In the following words, Gender is determined by the *termination*, and not by the *distinction of sex*:

cōpiaē, troops

custōdiaē, guards

ōpēraē, laborers

vīgīliaē, watchmen

excūbiaē, sentinels

mancīpiūm, a slave

auxīliā, auxiliary troops.

42. Feminine are: the names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees, as: *virgō, a maid; Aegyptūs, Egypt; Nēāpōlis, Naples; Rhōdūs, Rhodes; pīrūs, a pear-tree.*

43. The numerous **EXCEPTIONS** are chiefly names of towns, which, as to gender, follow the *termination*, instead of the *signification*, as:

Masculine: Argī, *Argos*; **Neuter:** Sāguntūm, *Saguntum*.

44. Neuter are: all Indeclinable Nouns, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely as such, without reference to their meaning, as: *nīhīl, nothing; scīrē tūūm, thy knowledge; hōc dīū, this (word) diu.*

45. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of **Common Gender**:

artīfex, <i>an artist</i>	dux, <i>a leader</i>	testīs, <i>a witness</i>
cīvīs, <i>a citizen</i>	hērēs, <i>an heir</i>	jūdex, <i>a judge</i>
cōmēs, <i>a companion</i>	pārens, <i>a parent</i>	pātrūēlis, <i>a cousin</i>
custōs, <i>a keeper</i>	jūvēnīs, <i>a youth</i>	vātēs, <i>a prophet.</i>

46. Names of **Persons** with different terminations to distinguish masculines and feminines, are called **substantīva mobīlīa**; as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgistēr	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēgīnā	<i>a king, queen.</i>

47. Names of **Animals** deserve special notice. With some of them gender is expressed by *difference of termination*, as:

lēō, <i>a lion</i>	lēaenā, <i>a lioness</i>
cervūs, <i>a stag</i>	cervā, <i>a hind;</i>

others are of the *common gender*, as:

hīc bōs, <i>this ox</i>	haec bōs, <i>this cow;</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------

others have for *both sexes* one grammatical gender; these are called **epicoena**. Thus *lēpūs, a hare*, is always masculine, and *vulpēs, fox*, always feminine. If necessary, the sexes are distinguished by *mās, male*, and *fēmīnā, female*, as:

vulpēs mās, a male fox lēpūs fēmīnā, a female hare.

48. The gender of **Substantives** not determined by their signification, is to be ascertained by their termination, according to the **Special Rules** of Gender under the several declensions. **Adjectives** distinguish gender by *different forms* in the *same words*, and agree in gender with their Substantives,

Number and Case.

49. The Latin, like the English, has **two Numbers**; the **Singular** Number denotes one, the **Plural**, more than one. There are **six Cases** in Latin: the **Nominative**, **Genitive**, **Dative**, **Accusative**, **Vocative**, and **Ablative**.

The **Nominative** is the case of the subject of the sentence, and answers the question *Who?* or *What?*

The **Genitive** may be translated by the English Possessive or with the preposition *of*; it answers the question *Whose?* or *Whereof?*

The **Dative** may usually be translated by the preposition *to* or *for*, answering the question *To whom?* or *For whom?* Sometimes it corresponds to the English Objective.

The **Accusative** nearly corresponds to the English Objective; it answers the question *Whom?* or *What?*

The **Vocative** is the case of direct address.

The **Ablative** may usually be translated by the prepositions *from*, *by*, *with*; it answers the questions *Where?* *Whence?* or *Wherewith?*

50. According to their relations, the cases are divided into **cāsūs rectī**, *Independent Cases*, and **cāsūs obliquī**, *Dependent Cases*. **Nominative** and **Vocative** are **cāsūs rectī**; **Genitive**, **Dative**, **Accusative**, and **Ablative**, **cāsūs obliquī**.

Declensions.

51. The formation of the several cases is called **Declension**. There are **five Declensions** in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the **Genitive Singular**.

First Declension.	Genitive Singular	ae
Second Declension.	“	“ ī
Third Declension.	“	“ īs
Fourth Declension.	“	“ ūs
Fifth Declension.	“	“ ēī

52. The **Stem** is that part of the word which remains after taking away the Inflections; its last letter is called the **Characteristic**.

53. The stem may be found from the **Genitive Plural**, in the *First*, *Second* and *Fifth Declensions* by cutting off **rūm**; in the *Third* and *Fourth* by cutting off **ūm**.

54. CASE-ENDINGS of the Five Declensions.*

FIRST DECLENSION.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā (ē, ās, ēs)	ae
Gen.	ae (ēs)	ārūm
Dat.	ae	īs (ābūs)
Acc.	ām (ēn)	ās
Voc.	ā (ā, ē)	ae
Abl.	ā (ē)	īs (ābūs)

SECOND DECLENSION.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ūs, ēr, īr, ūr, ūm	ī, Neut. ā
Gen.	ī	ōrūm
Dat.	ō	īs
Acc.	ūm	ōs, Neut. ā
Voc.	ē, ēr, īr, ūr, ūm	ī, Neut. ā
Abl.	ō	īs

THIRD DECLENSION.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā, ē, ī, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, x	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)
Gen.	īs	ūm (īūm)
Dat.	ī	ībūs
Acc.	ēm (īm) Neut. like Nom.	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)
Voc.	like Nom.	ēs, Neut. ā (īā)
Abl.	ē (ī)	ībūs

FOURTH DECLENSION.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ūs, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā
Gen.	ūs	ūūm
Dat.	ūī, ū	ībūs (ūbūs)
Acc.	ūm, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā
Voc.	ūs, ū	ūs, Neut. ūā
Abl.	ū	ībūs (ūbūs)

FIFTH DECLENSION.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ēs	ēs
Gen.	ēī, ēī	ērūm
Dat.	ēī, ēī	ēbūs
Acc.	ēm	ēs
Voc.	ēs	ēs
Abl.	ē	ēbūs

55. The following are General Rules applying to all Declensions:

1. In both numbers the **Vocative** is the same as the **Nominative**, except in the singular of nouns in **ūs** of the *Second Declension*.
2. Neuters have the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative** alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, always end in **ā**.
3. The **Dative** and **Ablative** plural are always alike.

* This *Synopsis* of Case-endings is embodied in **AHN-HENN's Latin Paradigm Charts**, printed in large type and intended for permanent display on the wall.

First Declension.

56. Latin nouns which have **ae** in the Genitive Singular, are of the **First Declension**. They have the Nominative *like the stem*, ending in **ă**.

Singular.

Nom.	men' să , a table
Gen.	men' sae , of a table
Dat.	men' sae , to a table
Acc.	men' săm , a table
Voc.	men' să , O table
Abl.	men' să , with a table

Plural.

men' sae , tables
men să' rūm , of tables
men' sīs , to tables
men' sās , tables
men' sae , O tables
men' sīs , with tables

57. The Latin has no Article; therefore *mensă* may be rendered *a table*, or *the table*, or *table*, according to the connection.

Examples for Practice:

<i>lună</i> , -ae, the moon	<i>rână</i> , -ae, a frog
<i>stellă</i> , -ae, a star	<i>terră</i> , -ae, the earth, land
<i>viă</i> , -ae, a way, road	<i>ălaudă</i> , -ae, a lark
<i>insulă</i> , -ae, an island	<i>rösă</i> , -ae, a rose
<i>naută</i> , -ae, a sailor	<i>viölă</i> , -ae, a violet [15-18] *

58. In composition with *păter*, *măter*, *filiūs*, *filiă*, the word *fămiliă* has in the Genitive Singular *fămiliās*, e. g., *păterfămiliās*, the father of a family.

59. The Dative and Ablative Plural of *děă*, a goddess, and *filiă*, a daughter, end in *ăbūs*, viz.: *děăbūs*, *filiăbūs*, to distinguish them from the same cases of *děūs*, a god, and *filiūs*, a son.

Greek Nouns.

60. To the First Declension belong also some Greek Nouns, ending in **ē**, **ās**, **ēs**. The declension of these nouns in the plural differs in no respect from that of Latin nouns of the First Declension.

Singular.

Nom.	ě pī' tō mē , epitome	bō' rē ās , north-wind	pŷ rī' tēs , flint
Gen.	ě pī' tō mēs	bō' rē ae	pŷ rī' tae
Dat.	ě pī' tō mae	bō' rē ae	pŷ rī' tae
Acc.	ě pī' tō mēn	bō' rē ām (ān)	pŷ rī' tēn
Voc.	ě pī' tō mē	bō' rē ā	pŷ rī' tē
Abl.	ě pī' tō mē	bō' rē ā	pŷ rī' tē

* These figures refer to the Exercises for translation in the *First*, *Second* and *Third Latin Books*.

Examples for Practice:

grammătice, -ēs, <i>grammar</i>	Messiās, -ae, <i>the Messiah</i>
ălōē, -ēs, <i>the aloe</i>	Lūcās, -ae, <i>Luke</i>
mūsice, -ēs, <i>music</i>	cōmētēs, -ae, <i>a comet</i>

Many of them have also regular Latin forms, as: plānētēs and plānētă, *a planet*. [101. 102.]

Rule of Gender.

61. Nouns of the First Declension ending in **ă** and **ē** are feminine; those in **ās** and **ēs** are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.

62. Nearly all the exceptions are such as are masculine from their signification, according to the **General Rule** above mentioned (55. 1.), as: naută, *a sailor*; also Hădriă, *the Adriatic*.

Second Declension.

63. Latin nouns whose genitive is **ī**, are of the **Second Declension**. In the nominative they end in **ūs**, **ēr**, **īr**, **ūr**, **ūm**. Those ending in **ūm** are neuter, the rest are masculine.

Singular.

Nom.	flū' vī ūs, <i>a river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>a roof</i>
Gen.	flū' vī ī, <i>of a river</i>	tec' tī, <i>of a roof</i>
Dat.	flū' vī ō, <i>to a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>to a roof</i>
Acc.	flū' vī ūm, <i>a river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>a roof</i>
Voc.	flū' vī ē, <i>O river</i>	tec' tūm, <i>O roof</i>
Abl.	flū' vī ō, <i>with a river</i>	tec' tō, <i>with a roof</i>

Plural.

Nom.	flū' vī ī, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>roofs</i>
Gen.	flū vī ō' rūm, <i>of rivers</i>	tec' tō' rūm, <i>of roofs</i>
Dat.	flū' vī īs, <i>to rivers</i>	tec' tīs, <i>to roofs</i>
Acc.	flū' vī ōs, <i>rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>roofs</i>
Voc.	flū' vī ī, <i>O rivers</i>	tec' tă, <i>O roofs</i>
Abl.	flū' vī īs, <i>with rivers</i>	tec' tīs, <i>with roofs</i>

In Nouns of the **Second Declension** the stem ends in **ō-**, as: flūvīō-, tectō-, pŭērō-, āgrō-.

In the **Genitive Singular** **īī**, from Substantives in **īūs**, **īūm**, is often contracted into **ī**, the accent remaining unchanged, as:

Appiūs, **Gen.** Appī consilīūm, **Gen.** consī'lī.

Examples for Practice:

dōmīnūs, -ī, <i>a master, lord</i>	caelūm, -ī, <i>the heaven, sky</i>
mundūs, -ī, <i>the world</i>	aurūm, -ī, <i>gold</i>
annūs, -ī, <i>a year</i>	ferrūm, -ī, <i>iron</i>
morbūs, -ī, <i>a disease</i>	mētallūm, -ī, <i>a metal</i>
ānimūs, -ī, <i>the mind, soul</i>	īnītūm, -ī, <i>a beginning</i>
discipulūs, -ī, <i>a scholar, pupil</i>	signūm, -ī, <i>a sign</i>
ventūs, -ī, <i>the wind</i>	insectūm, -ī, <i>an insect</i>
ēquūs, -ī, <i>a horse</i>	prātūm, -ī, <i>a meadow</i>
ōcūlūs, -ī, <i>an eye</i>	mendāciūm, -ī, <i>a lie</i>
hortūs, -ī, <i>a garden</i>	aedificiūm, -ī, <i>a building</i>

[19. 20]

64. Words of the **Second Declension**, ending in the nominative in **ēr** (**īr**, **ūr**) have dropped the original ending **ūs** of the nominative. In most of them the **ē** is only inserted in the **Nominative** and **Vocative**, and disappears in the other cases.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā' gēr, <i>a field</i>	ā' grī, <i>fields</i>
Gen.	ā' grī, <i>of a field</i>	ā' grō' rūm, <i>of fields</i>
Dat.	ā' grō, <i>to a field</i>	ā' grīs, <i>to fields</i>
Acc.	ā' grūm, <i>a field</i>	ā' grōs, <i>fields</i>
Voc.	ā' gēr, <i>O field</i>	ā' grī, <i>O fields</i>
Abl.	ā' grō, <i>with a field</i>	ā' grīs, <i>with fields</i>

Examples for Practice:

māgistēr, -rī, <i>a teacher, master</i>	cultēr, -rī, <i>a knife</i>
libēr, -rī, <i>a book</i>	āpēr, -rī, <i>a wild boar</i>
arbitēr, -rī, <i>a judge</i>	fābēr, -rī, <i>a smith</i>
austēr, -rī, <i>the south wind</i>	mīnistēr, -rī, <i>a servant</i>
cancēr, -rī, <i>a crab</i>	cāpēr, -rī, <i>a goat</i>

65. In other words ending in **ēr**, the **ē** of the **Nominative** belongs to the stem and is retained *through all the cases*, as:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	pū' ēr, <i>a boy</i>	pū' ē rī, <i>boys</i>
Gen.	pū' ē rī, <i>of a boy</i>	pū' ē rō' rūm, <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	pū' ē rō, <i>to a boy</i>	pū' ē rīs, <i>to boys</i>
Acc.	pū' ē rūm, <i>a boy</i>	pū' ē rōs, <i>boys</i>
Voc.	pū' ēr, <i>O boy</i>	pū' ē rī, <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	pū' ē rō, <i>with a boy</i>	pū' ē rīs, <i>with boys</i>

To this class belong:

Substantives: *ădultēr, -ī, an adulterer* *gĕnĕr, -ī, a son-in-law*
pŭēr, -ī, a boy *sōcĕr, -ī, a father-in-law*
vespĕr, -ī, evening *Lībĕr, -ī, Bacchus*
libĕrī, -ōrŭm, children

Adjectives: *aspĕr, aspĕră, aspĕrŭm, rough*
lăcĕr, lăcĕră, lăcĕrŭm, torn
mīsĕr, mīsĕră, mīsĕrŭm, wretched
prospĕr, prospĕră, prospĕrŭm, prosperous
tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm, tender
dextĕr, dext(ĕ)ră, dext(ĕ)rŭm, right.

Words ending in fĕr and gĕr from fĕrō, I bear, and gĕrō, I carry:

Lŭcĭfĕr, -ī, light-bringer
armĭgĕr, -ī, an armor-bearer
frŭgĭfĕr, frŭgĭfĕră, frŭgĭfĕrŭm, fruit-bearing
lănĭgĕr, lănĭgĕră, lănĭgĕrŭm, wool-bearing.

[23, 24.]

66. The only words in **īr** and **ŭr** are: *vĭr, -ī, a man*, with its compounds, as: *lĕvĭr, -ī, a brother-in-law*, and the masculine of the adjective *sătŭr, -ă, -ŭm, sated.*

67. Proper Nouns in **īŭs** omit **ĕ** in the Vocative, as: *Antō-nīŭs, Anthony*, *Antōnī*; likewise *fĭlīŭs, a son*, and *gĕnīŭs, a guardian angel*, make *fĭlī* and *gĕnī*. The possessive *mĕŭs, my*, (but not *mĕă, mĕŭm*) has *mī*, and *Dĕŭs, God*, has *Dĕŭs*. In the plural Nominative and Vocative, *dĕŭs* has *dīī* or *dī*; Genitive: *dĕōrŭm*; Dative and Ablative: *dīīs, dīs*.

68. In the Genitive plural of the Second Declension **ŭm** is often found for **ōrŭm**, especially in certain words denoting money, measure, or weight, as: *nummŭm* for *nummōrŭm, of moneys*; also in a few other words, as: *dĕŭm* for *dĕōrŭm*, *libĕrŭm* for *libĕrōrŭm*.

69. A few Greek Nouns of the Second Declension end in **ōs, ōn**, instead of **ŭs, ŭm**. Greek Nouns ending in **ĕŭs** (like *Orphĕŭs*) are thus declined:

Nom.	Or' phĕŭs	Dat.	Or' phĕ ō	Voc.	Or' phĕŭ
Gen.	Or' phĕ ī	Acc.	Or' phĕ ŭm	Abl.	Or' phĕ ō

[101. 102.]

Rule of Gender.

70. Nouns in **ūs**, **ēr**, **īr** are masculine; in **ūm** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.

71. Of nouns ending in **ūs** the names of towns, islands, and trees are **Feminine**, as: Cōrinthūs, *Corinth*; Sāmūs, *Samos*; pōpūls, *a poplar*, etc. (**42**); also:

alvūs, **-ī**, *the belly*

hūmūs, **-ī**, *soil*

cōlūs, **-ī**, *a distaff*

vannūs, **ī**, *a van*

and many Greek words of frequent occurrence, as:

diphthongūs, **-ī**, *a diphthong*

mēthōdūs, **-ī**, *a method*

pārāgrāphūs, **-ī**, *a paragraph*

dīālectūs, **-ī**, *a dialect*

The following in **ūs** are **Neuter**:

pēlāgūs, **-ī**, *the sea*; vulgūs, **-ī**, *the rabble*; virūs, **-ī**, *poison*;

their accusative, as of all neuters, is the same as the nominative, but they have no plural. [27. 28.]

Adjectives in **ūs**, **ā**, **ūm**.

72. Adjectives in **ūs**, **ā**, **ūm** are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine like substantives of the **First**.

bōnūs, bōnā, bōnūm, *good*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	bō' nūs	bō' nā	bō' nūm
Gen.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nī
Dat.	bō' nō	bō' nae	bō' nō
Acc.	bō' nūm	bō' nām	bō' nūm
Voc.	bō' nē	bō' nā	bō' nūm
Abl.	bō' nō	bō' nā	bō' nō

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nā
Gen.	bō nō' rūm	bō nā' rūm	bō nō' rūm
Dat.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs
Acc.	bō' nōs	bō' nās	bō' nā
Voc.	bō' nī	bō' nae	bō' nā
Abl.	bō' nīs	bō' nīs	bō' nīs

Examples for Practice:

sēdūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>busy</i>	mōdestūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>modest</i>
tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>timid</i>	bēātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>happy, blessed</i>
rōtundūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>round</i>	albūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>white</i>
ōdōrūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fragrant</i>	fulvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>yellow</i>
clārūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>bright, clear</i>	multūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>much, many</i>
lūcidūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shining</i>	magnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>great, large</i>
ardūūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>arduous, steep</i>	parvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>little, small</i>
umbrōsūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>shady</i>	hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>human</i>
garrulūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>garrulous</i>	vērūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>true</i>

[21. 22.]

73. Substantives and Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions are combined in the following manner:

Singular.

Nom.	nau'tā lae'tūs, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Gen.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>of a merry sailor</i>
Dat.	nau'tae lae'tō, <i>to a merry sailor</i>
Acc.	nau'tām lae'tūm, <i>a merry sailor</i>
Voc.	nau'tā lae'tē, <i>O merry sailor</i>
Abl.	nau'tā lae'tō, <i>with a merry sailor</i>

Plural.

Nom.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>merry sailors</i>
Gen.	nautā'rūm laetō'rūm, <i>of merry sailors</i>
Dat.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>to merry sailors</i>
Acc.	nau'tās lae'tōs, <i>merry sailors</i>
Voc.	nau'tae lae'tī, <i>O merry sailors</i>
Abl.	nau'tīs lae'tīs, <i>with merry sailors</i>

Singular.

Nom.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Gen.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>of a moderate dinner</i>
Dat.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>to a moderate dinner</i>
Acc.	coe'nām mō'dicām, <i>a moderate dinner</i>
Voc.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>O moderate dinner</i>
Abl.	coe'nā mō'dicā, <i>with a moderate dinner</i>

Plural.

Nom.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Gen.	coenā'rūm mō'dicā'rūm, <i>of moderate dinners</i>
Dat.	coe'nīs mō'dicīs, <i>to moderate dinners</i>
Acc.	coe'nās mō'dicās, <i>moderate dinners</i>
Voc.	coe'nae mō'dicae, <i>O moderate dinners</i>
Abl.	coe'nīs mō'dicīs, <i>with moderate dinners</i>

Singular.

Nom.	tec'tŭm al'tŭm, a high roof
Gen.	tec'tī al'tī, of a high roof
Dat.	tec'tō al'tō, to a high roof
Acc.	tec'tŭm al'tŭm, a high roof
Voc.	tec'tŭm al'tŭm, O high roof
Abl.	tec'tō al'tō, with a high roof

Plural.

Nom.	tec'tă al'tă, high roofs
Gen.	tec'tō'rŭm al'tō'rŭm, of high roofs
Dat.	tec'tīs al'tīs, to high roofs
Acc.	tec'tă al'tă, high roofs
Voc.	tec'tă al'tă, O high roofs
Abl.	tec'tīs al'tīs, with high roofs

Examples for Practice.

pōetă clărŭs, a famous poet	flŭviŭs lătŭs, a broad river
formică sędŭlă, the busy ant	collŭm longŭm, a long neck.

Adjectives in őr, ă, ŭm.

74. Adjectives in őr, ă, ŭm, are declined in the masculine and neuter like substantives of the **Second Declension**, and in the feminine, like substantives of the **First**.

nīgěr, nīgără, nīgřm, black

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	nī' gěr	nī' gră	nī' grŭm
Gen.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' grī
Dat.	nī' grō	nī' grae	nī' grō
Acc.	nī' grŭm	nī' grăm	nī' grŭm
Voc.	nī' gěr	nī' gră	nī' grŭm
Abl.	nī' grō	nī' gră	nī' grō

Plural.

Nom.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' gră
Gen.	nī' grō' rŭm	nī' gră' rŭm	nī' grō' rŭm
Dat.	nī' grīs	nī' grīs	nī' grīs
Acc.	nī' grōs	nī' grăs	nī' gră
Voc.	nī' grī	nī' grae	nī' gră
Abl.	nī' grīs	nī' grīs	nī' grīs

libēr, libērā, libērūm, *free*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	lī' běr	lī' bē rā	lī' bē rūm
Gen.	lī' bē rī	lī' bē rae	lī' bē rī
Dat.	lī' bē rō	lī' bē rae	lī' bē rō
Acc.	lī' bē rūm	lī' bē rām	lī' bē rūm
Voc.	lī' běr	lī' bē rā	lī' bē rūm
Abl.	lī' bē rō	lī' bē rā	lī' bē rō

Plural.

Nom.	lī' bē rī	lī' bē rae	lī' bē rā
Gen.	lī bē rō' rūm	lī bē rā' rūm	lī bē rō' rūm
Dat.	lī' bē rīs	lī' bē rīs	lī' bē rīs
Acc.	lī' bē rōs	lī' bē rās	lī' bē rā
Voc.	lī' bē rī	lī' bē rae	lī' bē rā
Abl.	lī' bē rīs	lī' bē rīs	lī' bē rīs

75. Most adjectives in **ēr, ā, ūm** drop the **ě** before the **r** like **nīgēr**. Examples are:

aegēr, aegrā, aegrūm, *sick*
 crēbēr, crēbrā, crēbrūm, *frequent*
 rūbēr, rūbrā, rūbrūm, *red*
 pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm, *beautiful, fine*
 sīnistēr, sīnistrā, sīnistrūm, *left*
 pīgēr, pigrā, pigrūm, *lazy*
 intēgēr, intēgrā, intēgrūm, *whole, entire*

76. A few adjectives in **ēr, ā, ūm** retain the **ě** throughout, like **libēr**. (See 65.) [25. 26.]

77. These nine adjectives have the genitive singular in **iūs**, and the dative in **ī** in all the genders:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Dative.
ālūs, -ā, -ūd, <i>another</i>	ālīūs	ālīī
nullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>no, not any, no one</i>	nullīūs	nullīī
sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>alone</i>	sōlīūs	sōlīī
tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>whole</i>	tōtīūs	tōtīī
ullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>	ullīūs	ullīī
ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>one</i>	ūnīūs	ūnīī
altēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>	altērīūs	altērīī
ūtēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>which (of two)</i>	utrīūs	utrīī
neutēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>neither</i>	neutrīūs	neutrīī

The plural is regular like that of **bōnūs**.

[71. 72.]

Third Declension.

78. Nouns whose genitive ends in **īs**, are of the **Third Declension**. Their nominative ends in

ă, ě, ĭ, ō, ŷ, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

79. In the Third Declension, the **stem** ends either in **ĭ** (**Vowel-stem**) or in a consonant (**Consonant-stem**). There are only two **u**-stems, **sū-s**, *a swine*, and **grū-s**, *a crane*. The stem can be found by cutting off **ŭm** from the **Genitive Plural**:

ăvis, <i>a bird</i>	Gen. Plur. āvīŭm	Stem āvī-
lāpis, <i>a stone</i>	“ lāpīdŭm	“ lāpīd-

80. All nouns having the *same* number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (**Parisyllabic**) have **Vowel-stems** in **ĭ**. They end in the Nominative in **īs, ěs, ě, āl, ār**, those in **āl** and **ār** having lost a final **ě**.

Nom. nāvis	Gen. nāvī-s	Nom. ānīmāl(ě)	Gen. ānīmālī-s
“ nūbēs	“ nūbī-s	“ calcār(ě)	“ calcārī-s
“ mārě	“ mārī-s		

81. All nouns *increasing* in the Genitive (**Imparisyllabic**) have **Consonant-stems**:

Nom. lāpis	Gen. lāpīd-īs	Nom. hōmō	Gen. hōmīn-īs
------------	---------------	-----------	---------------

Formation of the Genitive.

82. The **Entire Declension** of any Substantive of the Third Declension may be readily formed by substituting for the Genitive-ending **īs**, the proper endings of the other cases. Hence to decline a word correctly, in this Declension, we need to know how its **Genitive** is formed.

But we must bear in mind that **Neuters** always form the **Accusative** and **Vocative** cases in both numbers like the **Nominative**, and the **Nominative Plural** in **ă**. *This is a rule of highest importance.*

83. Nouns in **ă** are **Neuters** of Greek origin and change **ă** into **ătis** to form the genitive, as: **pōemă, pōemătis**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	põ ē' mǎ, <i>a poem</i>	põ ē' mǎ tǎ, <i>poems</i>
Gen.	põ ē' mǎ tīs, <i>of a poem</i>	põ ē' mǎ tǔm, <i>of poems</i>
Dat.	põ ē' mǎ tī, <i>to a poem</i>	põ ē mǎ' tī būs, <i>to poems</i>
Acc.	põ ē' mǎ, <i>a poem</i>	põ ē' mǎ tǎ, <i>poems</i>
Voc.	põ ē' mǎ, <i>O poem</i>	põ ē' mǎ tǎ, <i>O poems</i>
Abl.	põ ē' mǎ tē, <i>with a poem</i>	põ ē mǎ' tī būs, <i>with poems</i>

Examples for Practice:

ărōmǎ, -tīs, *a spice*

aenigmǎ, -tīs, *a riddle*

[65. 66.]

84. Nouns in **ě** change **ě** into **īs** to form the genitive, as: **rētě, rētīs.** They are **Neuter.**

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>	rē' tī ǎ, <i>nets</i>
Gen.	rē' tīs, <i>of a net</i>	rē' tī ūm, <i>of nets</i>
Dat.	rē' tī, <i>to a net</i>	rē' tī būs, <i>to nets</i>
Acc.	rē' tē, <i>a net</i>	rē' tī ǎ, <i>nets</i>
Voc.	rē' tē, <i>O net</i>	rē' tī ǎ; <i>O nets</i>
Abl.	rē' tī, <i>with a net</i>	rē' tī būs, <i>with nets</i>

Examples for Practice:

mǎrě, -īs, *the sea, ocean*

cūbīlē, -īs, *a lair*

altǎrě, -īs, *an altar*

conclǎvē, -īs, *a room*

[53. 54.]

85. Certain nouns ending in **ō** form their genitive by changing **ō** into **īnīs**, as: **hōmō, hōmīnīs.**

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	hō' mō, <i>man</i>	hō' mī nēs, <i>men, people</i>
Gen.	hō' mī nīs, <i>of man</i>	hō' mī nūm, <i>of men</i>
Dat.	hō' mī nī, <i>to man</i>	hō mī' nī būs, <i>to men</i>
Acc.	hō' mī nēm, <i>man</i>	hō' mī nēs, <i>men</i>
Voc.	hō' mō, <i>O man</i>	hō' mī nēs, <i>O men</i>
Abl.	hō' mī nē, <i>with man</i>	hō mī' nī būs, <i>with men</i>

Thus we have:

hōmō, -īnīs, *man*

turbō, -īnīs, *a whirlwind*

nēmō, -īnīs, *nobody*

Āpollō, -īnīs, *Apollo*

and nearly all the words in **dō** and **gō**, as:

ordō, -īnīs, *order*

īmāgō, -īnīs, *an image*

consuetūdō, -īnīs, *habit*

pulchritūdō, -īnīs, *beauty.*

86. Mark: cǎrō, *flesh*; carnīs, *gen. plur.: carnīum.*

87. All other words ending in **ō** change **ō** into **ōnīs** to form the genitive, as: **lēō, lēōnīs**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	lē' ō, <i>a lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	lē ō' nīs, <i>of a lion</i>	lē ō' nūm, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	lē ō' nī, <i>to a lion</i>	lē ō' nī būs, <i>to lions</i>
Acc.	lē ō' nēm, <i>a lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	lē' ō, <i>O lion</i>	lē ō' nēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	lē ō' nē, <i>with a lion</i>	lē ō' nī būs, <i>with lions</i>

Such are:

pāvō, -ōnīs, <i>a peacock</i>	āquīlō, -ōnīs, <i>the north wind</i>
pulmō, -ōnīs, <i>a lung</i>	pōtiō, -ōnīs, <i>a drink(ing)</i>

also a few in **dō** and **gō**, namely:

harpāgō, -ōnīs, <i>a grapple-hook</i>	praedō, -ōnīs, <i>a robber</i>
cōmēdō, -ōnīs, <i>a glutton</i>	līgō, -ōnīs, <i>a mattock</i>

[29—32.]

Peculiar: **Ānīō, -ēnīs, the river Anio.**

88. Nouns in **ī** and **ỹ** (Neuters of Greek origin) take **īs, ỹīs** in the genitive, as: **sīnāpī, -īs, mustard; mīsỹ, -ỹīs, copperas.**

89. Neuters in **c**: only **ālēc, ālēcīs, pickle; lāc, lactīs, milk.**

90. Nouns in **l** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	con' sūl, <i>a consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Gen.	con' sū līs, <i>of a consul</i>	con' sū lūm, <i>of the consuls</i>
Dat.	con' sū lī, <i>to a consul</i>	con sū' lī būs, <i>to the consuls</i>
Acc.	con' sū lēm, <i>a consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>the consuls</i>
Voc.	con' sūl, <i>O consul</i>	con' sū lēs, <i>O consuls</i>
Abl.	con' sū lē, <i>with a consul</i>	con sū' lī būs, <i>with the consuls</i>

Examples for Practice:

sōl, sōlīs, <i>the sun</i>	exsūl, exsūlīs, <i>an exile</i>
sāl, sālīs, <i>salt</i>	pūgil, pūgilīs, <i>a pugilist</i>

91. Nouns in **āl** change **āl** to **ālīs** to form the genitive, as: **ānīmāl, animālīs.** They are **Neuter**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Gen.	ā nī māl' līs, <i>of an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ūm, <i>of animals</i>
Dat.	ā nī māl' lī, <i>to an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>to animals</i>
Acc.	ā' nī māl, <i>an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>animals</i>
Voc.	ā' nī māl, <i>O animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī ā, <i>O animals</i>
Abl.	ā nī māl' lī, <i>with an animal</i>	ā nī māl' lī būs, <i>with animals</i>

Examples for Practice:

vectigă^l, -ă^lis, *a tax* tribună^l, -ă^lis, *a tribunal*

92. mē^l, *honey*, has mell^{is}, and the plural mellă^l; fē^l, *gall*, has fell^{is}, but is without a plural; both are **Neuter**. [53. 54.]

93. Nouns in **ēn** form their genitive by changing **ēn** into **in^{is}**, as: car^{mēn}, car^{mīn^{is}}; Nouns in **ēn**, by adding **is**, as: rēⁿ, rē^{n^{is}}. All in **mēn** are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	car' mē ⁿ , <i>a poem</i>	car' mī nă ^l , <i>poems</i>
Gen.	car' mī n ^{is} , <i>of a poem</i>	car' mī nū ^m , <i>of poems</i>
Dat.	car' mī nī ^l , <i>to a poem</i>	car mī' nī būs ^l , <i>to poems</i>
Acc.	car' mē ⁿ , <i>a poem</i>	car' mī nă ^l , <i>poems</i>
Voc.	car' mē ⁿ , <i>O poem</i>	car' mī nă ^l , <i>O poems</i>
Abl.	car' mī nē ^l , <i>with a poem</i>	car mī' nī būs ^l , <i>with poems</i>

Examples for Practice:

nōmē ⁿ , -in ^{is} , <i>a name</i>	(rē ⁿ , rē ^{n^{is}}) usually pl.: rē ^{nēs} ,
lūmē ⁿ , -in ^{is} , <i>light</i>	rē ^{nū^m} , <i>the kidneys</i>
ōmē ⁿ , -in ^{is} , <i>an omen</i>	liē ⁿ , liē ^{n^{is}} , <i>spleen</i>
fulmē ⁿ , -in ^{is} , <i>a thunder-bolt</i>	splē ⁿ , splē ^{n^{is}} , <i>spleen</i>
grāmē ⁿ , -in ^{is} , <i>grass</i>	pectē ⁿ , -in ^{is} , <i>a comb</i> [59. 60.]

94. As a rule, nouns in **r**, viz. **ăr**, **ēr**, **ōr**, **ūr**, add **is** to form the genitive, subject, however, to the following variations:

Those in **ăr** form the Genitive by changing **ăr** into **ăr^{is}**, as: calcăr^l, calcăr^{is}. They are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	cal' căr ^l , <i>a spur</i>	cal cā' rī ă ^l , <i>spurs</i>
Gen.	cal cā' rīs ^l , <i>of a spur</i>	cal cā' rī ū ^m , <i>of spurs</i>
Dat.	cal cā' rī ^l , <i>to a spur</i>	cal cā' rī būs ^l , <i>to spurs</i>
Acc.	cal' căr ^l , <i>a spur</i>	cal cā' rī ă ^l , <i>spurs</i>
Voc.	cal' căr ^l , <i>O spur</i>	cal cā' rī ă ^l , <i>O spurs</i>
Abl.	cal cā' rī ^l , <i>with a spur</i>	cal cā' rī būs ^l , <i>with spurs</i>

Examples for Practice:

exemplăr^l, -ăr^{is}, *a model* cochlăăr^l, -ăr^{is}, *a spoon*

95.

EXCEPTIONS:

Neuter.

Masculine.

nectăr ^l , -is, <i>nectar</i>	Caesăr ^l , -is, <i>Caesar</i>
hēpăr ^l , -ăt ^{is} , <i>the liver</i>	lăr ^l , lăr ^{is} , <i>a household deity</i>
făr ^l , farrīs ^l , <i>corn</i>	păr ^l , păr ^{is} , <i>a pair</i> [53. 54.]

96. Nouns in **ēr** and **ēr** add **īs** to form the genitive, as: *ansēr, ansērīs, a goose; vēr, vērīs, spring; but imbēr, a shower, the names of months in bēr, and nouns in tēr, except lātēr, a brick, change ēr into rīs, dropping the ē before the r, as: pātēr, pātrīs.*

Singular.

Nom.	an' sēr, <i>a goose</i>	pā' tēr, <i>a father</i>
Gen.	an' sē rīs, <i>of a goose</i>	pā' trīs, <i>of a father</i>
Dat.	an' sē rī, <i>to a goose</i>	pā' trī, <i>to a father</i>
Acc.	an' sē rēm, <i>a goose</i>	pā' trēm, <i>a father</i>
Voc.	an' sēr, <i>O goose</i>	pā' tēr, <i>O father</i>
Abl.	an' sē rē, <i>with a goose</i>	pā' trē, <i>with a father</i>

Plural.

Nom.	an' sē rēs, <i>geese</i>	pā' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Gen.	an' sē rūm, <i>of geese</i>	pā' trūm, <i>of fathers</i>
Dat.	an sē' rī būs, <i>to geese</i>	pā' trī būs, <i>to fathers</i>
Acc.	an' sē rēs, <i>geese</i>	pā' trēs, <i>fathers</i>
Voc.	an' sē rēs, <i>O geese</i>	pā' trēs, <i>O fathers</i>
Abl.	an sē' rī būs, <i>with geese</i>	pā' trī būs, <i>with fathers</i>

Examples for Practice:

passēr, -īs, <i>a sparrow</i>	mātēr, -rīs, <i>a mother</i>
mūliēr, -īs, <i>a woman</i>	frātēr, -rīs, <i>a brother</i>
aggēr, -īs, <i>a rampart</i>	imbēr, -rīs, <i>a shower</i>
lātēr, -īs, <i>a brick</i>	Septembēr, -rīs, <i>September</i>

97.

Peculiar:

ītēr, ītinērīs, <i>a way (Neuter)</i>	āēr, āērīs, <i>the air</i>
Juppītēr, Jōvīs, <i>Jove</i>	aethēr, aethērīs, <i>the upper air</i>

98. A few have **īūm**, instead of **ūm**, in the Genitive plural:

imbēr, <i>a shower</i> , imbrīūm	ūtēr, <i>a leather sack</i> , ūtrīūm
lintēr, <i>a boat</i> , lintrīūm	ventēr, <i>the belly</i> , ventrīūm

[37. 38.]

99. Nouns in **ōr** change **ōr** into **ōrīs** to form the genitive; as: *cōlōr, -ōrīs.*

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	cō' lōr, <i>a color</i>	cō lō' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Gen.	cō lō' rīs, <i>of a color</i>	cō lō' rūm, <i>of colors</i>
Dat.	cō lō' rī, <i>to a color</i>	cō lō' rī būs, <i>to colors</i>
Acc.	cō lō' rēm, <i>a color</i>	cō lō' rēs, <i>colors</i>
Voc.	cō' lōr, <i>O color</i>	cō lō' rēs, <i>O colors</i>
Abl.	cō lō' rē, <i>with a color</i>	cō lō' rī būs, <i>with colors</i>

Examples for Practice:

tīmōr, -ōrīs, <i>fear</i>	āmōr, -ōrīs, <i>love</i>
praeceptōr, -ōrīs, <i>a teacher</i>	săpōr, -ōrīs, <i>taste</i>
auctōr, -ōrīs, <i>an author</i>	ōdōr, -ōrīs, <i>smell</i>
audītōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hearer</i>	clāmōr, -ōrīs, <i>a shout, noise</i>
ōrātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a speaker</i>	vēnātōr, -ōrīs, <i>a hunter</i>

100. The following have **ō** short in the genitive:

arbōr, arbōrīs, <i>a tree</i>	Neut. {	marmōr, marmōrīs, <i>marble</i>
mēmōr, mēmōrīs, <i>mindful</i>		aequōr, aequōrīs, <i>the sea</i>
immēmōr, immēmōrīs, <i>forgetful</i>		ădōr, ădōrīs, <i>spelt</i>

101. Mark the **Neuter** cōr, cordīs, *heart*, and its Compounds:
 concors, -dīs, *harmonious* discors, -dīs, *discordant*
[33. 34.]

102. Nouns in **ūr** add **īs** to the nominative to form the genitive;
 as: guttūr, guttūrīs; they are **Neuter**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū ră, <i>the throats</i>
Gen.	gut' tū rīs, <i>of the throat</i>	gut' tū rūm, <i>of the throats</i>
Dat.	gut' tū rī, <i>to the throat</i>	gut' tū rī būs, <i>to the throats</i>
Acc.	gut' tūr, <i>the throat</i>	gut' tū ră, <i>the throats</i>
Voc.	gut' tūr, <i>O throat</i>	gut' tū ră, <i>O throats</i>
Abl.	gut' tū rē, <i>with the throat</i>	gut' tū rī būs, <i>with the throats</i>

103. These four change **ūr** into **ōrīs**, but are also **Neuter**:
 ēbūr, -ōrīs, *ivory* fēmūr, -ōrīs, *the thigh*
 jēcūr, -ōrīs (jēcīnōrīs), *the liver* rōbūr, -ōrīs, *strength*
[63. 64.]

104. There are **two Classes** of nouns in **s**:

s after a vowel: **as, es, is, os, us, aus**

s after a consonant: **ls, ns, rs; bs, ps, ms.**

105. Nouns in **ās** change **ās** into **ātīs** to form the genitive,
 as: aetās, aetātīs; ănās, *a duck*, has ănātīs; vās, *a surety*, vādīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	ae' tās, <i>an age</i>	ae tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen.	ae tā' tīs, <i>of an age</i>	ae tā' tūm, <i>of ages</i>
Dat.	ae tā' tī, <i>to an age</i>	ae tā' tī būs, <i>to ages</i>
Acc.	ae tā' tēm, <i>an age</i>	ae tā' tēs, <i>ages</i>
Voc.	ae' tās, <i>O age</i>	ae tā' tēs, <i>O ages</i>
Abl.	ae tā' tē, <i>with an age</i>	ae tā' tī būs, <i>with ages</i>

Examples for Practice:

aestās, -ātīs, <i>summer</i>	paupertās, -ātīs, <i>poverty</i>
vōluptās, -ātīs, <i>pleasure</i>	vōluntās, -ātīs, <i>the will</i>
sōciētās, -ātīs, <i>society</i>	libertās, -ātīs, <i>liberty</i>
difficultās, -ātīs, <i>difficulty</i>	vārīētās, -ātīs, <i>variety</i>
cīvītās, -ātīs, <i>a state</i>	sānītās, -ātīs, <i>health</i>

106. The following in *ās* form their genitives differently:

Nom. ās, <i>a copper</i>	Gen. assīs	Gen. Pl. assīūm
mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīs	mārīūm
ādāmās, <i>a diamond</i>	ādāmantīs	
ēlēphās, <i>an elephant</i>	ēlēphantīs	
vās, <i>a vessel (Neuter)</i>	vāsīs, Pl. vāsā, -ōrūm (2d decl.)	

107. fās, *right*; nēfās, *wrong*, are *Indeclinable*.

[39. 40.]

108. Nouns ending in *ēs* change *ēs* into *īs* to form the genitive, as: nūbēs, nūbīs (**Vowel-stems**). They have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive. Nouns in *ēs* increase in the genitive, changing *ēs* into *ītīs*, as: mīlēs, mīlītīs (**Consonant-stems**).

Singular.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>a soldier</i>
Gen. nū' bīs, <i>of a cloud</i>	mī' lī tīs, <i>of a soldier</i>
Dat. nū' bī, <i>to a cloud</i>	mī' lī tī, <i>to a soldier</i>
Acc. nū' bēm, <i>a cloud</i>	mī' lī tēm, <i>a soldier</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O cloud</i>	mī' lēs, <i>O soldier</i>
Abl. nū' bē, <i>with a cloud</i>	mī' lī tē, <i>with a soldier</i>

Plural.

Nom. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Gen. nū' bī ūm, <i>of clouds</i>	mī' lī tūm, <i>of soldiers</i>
Dat. nū' bī būs, <i>to clouds</i>	mī lī' tī būs, <i>to soldiers</i>
Acc. nū' bēs, <i>clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>soldiers</i>
Voc. nū' bēs, <i>O clouds</i>	mī' lī tēs, <i>O soldiers</i>
Abl. nū' bī būs, <i>with clouds</i>	mī lī' tī būs, <i>with soldiers</i>

Examples for Practice:

fāmēs, -īs, <i>hunger</i>	cōmēs, -ītīs, <i>a companion</i>
clādēs, -īs, <i>defeat</i>	mergēs, -ītīs, <i>a sheaf</i>
vulpēs, -īs, <i>a fox</i>	pēdēs, -ītīs, <i>a foot-soldier</i>
sēdēs, -īs, <i>a seat</i>	ēquēs, -ītīs, <i>a horseman</i>

109. EXCEPTIONS. The following in *ēs* and *ēs* increase in the genitive in different ways (*ēt-īs*, *ēt-īs*, *ēd-īs*, *ēd-īs*, *īd-īs*, *ēr-īs*).

<i>ābīēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>the silver fir</i>	<i>pēs</i> , <i>pēdīs</i> , <i>a foot</i>
<i>āriēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>a ram</i>	<i>quādrūpēs</i> , - <i>ēdīs</i> , <i>four-footed</i>
<i>pārīēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>a wall</i>	<i>compēs</i> , - <i>ēdīs</i> , <i>a fetter</i>
<i>interpretēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>an interpreter</i>	<i>hērēs</i> , - <i>ēdīs</i> , <i>an heir</i>
<i>sēgēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>a crop</i>	<i>mercēs</i> , - <i>ēdīs</i> , <i>a reward</i>
<i>tēgēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>a covering</i>	<i>obsēs</i> , - <i>īdīs</i> , <i>a hostage</i>
<i>quīēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>rest</i>	<i>praesēs</i> , - <i>īdīs</i> , <i>a president</i>
<i>lōcūplēs</i> , - <i>ētīs</i> , <i>wealthy</i>	<i>Cērēs</i> , - <i>ērīs</i> , <i>Ceres</i> [45. 46.]

110. Mark the solitary nouns:

<i>aes</i> , <i>aerīs</i> , <i>brass</i> (Neuter)	<i>praes</i> , <i>praedīs</i> , <i>surety</i>
---	---

111. The majority of nouns ending in *īs* have **Vowel-stems**, and form their genitive in *īs*, with an equal number of syllables. They have the nominative and genitive singular *alike*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>ā' vīs</i> , <i>a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs</i> , <i>birds</i>
Gen.	<i>ā' vīs</i> , <i>of a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī ūm</i> , <i>of birds</i>
Dat.	<i>ā' vī</i> , <i>to a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs</i> , <i>to birds</i>
Acc.	<i>ā' vēm</i> , <i>a bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs</i> , <i>birds</i>
Voc.	<i>ā' vīs</i> , <i>O bird</i>	<i>ā' vēs</i> , <i>O birds</i>
Abl.	<i>ā' vē</i> , <i>with a bird</i>	<i>ā' vī būs</i> , <i>with birds</i>

Examples for Practice:

<i>amnīs</i> , -, <i>a river</i>	<i>fēlīs</i> , -, <i>a cat</i>	<i>ōvīs</i> , -, <i>a sheep</i>
<i>āpīs</i> , -, <i>a bee</i>	<i>finīs</i> , -, <i>an end</i>	<i>pānīs</i> , -, <i>bread</i>
<i>aurīs</i> , -, <i>the ear</i>	<i>hostīs</i> , -, <i>an enemy</i>	<i>piscīs</i> , -, <i>a fish</i>
<i>cānīs</i> , -, <i>a dog</i>	<i>ignīs</i> , -, <i>fire</i>	<i>tīgrīs</i> , -, <i>a tiger</i>
<i>cīvīs</i> , -, <i>a citizen</i>	<i>mensīs</i> , -, <i>a month</i>	<i>vallīs</i> , -, <i>a valley</i>
<i>classīs</i> , -, <i>a fleet</i>	<i>nātālīs</i> , -, <i>a birthday</i>	<i>vermīs</i> , -, <i>a worm</i>
<i>collīs</i> , -, <i>a hill</i>	<i>nāvīs</i> , -, <i>a ship</i>	<i>vestīs</i> , -, <i>a dress</i>

112. Others in *īs* and *īs* have **Consonant-stems** increasing in the genitive in different ways (*īd-īs*, *īt-īs*, *ēr-īs*, *īr-īs*, *īn-īs*).

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>lā' pīs</i> , <i>a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs</i> , <i>stones</i>
Gen.	<i>lā' pī dīs</i> , <i>of a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dūm</i> , <i>of stones</i>
Dat.	<i>lā' pī dī</i> , <i>to a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs</i> , <i>to stones</i>
Acc.	<i>lā' pī dēm</i> , <i>a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs</i> , <i>stones</i>
Voc.	<i>lā' pīs</i> , <i>O stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dēs</i> , <i>O stones</i>
Abl.	<i>lā' pī dē</i> , <i>with a stone</i>	<i>lā' pī dī būs</i> , <i>with stones</i>

To this class belong:

cassīs, cassīdīs, *a helmet*

lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *a stone*

cīnīs, cīnērīs, *ashes*

pulvīs, pulvērīs, *dust*

cuspidīs, *a spear*

vōmīs, vōmērīs, *a plowshare*

līs, litīs, *a quarrel*

sanguīs, sanguinīs, *blood*

glīs, glīrīs, *a dormouse*

Samnīs, Samnitīs, *a Samnite*

tȳrannīs, tȳrannidīs, *tyranny*

113. exsanguīs, -ē, *bloodless*, though a compound of sanguīs, has in the genitive exsanguīs (*parisyllabic*).

114. Mark the special paradigm of vīs, *force*:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	vīs, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs, <i>forces</i>
Gen.	—	vī' rī ūm, <i>of forces</i>
Dat.	—	vī' rī būs, <i>to forces</i>
Acc.	vīm, <i>force</i>	vī' rēs, <i>forces</i>
Voc.	vīs, <i>O force</i>	vī' rēs, <i>O forces</i>
Abl.	vī, <i>by force</i>	vī' rī būs, <i>with forces</i> [41 - 44.]

115. Some Nouns in ōs form their genitive by changing ōs into ōrīs, others by changing ōs into ōtīs. Thus, we have:

ōs, ōrīs	ōs, ōtīs
flōs, -ōrīs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, -ōtīs, <i>a dowry</i>
mōs, -ōrīs, <i>custom</i>	cōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grindstone</i>
rōs, -ōrīs, <i>dew</i>	nēpōs, -ōtīs, <i>a grandchild</i>
lēpōs, -ōrīs, <i>charm, wit</i>	rhīnōcērōs, -ōtīs, <i>a rhinoceros</i>
ōs, ōrīs, <i>the mouth (Neuter)</i>	sācerdōs, -ōtīs, <i>a priest</i>

Singular.

Nom.	flōs, <i>a flower</i>	dōs, <i>a dowry</i>
Gen.	flō' rīs, <i>of a flower</i>	dō' tīs, <i>of a dowry</i>
Dat.	flō' rī, <i>to a flower</i>	dō' tī, <i>to a dowry</i>
Acc.	flō' rēm, <i>a flower</i>	dō' tēm, <i>a dowry</i>
Voc.	flōs, <i>O flower</i>	dōs, <i>O dowry</i>
Abl.	flō' rē, <i>with a flower</i>	dō' tē, <i>with a dowry</i>

Plural.

Nom.	flō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Gen.	flō' rūm, <i>of flowers</i>	dō' tūm, <i>of dowries</i>
Dat.	flō' rī būs, <i>to flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>to dowries</i>
Acc.	flō' rēs, <i>flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>dowries</i>
Voc.	flō' rēs, <i>O flowers</i>	dō' tēs, <i>O dowries</i>
Abl.	flō' rī būs, <i>with flowers</i>	dō' tī būs, <i>with dowries</i>

116.

Peculiar:

custōs, custōdīs, *a keeper*
 ōs, ossīs, *a bone (Neuter);*
 Gen. Plur. ossiūm

compōs, compōtīs, *capable*
 bōs, bōvīs, *an ox; Plur. N. bōvēs;*
 G. bōūm; D. bōbūs or būbūs

117. A few masculine Greek nouns in ōs have ōīs, as:

hērōs, -ōīs, *a hero*

Trōs, -ōīs, *a Trojan* [35. 36.]

118. Of **Feminine Nouns** in ūs, some change ūs into ūtīs, others into ūdīs to form the genitive; as: virtūs, virtūtīs; pālūs, pālūdīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. vir' tūs, *virtue*
 Gen. vir tū' tīs, *of virtue*
 Dat. vir tū' tī, *to virtue*
 Acc. vir tū' tēm, *virtue*
 Voc. vir' tūs, *O virtue*
 Abl. vir tū' tē, *with virtue*

vir tū' tēs, *virtues*
 vir tū' tūm, *of virtues*
 vir tū' tī būs, *to virtues*
 vir tū' tēs, *virtues*
 vir tū' tēs, *O virtues*
 vir tū' tī būs, *with virtues*

sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety, welfare*
 servītūs, -ūtīs, *slavery*
 jāventūs, -ūtīs, *youth*

sēnectūs, -ūtīs, *old age*
 pālūs, -ūdīs, *a marsh*
 incūs, -ūdīs, *an anvil*

119. tellūs, *earth*, has tellūrīs, pēcūs, *a head of cattle, an animal*, pēcūdīs, and Vēnūs, *the goddess Venus*, Vēnērīs.

120. Notice the following names of animals in us:

mūs, mūrīs, *a mouse; Gen. Plur.*
 mūrīūm
 lēpūs, lēpōrīs, *a hare*

grūs, grūīs, *a crane*
 sūs, sūīs, *a swine; Dat. Plur.*
 sūbūs (instead of sūibūs)

[51. 52.]

121. Of **Neuter Nouns** in ūs of two or more syllables, some change ūs into ōrīs to form the genitive, as: corpūs, corpōrīs; others change ūs into ērīs, as: ōpūs, ōpērīs. All monosyllables, with long ū, form their genitive in ūrīs, as: jūs, jūrīs.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. cor' pūs, *a body*
 Gen. cor' pō rīs, *of a body*
 Dat. cor' pō rī, *to a body*
 Acc. cor' pūs, *a body*
 Voc. cor' pūs, *O body*
 Abl. cor' pō rē, *with a body*

cor' pō rā, *bodies*
 cor' pō rūm, *of bodies*
 cor' pō rī būs, *to bodies*
 cor' pō rā, *bodies*
 cor' pō rā, *O bodies*
 cor' pō rī būs, *with bodies*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>works</i>
Gen.	ō' pē rīs, <i>of a work</i>	ō' pē rūm, <i>of works</i>
Dat.	ō' pē rī, <i>to a work</i>	ō' pē' rī būs, <i>to works</i>
Acc.	ō' pūs, <i>a work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>works</i>
Voc.	ō' pūs, <i>O work</i>	ō' pē rā, <i>O works</i>
Abl.	ō' pē rē, <i>with a work</i>	ō' pē' rī būs, <i>with works</i>
Nom.	jūs, <i>right, law</i>	jū' rā, <i>rights</i>
Gen.	jū' rīs, <i>of right</i>	jū' rūm, <i>of rights</i>
Dat.	jū' rī, <i>to right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>to rights</i>
Acc.	jūs, <i>right</i>	jū' rā, <i>rights</i>
Voc.	jūs, <i>O right</i>	jū' rā, <i>O rights</i>
Abl.	jū' rē, <i>with right</i>	jū' rī būs, <i>with rights</i>

Examples for Practice:

frīgūs, -ōrīs, <i>cold</i>	mūnūs, -ērīs, <i>an office, gift</i>
tempūs, -ōrīs, <i>a time</i>	gēnūs, -ērīs, <i>a kind, race</i>
litūs, -ōrīs, <i>a shore</i>	ōnūs, -ērīs, <i>a burden</i>
dēcūs, -ōrīs, <i>an ornament</i>	sidūs, -ērīs, <i>a star, constella-</i>
nēmūs, -ōrīs, <i>a grove</i>	scēlūs, -ērīs, <i>a crime</i> [tion
pectūs, -ōrīs, <i>the breast</i>	crūs, -ūrīs, <i>the leg</i>
vulnūs, -ērīs, <i>a wound</i>	rūs, -ūrīs, <i>the country</i>

[61. 62.]

122. The following Greek nouns in **us** (**Masculine** and **Feminine**) deserve special notice:

Trápēzūs, -untīs, <i>Trebizond</i>	Oedīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>Oedipus</i>
trīpūs, -ōdīs, <i>a tripod</i>	pōlŷpūs, -ī, <i>a polyp</i> (2d decl.)

123. The only two nouns in **aus** are **laus**, **laudīs**, *praise*, and **fraus**, **fraudīs**, *fraud*; **fraus** has **fraudūm** or **fraudīūm** in the genitive plural.

[51.]

124. Nouns ending in **bs**, **ps**, and **ms** change **s** final into **īs** to form the genitive; as: **urbs**, **urbīs**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	urbs, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Gen.	ur' bīs, <i>of a city</i>	ur' bī ūm <i>of cities</i>
Dat.	ur' bī, <i>to a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>to cities</i>
Acc.	ur' bēm, <i>a city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>cities</i>
Voc.	urbs, <i>O city</i>	ur' bēs, <i>O cities</i>
Abl.	ur' bē, <i>with a city</i>	ur' bī būs, <i>with cities</i>

Examples for Practice:

plebs, plebīs, <i>the populace</i>	stirps, stirpīs, <i>a stem</i>
trabs, trābīs, <i>a beam</i>	hiems, hiēmīs, <i>winter</i>

125. A few are subject to a variation of the radical vowel:

ādeps, ādīpīs, <i>lard</i>	auceps, aucūpīs, <i>a fowler</i>
caelebs, caelībīs, <i>unmarried</i>	

126. Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpiō** have **cīpīs**, as:

princeps, -cīpīs, <i>a chief</i>	particeps, -cīpīs, <i>sharing</i>
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Compounds in **ceps** from **cāpūt** have **cīpītīs**, as:

anceps, -cīpītīs, <i>double</i>	praeceps, -cīpītīs, <i>steep</i>
---------------------------------	----------------------------------

127. All nouns ending in **ls**, **rs**, and **ns** change **s** final into **tīs** to form the genitive; as: **pars**, **partīs**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	pars, <i>a part, side</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Gen.	par' tīs, <i>of a part</i>	par' tī ūm, <i>of parts</i>
Dat.	par' tī, <i>to a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>to parts</i>
Acc.	par' tēm, <i>a part</i>	par' tēs, <i>parts</i>
Voc.	pars, <i>O part</i>	par' tēs, <i>O parts</i>
Abl.	par' tē, <i>with a part</i>	par' tī būs, <i>with parts</i>

Examples for Practice:

mors, -tīs, <i>death</i>	gens, -tīs, <i>a tribe, people</i>
infans, -tīs, <i>a babe, child</i>	frons, -tīs, <i>the forehead, brow</i>
ars, -tīs, <i>art</i>	pārens, -tīs, <i>a parent</i>

128. Only three have **dīs** in the genitive, namely:

frons, -dīs, *foliage*; glans, -dīs, *an acorn*; juglans, -dīs, *a walnut*
[47. 48.]

129. There is only one noun in **t** (Neuter):

cāpūt, cāpītīs, *the head*, and its Compounds. [63.]

130. Nouns in **x** form their genitive by resolving **x** into **cs** or **gs** and changing final **s** into **īs**, as: **dux** (= ducs), **dūcīs**; **rex** (= regs), **rēgīs**.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	dux, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Gen.	dū' cīs, <i>of a leader</i>	dū' cūm, <i>of leaders</i>
Dat.	dū' cī, <i>to a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>to leaders</i>
Acc.	dū' cēm, <i>a leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>leaders</i>
Voc.	dūx, <i>O leader</i>	dū' cēs, <i>O leaders</i>
Abl.	dū' cē, <i>with a leader</i>	dū' cī būs, <i>with leaders</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	rex, <i>a king</i>	rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Gen.	rē' gīs, <i>of a king</i>	rē' gūm, <i>of kings</i>
Dat.	rē' gī, <i>to a king</i>	rē' gī būs, <i>to kings</i>
Acc.	rē' gēm, <i>a king</i>	rē' gēs, <i>kings</i>
Voc.	rex, <i>O king</i>	rē' gēs, <i>O kings</i>
Abl.	rē' gē, <i>with a king</i>	rē' gī būs, <i>with kings</i>

131. Nouns in **x** with preceding consonant change **x** into **cīs**:

falx, -cīs, <i>a sickle</i>	arx, -cīs, <i>a citadel</i>
merx, -cīs, <i>merchandise</i>	lanx, -cīs, <i>a dish</i>

132. Nouns in **ax** have **ācīs**, as: **pax**, **pācīs**, *peace*.

EXCEPTION: fax, fācīs, *a torch*.

133. Nouns in **ex** have commonly **īcīs**, as:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	jū' dex, <i>a judge</i>	jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Gen.	jū' dī cīs, <i>of a judge</i>	jū' dī cūm, <i>of judges</i>
Dat.	jū' dī cī, <i>to a judge</i>	jū' dī cī būs, <i>to judges</i>
Acc.	jū' dī cēm, <i>a judge</i>	jū' dī cēs, <i>judges</i>
Voc.	jū' dex, <i>O judge</i>	jū' dī cēs, <i>O judges</i>
Abl.	jū' dī cē, <i>with a judge</i>	jū' dī cī būs, <i>with judges</i>

EXCEPTIONS:

lex, lēgīs, <i>a law</i>	rēmex, rēmīgīs, <i>a rower</i>
rex, rēgīs, <i>a king</i>	sēnex, sēnīs, <i>an old man</i>
grex, grēgīs, <i>a flock</i>	sūpellex, sūpellectīlīs, <i>furniture</i>
nex, nēcīs, <i>murder</i>	vervex, vervēcīs, <i>a wether</i>
faex, faecīs, <i>lees</i>	

134. Nouns in **ix** have **īcīs**, and less frequently **īcīs**, as:

cicātrix, -īcīs, <i>a wound</i>	pix, -īcīs, <i>pitch</i>
cornix, -īcīs, <i>a crow</i>	cālix, -īcīs, <i>a cup</i>
rādex, -īcīs, <i>a root</i>	fornix, -īcīs, <i>an arch</i>
nūtrix, -īcīs, <i>a nurse</i>	appendix, -īcīs, <i>an appendix</i>

But nix, *snow*, has nīvīs.

135. Nouns in **ox** have **ōcīs**, as: **vox**, **vōcīs**, *a voice*.

EXCEPTIONS:

praecox, praecōcīs, *premature* nox, noctīs, *night*
and a few national names in **ox**, as:

Cappādox, -ōcīs, *a Cappadocian*
Allōbrox, -ōgīs, *one of the Allobroges*.

136. Nouns in **ux** have **ūcīs**, as: **dux**, **dūcīs**, *a leader*.

EXCEPTIONS:

lux , lūcīs , <i>light</i>	conjux , conjūgīs , <i>a spouse</i>
Pollux , Pollūcīs , <i>Pollux</i>	frux , frūgīs , <i>fruit</i>
faux , faucīs , <i>the throat</i>	

[49. 50.]

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

137. Certain adjectives of the **Third Declension** have in the nominative singular three different forms, one for each gender — others two, the masculine and feminine being the same — others but one, the same for all genders.

138. Adjectives of three terminations end in **ēr**, **īs**, **ē**, and are declined like **pātēr**, **āvīs**, **mārē**, respectively. All drop the **ē** before **r** in declension, except **cēlēr**, **cēlērīs**, **cēlērē**, *swift*, which retains it.

ācēr, **ācrīs**, **ācrē**, *sharp, keen*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ā' cēr	ā' crīs	ā' crē
Gen.	ā' crīs	ā' crīs	ā' crīs
Dat.	ā' crī	ā' crī	ā' crī
Acc.	ā' crēm	ā' crēm	ā' crē
Voc.	ā' cēr	ā' crīs	ā' crē
Abl.	ā' crī	ā' crī	ā' crī

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ā' crēs	ā' crēs	ā' crī ā
Gen.	ā' crī ūm	ā' crī ūm	ā' crī ūm
Dat.	ā' crī būs	ā' crī būs	ā' crī būs
Acc.	ā' crēs	ā' crēs	ā' crī ā
Voc.	ā' crēs	ā' crēs	ā' crī ā
Abl.	ā' crī būs	ā' crī būs	ā' crī būs

Examples for Practice:

terrestēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>terrestrial</i>	silvestēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>woody</i>
pālustēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>marshy</i>	campestēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>level</i>
cēlēbēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>famous</i>	ēquestēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>equestrian</i>
ālācēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>lively</i>	sālūbēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>healthy</i>
pūtēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>putrid</i>	vōlūcēr , -rīs , -rē , <i>winged</i>

139. Adjectives of two terminations end in *īs*, *ě*, and *ōr*, *ūs* (Comparatives), and are thus declined:

tristīs, tristě, sad			
Singular.		Plural.	
m. & f.	n.	m. & f.	n.
Nom. tri' stīs	tri' stě	tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Gen. tri' stīs	tri' stīs	tri' stī ūm	tri' stī ūm
Dat. tri' stī	tri' stī	tri' stī būs	tri' stī būs
Acc. tri' stēm	tri' stě	tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Voc. tri' stīs	tri' stě	tri' stēs	tri' stī ā
Abl. tri' stī	tri' stī	tri' stī būs	tri' stī būs

Examples for Practice:

sūāvīs, -ě, pleasant	instābilīs, -ě, unsteady	omnīs, -ě, all, every
dulcīs, -ě, sweet	hūmilīs, -ě, low	sīmīlīs, -ě, like
brēvīs, -ě, short	mortālīs, -ě, mortal	fācilīs, -ě, easy

[55. 56.]

dūrīōr, dūrīūs, harder			
Singular.		Plural.	
m. & f.	n.	m. & f.	n.
Nom. dū' rī ōr	dū' rī ūs	dū rī ō' rēs	dū rī ō' rā
Gen. dū rī ō' rīs	dū rī ō' rīs	dū rī ō' rūm	dū rī ō' rūm
Dat. dū rī ō' rī	dū rī ō' rī	dū rī ō' rī būs	dū rī ō' rī būs
Acc. dū rī ō' rēm	dū' rī ūs	dū rī ō' rēs	dū rī ō' rā
Voc. dū' rī ōr	dū' rī ūs	dū rī ō' rēs	dū rī ō' rā
Abl. dū rī ō' rē	dū rī ō' rē	dū rī ō' rī būs	dū rī ō' rī būs

Examples for Practice:

excelsīōr, -ūs, higher	ācriōr, -ūs, sharper	mēlīōr, -ūs, better
libērīōr, -ūs, freer	lēvīōr, -ūs, lighter	cārīōr, -ūs, dearer
pulchriōr, -ūs, finer	fēlicīōr, -ūs, happier	hēbētīōr, -ūs, duller

[73. 74.]

140. As a rule, adjectives in *ēr*, *īs*, *ě*, and *īs*, *ě* form their ablative singular in *ī*, the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter in *īā*, and the genitive plural in *īūm*; *cělěr*, *swift*, has *cělērūm*.

141. Adjectives of one termination have the same forms in all genders, except that in the accusative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine. They end in *l*, *r*, *s*, *x*, and are declined like substantives of the Third Declension.

fēlix, happy, fortunate

prūdens, prudent, sensible

Singular.

<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom. <i>fē' lix</i>	<i>fē' lix</i>	<i>prū' dens</i>	<i>prū' dens</i>
Gen. <i>fē lī' cīs</i>		<i>prū den' tīs</i>	
Dat. <i>fē lī' cī</i>		<i>prū den' tī</i>	
Acc. <i>fē lī' cēm</i>	<i>fē' lix</i>	<i>prū den' tēm</i>	<i>prū' dens</i>
Voc. <i>fē' lix</i>		<i>prū' dens</i>	
Abl. <i>fē lī' cī</i>		<i>prū den' tī</i>	

Plural.

Nom. <i>fē lī' cēs</i>	<i>fē lī' cī ā</i>	<i>prū den' tēs</i>	<i>prū den' tī ā</i>
Gen. <i>fē lī' cī ūm</i>		<i>prū den' tī ūm</i>	
Dat. <i>fē lī' cī būs</i>		<i>prū den' tī būs</i>	
Acc. <i>fē lī' cēs</i>	<i>fē lī' cī ā</i>	<i>prū den' tēs</i>	<i>prū den' tī ā</i>
Voc. <i>fē lī' cēs</i>	<i>fē lī' cī ā</i>	<i>prū den' tēs</i>	<i>prū den' tī ā</i>
Abl. <i>fē lī' cī būs</i>		<i>prū den' tī būs</i>	

Examples for Practice:

<i>mendax, -ācīs, lying</i>	<i>sāpiens, -tīs, wise</i>
<i>lōquax, -ācīs, loquacious</i>	<i>pātens, -tīs, open</i>
<i>rāpax, -ācīs, rapacious</i>	<i>dilīgens, -tīs, diligent</i>
<i>vēlox, -ōcīs, swift</i>	<i>clēmens, -tīs, mild</i>

[57. 58.]

142. As a rule, adjectives of one termination have *ī* in the ablative singular, but to this there are many exceptions. The neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural ends in *īā*, and the genitive in *īūm* (see **144—147**).

Remarks on Certain Cases.

Accusative Singular.

143. The **Accusative** in *īm* is found *exclusively*:

1. in Greek nouns in *īs*, as: *bāsīs, a base, bāsīm*;
2. in names of rivers and towns in *īs*, as: *Tībērīs, the Tiber, Tībērīm*; *Něāpōlīs, Naples, Něāpōlīm*;
3. in *āmussīs, a mason's rule, āmussīm*; *rāvīs, hoarseness, rāvīm*; *sītīs, thirst, sītīm*; *tussīs, a cough, tussīm*; *vīs, force, vīm*; and is regarded as *preferable*:
4. in *fěbrīs, a fever, fěbrīm (fěbrēm)*; *pelvīs, a basin, pelvīm (pelvēm)*; *puppīs, the stern, puppīm (puppēm)*; *restīs, a rope, restīm (restēm)*; *turrīs, a tower, turrīm (turrēm)*; *sēcūrīs, an axe, sēcūrīm (sēcūrēm)*.

Ablative Singular.

144. The Ablative in **ī** is found *exclusively*:

1. in all nouns which have or *may* have the accusative in **īm**, and in **clāvīs**, *a key*, Abl. **clāvī**; **nāvis**, *a ship*, Abl. **nāvī**; **imbēr**, *a shower*, Abl. **imbrī**; **occīpūt**, *the back part of the head*, Abl. **occīpītī**;

2. in neuter nouns in **ě**, and those in **āl** and **ār** which have **ā** long in the genitive; also in **pār**, **pārīs**, *a pair*, Abl. **pārī**;

3. in those Substantives in **īs** and **ēr** which are originally Adjectives, as: **fāmīlārīs**, *a friend*, Abl. **fāmīlārī**; also in the names of the months, as: **Septembēr**, *September*, Abl. **Septembrī**; but **jūvēnīs**, *a youth*, **aedīlīs**, *an aedile*, have ablative in **ě**, **jūvēně**, **aedilě**.

4. In all Adjectives of the Third Declension, including Participial Adjectives in **ans** and **ens**; but to this, there are many exceptions:

paupěr, <i>poor</i>	Abl. paupěrě	caelebs, <i>single</i>	Abl. caelībě
dēsēs, <i>indolent</i>	“ dēsídě	dīvēs, <i>rich</i>	“ dīvītě
pūbēr, <i>adult</i>	“ pūběrě	vētūs, <i>old</i>	“ větěrě
sospēs, <i>safe</i>	“ sospītě	princeps, <i>first</i>	“ princípě
compōs, <i>possessed of</i>	“ compōtě	particeps, <i>sharing</i>	“ partīcīpě
	superstēs, <i>surviving</i>	Abl. superstītě	

All Comparatives, as: **altīōr**, *higher*, Abl. **altīōrě**;

Participles, when used as such or as Substantives, as: **sāpiens**, *a wise man*, Abl. **sāpiētě**; but **vīr sāpiens** has ablative **vīrō sāpiētī**;

Adjectives used as proper names, as: **Jūvēnālīs**, *Juvenal*, Abl. **Jūvēnālě**. [59. 60.]

Nominative Plural.

145. Such Neuters of Nouns, Adjectives and Participles as have **ī** in the Ablative singular form their **Nominative Plural** in **īā** instead of **ā**.

Of Adjectives having **ě** in the ablative singular, only **vētūs** has a neuter of the plural, **větěrā**. Of Comparatives, **complūrēs**, *several*, has **complūrā** and **complūrīā**.

Genitive Plural.

146. The Genitive Plural in **īūm** is found:

1. in all nouns having **ī** in the ablative singular (see above **144.**);

2. in all nouns in **ēr**, **īs**, and **ēs** having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive (*parisyllabic*), and in all pure Latin words in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant, except the following which retain **ūm** in the genitive plural:

	Gen. Plural.		Gen. Plural.
vātēs, <i>a prophet</i>	vātūm	pātēr, <i>a father</i>	pātrūm
strūēs, <i>a heap</i>	strūūm	mātēr, <i>a mother</i>	mātrūm
sēdēs, <i>a seat</i>	sēdūm	frātēr, <i>a brother</i>	frātrūm
cānīs, <i>a dog</i>	cānūm	accipītēr, <i>a hawk</i>	accipitrūm
pānīs, <i>bread</i>	pānūm	ādeps, <i>fat</i>	ādipūm
jūvēnīs, <i>a youth</i>	jūvēnūm	(ops), <i>help</i>	ōpūm
vōlūcrīs, <i>a bird</i>	vōlūcrūm	hīems, <i>winter</i>	hīēmūm

3. in the following words:

mās, <i>a male</i>	mārīūm	nox, <i>the night</i>	noctīūm
mūs, <i>a mouse</i>	mūrīūm	jūs, <i>right</i>	jūrīūm
glīs, <i>a dormouse</i>	glirīūm	nix, <i>snow</i>	nivīūm
līs, <i>a quarrel</i>	litīūm	ōs, <i>a bone</i>	ossīūm
vīs, <i>force</i>	vīrīūm	ās, <i>an as (Roman coin)</i>	assīūm
cārō, <i>flesh</i>	carnīūm	(faux), <i>the throat</i>	faucīūm

4. in names of nations in **ās**, **-ātīs**; **īs**, **-ītīs**, as:

Arpīnās, <i>an Arpinian</i>	Gen. Plural.	Arpīnātīūm
Samnīs, <i>a Samnite</i>	“ “	Samnītīūm

and likewise in:

pēnātēs, <i>penates</i>	“ “	pēnātīūm
optīmātēs, <i>the aristocrats</i>	“ “	optīmātīūm
nostrās, <i>our countryman</i>	“ “	nostrātīūm
vestrās, <i>your countryman</i>	“ “	vestrātīūm

147. Of Adjectives having **ī** in the ablative singular, the following have **ūm** in the Genitive plural:

ūbēr, <i>-īs, fertile</i>	Abl. Sing.	ūbērī	Gen. Pl.	ūbērūm
mēmōr, <i>-īs, mindful</i>	“	mēmōrī	“	mēmōrūm
immēmōr, <i>-īs, unmindful</i>	“	immēmōrī	“	immēmōrūm
cīcūr, <i>-īs, tame</i>	“	cīcūrī	“	cīcūrūm
vīgil, <i>-īs, watchful</i>	“	vīgilī	“	vīgilūm

[103. 104.]

Accusative Plural.

148. The Accusative Plural in **īs** occurs side by side with **ēs** in all nouns which have **īūm** in the genitive plural, as: navēs and nāvīs; and seems preferable in nouns in **ēr** which have **ī** in the ablative, as: imbrīs and imbrēs.

Dative and Ablative Plural.

149. In the **Dative** and **Ablative Plural**, Neuters in **mă** have commonly **īs** instead of **ībūs**; thus: **pōēmātīs**, instead of **pōēmātībūs**. See **83**.

Greek Nouns.

150. Most Greek Nouns of the **Third Declension** are entirely regular; a few, however, retain certain peculiarities of the Greek.

151. Proper Names in **ης** of the first Greek Declension often follow the third in Latin, as: **Xerxēs**, **-īs**.

152. Several feminine nouns in **ō** have **Genitive sing.** **ūs**, all the other cases ending in **ō**, as: **ēchō**, **Gen.** **ēchūs**, **Dat.** **ēchō**, *an echo*.

153. Many Greek nouns have **Genitive ōs**, as: **lampās**, **lampādōs**, *a lamp* — and **Accusative ā**, as: **Sălāmīs**, **Acc.** **Sălāmīnā**, *Salamis*; **āēr**, **Acc.** **āērā**, *air*; **aethēr**, **Acc.** **aethērā**, *ether*.

154. The **Vocative sing.** drops **s** in nouns in **ēus**, **īs**, **ys**, and **ās** (**antis**), as: **Daphnīs**, **Voc.** **Daphnī**, *Daphnis*; **Orphēus**, **Voc.** **Orphēu**, *Orpheus*; **Atlās**, **Voc.** **Atlā**, *Atlas*.

155. A few Neuters in **ōs**, as: **mělōs**, *a song*; **pělāgōs**, *the sea*, have **ē** in the plural: **mělē**, **pělāgē**.

156. The ending **ōn** occurs in the **Genitive plur.** of a few titles of books, as: **Mētāmorphōsēs**, **-ēōn**.

157. Many Greek nouns have **Plural Nom.** **ēs**, as: **lampās**, **lampādēs** — and **Accus.** **ās**, as: **Ārabs**, **Ārābās**, *Arabian*; **Cyclops**, **Cyclōpās**, *a Cyclops*.

Gender in Third Declension.

Nouns whose gender is determined by their meaning (see **40-42**.) are not included in the following rules.

I. MASCULINES.

158. Nouns of the **Third Declension** in **ō**, **ōr**, **ōs**, **ēr**, and **ēs** or **ēs** increasing in the **Genitive**:

hīc sermō, *this speech*
hīc aggēr, *this mound*
hīc cōlōr, *this color*

hīc mōs, *this custom*
hīc pēs, *this foot* (**gen.** **pēdis**)
hīc caespēs, *this sod* (**gen.** **caespītis**)

159.

EXCEPTIONS in **ǫ**.

Feminine:

1. Nouns in **dǫ** and **gǫ**, as: *hīrundǫ*, a swallow; *ǫrīgǫ*, origin; &c. Only the following in **dǫ** and **gǫ** are **Masculine**:

<i>ordǫ</i> , - īnīs , order	<i>līgǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a mattock
<i>cardǫ</i> , - īnīs , the hinge (of a door)	<i>harpǫgǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a grapple-hook
	<i>margǫ</i> , - īnīs , a margin

2. *Abstract nouns in ǫǫ*, as: *ǫpīnǫǫ*, -**ǫnīs**, an opinion; *actǫǫ*, -**ǫnīs**, a deed; *ǫrātǫǫ*, -**ǫnīs**, speech; *vēnātǫǫ*, -**ǫnīs**, hunting; &c. The following (concrete) nouns in **ǫǫ** are **Masculine**:

<i>septentrǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , the north	<i>pāpǫlǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a butterfly
<i>scorpǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a scorpion	<i>pūgǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a dagger
<i>vespertǫlǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a bat	<i>scǫpǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a staff
<i>tǫtǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a firebrand	<i>ūnǫǫ</i> , - ǫnīs , a pearl

3. *cǎrǫ*, *carnīs*, flesh *ēchǫ*, -**ūs**, an echo

160.

EXCEPTIONS in **ǫr**.

Neuter.

<i>marmǫr</i> , <i>marmǫrīs</i> , marble	<i>ǎdǫr</i> , <i>ǎdǫrīs</i> , spelt
<i>aequǫr</i> , <i>aequǫrīs</i> , the sea	<i>cǫr</i> , <i>cordīs</i> , the heart

Feminine.

arbǫr, *arbǫrīs*, a tree

161.

EXCEPTIONS in **ǫs**, **ǫs**.

Feminine.

<i>cǫs</i> , <i>cǫtīs</i> , a whetstone	<i>dǫs</i> , <i>dǫtīs</i> , a dowry
---	-------------------------------------

Neuter.

<i>ǫs</i> , <i>ǫrīs</i> , the mouth	<i>ǫs</i> , <i>ossīs</i> , a bone
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

162.

EXCEPTIONS in **ǫr**, **ǫr**.

Neuter.

<i>cǎdǎvǫr</i> , - īs , a corpse	<i>spīnthǫr</i> , - īs , a bracelet
<i>pīpǫr</i> , - īs , pepper	<i>tūbǫr</i> , - īs , a hump
<i>cīcǫr</i> , - īs , a chick-pea	<i>ūbǫr</i> , - īs , a teat
<i>ītǫr</i> , <i>ītīnǫrīs</i> , a journey	<i>vǫr</i> , - īs , spring
<i>pǎpǎvǫr</i> , - īs , the poppy	(<i>verbǫr</i> , - īs), a blow

Common.

līntǫr, -**rīs**, a boat

163. EXCEPTIONS in *ēs*, *ēs* imparisyllabic.

Neuter.

aes, *aerīs*, *copper*

Feminine.

mergēs, *-ītīs*, *a sheaf*
sēgēs, *-ētīs*, *a crop*
tēgēs, *-ētīs*, *a covering*
mercēs, *-ēdīs*, *a reward*

quīēs, *-ētīs* } *rest*
rēquīēs, *-ētīs* }
inquiēs, *-ētīs*, *restlessness*
compēs, *-ēdīs*, *a fetter*

Common.

ālēs, *-ītīs*, *a bird*

quādrūpēs, *-ēdīs*, *a quadruped*

II. FEMININES.

164. Nouns of the Third Declension in *ās*, *īs*, *aus*, *x*, *ēs* not increasing in the Genitive, and in *s* preceded by a consonant:

haec tempestās, *this storm*
haec aurīs, *this ear*
haec laus, *this praise*

haec rādx, *this root*
haec nūbēs, *this cloud*
haec hīems, *this winter.*

165. EXCEPTIONS in *ās*, *ās*.

Masculine.

ās, *assīs*, *an as (coin)*
vās, *vādīs*, *a surety*

ēlēphās, *-antīs*, *an elephant*
ādāmās, *-antīs*, *a diamond*

Neuter.

vās, *vāsīs*, *a vessel*; plur. *vāsā*, *-ōrūm* (2d decl.)

Indeclinable.

fās, *right*

nēfās, *wrong*

166. EXCEPTIONS in *īs*, *īs*.

Masculine.

1. All nouns in *nīs*, as: *ignīs*, *fire*; *amnīs*, *a river*; &c.
2. Also the following:

axīs, *-*, *an axis*
collīs, *-*, *a hill*
orbīs, *-*, *a circle*
angūīs, *-*, *a serpent*
fascīs, *-*, *a bundle*
postīs, *-*, *a post*
torquīs, *-*, *a collar*
sangūīs, *-īnīs*, *blood*

pulvīs, *-ērīs*, *dust*
lāpīs, *-īdīs*, *a stone*
vermīs, *-*, *a worm*
mensīs, *-*, *a month*
piscīs, *-*, *a fish*
ungūīs, *-*, *a claw*
fustīs, *-*, *a club*
ensīs, *-*, *a sword*

167.

EXCEPTIONS in **x**.

Masculine.

1. Greek nouns in **ax**, as: *thōrax*, a breast-plate;
2. Most nouns in **ex**, **-īcīs**, as: *cortex*, **-īcīs**, bark; *cūlex*, **-īcīs**, a gnat; &c. Only the following in **ex** are **Feminine**:

<i>lex</i> , lēgīs , a law	<i>faex</i> , faecīs , lees
<i>nex</i> , nēcīs , a murder	<i>sūpellex</i> , -ectīlīs , furniture
(prex), prēcēs , prayers	
3. Two in **ix**:

<i>cālix</i> , -īcīs , a cup	<i>fornix</i> , -īcīs , an arch
-------------------------------------	--

168.

EXCEPTIONS in **s** preceded by a consonant.

Masculine.

1. *fons*, **-tīs**, a spring *pons*, **-tīs**, a bridge
mons, **-tīs**, a mountain *ādeps*, **-īpīs**, fat
dens, **-tīs**, a tooth
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally Adjectives with a masculine noun understood, as:

<i>ōriens</i> , -tīs (sōl), east	<i>rūdens</i> , -tīs (fūnīs), a cable
<i>occidens</i> , -tīs (sōl), west	<i>torrens</i> , -tīs (flūviūs), a torrent

III. NEUTERS.

169. Nouns of the Third Declension in

ā, ě, ī, c, l, n, t, ŷ, ār, ūr, ūs:

<i>hōc aenigmā</i> , this riddle	<i>hōc nōmēn</i> , this name
<i>hōc mārē</i> , this sea	<i>hōc cāpūt</i> , this head
<i>hōc lāc</i> , this milk	<i>hōc calcār</i> , this spur
<i>hōc ānīmāl</i> , this animal	<i>hōc fulgūr</i> , this lightning
<i>hōc tempūs</i> , this time.	

170.

EXCEPTIONS.

Masculine.

<i>sāl</i> , sālīs , salt	<i>lēpūs</i> , -ōrīs , a hare
<i>sōl</i> , sōlīs , the sun	<i>mūs</i> , mūrīs , a mouse
<i>turtūr</i> , -īs , a turtle-dove	<i>rēn</i> , rēnīs , kidney
<i>furfūr</i> , -īs , bran	<i>līēn</i> , līēnīs , } spleen
<i>vultūr</i> , -īs , a vulture	<i>splēn</i> , splēnīs }
<i>sālār</i> , -īs , trout	<i>pectēn</i> , -īnīs , a comb

Feminine.

jūventūs, -ūtīs, *youth*
 sēnectūs, -ūtīs, *old age*
 virtūs, -ūtīs, *virtue*
 servītūs, -ūtīs, *slavery*
 sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety*
 sūs, sūīs, *a swine*

incūs, -ūdīs, *an anvil*
 pālūs, -ūdīs, *a marsh*
 pēcūs, -ūdīs, *a head of cattle*
 tellūs, -ūrīs, *the earth*
 grūs, grūīs, *a crane*

Fourth Declension.

171. Latin nouns whose genitive ends in ūs, are of the **Fourth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fourth Declension* ends in ū. Masculine and Feminine nouns end in the Nominative in ūs; Neuters in ū.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	fruc' tūs, <i>fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>
Gen.	fruc' tūs, <i>of fruit</i>	fruc' tū ūm, <i>of fruits</i>
Dat.	fruc' tū ī, <i>to fruit</i>	fruc' tī būs, <i>to fruits</i>
Acc.	fruc' tūm, <i>fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>fruits</i>
Voc.	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruit</i>	fruc' tūs, <i>O fruits</i>
Abl.	fruc' tū, <i>with fruit</i>	fruc' tī būs, <i>with fruits</i>
Nom.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>
Gen.	cor' nūs, <i>of a horn</i>	cor' nū ūm, <i>of horns</i>
Dat.	cor' nū (ūī), <i>to a horn</i>	cor' nī būs, <i>to horns</i>
Acc.	cor' nū, <i>a horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>horns</i>
Voc.	cor' nū, <i>O horn</i>	cor' nū ā, <i>O horns</i>
Abl.	cor' nū, <i>with a horn</i>	cor' nī būs, <i>with horns</i>

Examples for Practice :

sensūs, -ūs, <i>sense</i>	olfactūs, -ūs, <i>smell</i>	ōbītūs, -ūs, <i>death</i>
vīsūs, -ūs, <i>sight</i>	mōtūs, -ūs, <i>motion</i>	nūtūs, -ūs, <i>a nod</i>
gustūs, -ūs, <i>taste</i>	fluctūs, -ūs, <i>a flood</i>	gēlū, -ūs, <i>(icy) cold</i>
tactūs, -ūs, <i>touch</i>	cantūs, -ūs, <i>a song</i>	gēnū, -ūs, <i>the knee</i>

172. The following have the **Dative** and **Ablative** plural in ūbūs:

ācūs, ācūbūs, <i>a needle</i>	artūs, artūbūs, <i>a joint</i>
arcūs, arcūbūs, <i>a bow</i>	partūs, partūbūs, <i>birth</i>
lācūs, lācūbūs, <i>a lake</i>	portūs, portūbūs, <i>a harbor</i>
pēcū, pēcūbūs, <i>cattle</i>	tribūs, tribūbūs, <i>a tribe</i>
quercūs, quercūbūs, <i>an oak</i>	vērū, vērbūs, <i>a spit</i>
spēcūs, spēcūbūs, <i>a cave</i>	

173. *dōmūs, a house, is declined thus:*

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	dō' mūs, <i>a house</i>	dō' mūs, <i>houses</i>
Gen.	{ dō' mūs, <i>of a house</i>	{ dō' mū ūm, } <i>of houses</i>
	{ dō' mī, <i>at home</i>	{ dō mō' rūm, }
Dat.	dō' mū ī, <i>to a house</i>	dō' mī būs, <i>to houses</i>
Acc.	dō' mūm, <i>a house, home</i>	dō' mūs & dō' mōs, <i>houses</i>
Voc.	dō' mūs, <i>O house</i>	dō' mūs, <i>O houses</i>
Abl.	dō' mō, <i>with a house, from home</i>	dō' mī būs, <i>with houses</i>

Rule of Gender.

174. Most nouns of the Fourth Declension in ūs are masculine. The few words in ū are all neuter.

175.

EXCEPTIONS.

Feminine.

ācūs, -ūs, <i>a needle</i>	mānūs, -ūs, <i>the hand</i>
dōmūs, -ūs, <i>a house</i>	portīcūs, -ūs, <i>a gallery</i>
Idūs, -ūūm (pl.), <i>the Ides</i>	tribūs, -ūs, <i>a tribe</i>

[67. 68. 105. 106.]

Fifth Declension.

176. Nouns which have ēī or ēī in the genitive from ēs in the nominative are of the **Fifth Declension**.

The **Stem** of nouns of the *Fifth Declension* ends in e, which appears in all the cases.

Singular.

Nom.	dī' ēs, <i>a day</i>	rēs, <i>a thing</i>
Gen.	dī' ē' ī, <i>of a day</i>	rē' ī, <i>of a thing</i>
Dat.	dī' ē' ī, <i>to a day</i>	rē' ī, <i>to a thing</i>
Acc.	dī' ēm, <i>a day</i>	rēm, <i>a thing</i>
Voc.	dī' ēs, <i>O day</i>	rēs, <i>O thing</i>
Abl.	dī' ē, <i>with a day</i>	rē, <i>with a thing</i>

Plural.

Nom.	dī' ēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
Gen.	dī' ē' rūm, <i>of days</i>	rē' rūm, <i>of things</i>
Dat.	dī' ē' būs, <i>to days</i>	rē' būs, <i>to things</i>
Acc.	dī' ēs, <i>days</i>	rēs, <i>things</i>
Voc.	dī' ēs, <i>O days</i>	rēs, <i>O things</i>
Abl.	dī' ē' būs, <i>with days</i>	rē' būs, <i>with things</i>

Examples for Practice :

fāciēs, -ēī, *the face*

effigīēs, -ēī, *a likeness*

spēs, -ēī, *hope*

glāciēs, -ēī, *ice*

sērīēs, -ēī, *a series*

sūperficiēs, -ēī, *a surface*

fīdēs, -ēī, *faith*

prōgēniēs, -ēī, *offspring*

177. Of all the nouns of the Fifth Declension only two are complete in the plural, viz.: dīēs and rēs.

178. The *e* of *ei* in the genitive and dative is long when preceded by a vowel, as: dī-ē-ī, and short when preceded by a consonant, as: fī-dē-ī.

Rule of Gender.

179. All Nouns of this declension are feminine, except mērīdīēs, *mid-day*, and the plural of dīēs, *a day*, which are always masculine.

180. In the singular, dīēs is usually masculine, but sometimes feminine, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time, or time in general, as: constitūtā dīē, *on the appointed day*.

[69. 70. 105. 106.]

Irregular Nouns.

181. The Latin has only a few **Indeclinable Nouns**; viz.:

fās, *right*

nēfās, *wrong*

instār, *an image, kind*

nēcessē, *necessary*

mānē, *morning*

nīhīl, *nothing*

pondō, (lit. *in weight*), *pounds*

ōpūs, *need*

besides the names of the Latin and Greek letters, as: A, D, alphā, deltā, and some foreign words, as: sīnāpī, *mustard*.

182. Some nouns are **Defective** in Case, *i. e.*, they want one or more cases.

The commonest of them are:

(dīcīō), *sway*, Nom. sing. wanting.

fors, *chance*, only in Nom. & Abl. sing. fortē, *by chance*.

(frux), *fruit*, Nom. sing. wanting.

grātēs, *thanks*, only in Nom. & Acc. plur.

impētūs, *attack*, only in Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing. & Nom. & Acc. plur.

infītīās, *denial*, only in Acc. with īrē, as: infītīās īrē, *to deny*.

němŏ, *no one*, only in Dat. & Acc. — Gen. & Abl. supplied by nulliūs, nullō.

(ops), *aid*, Nom. sing. wanting; plur. ōpēs, *wealth*, entire.

(prex), *prayer*, only in Dat. & Abl. sing. přeci, přecě; — plur. přecēs, *prayers*, entire.

(sordēs), *filth*, only Acc. & Abl. sing. sordēm, sordě; plural entire.

(spons), *will*, only in Abl. sing. spontě, as: měa spontě, *of my own accord*.

věnŭm, *sale*, only in Acc. sing. as: věnŭm dārě, *to put up for sale*.

(verběr), *whip*, only in Abl. sing. verběrě; plur. verběra, *whipping*.

(vix or vīcīs), *change*, only in Gen., Acc. & Abl. sing. (vīcīs, vīcēm, vīcě). In the plural, only the Genitive is wanting.

vīs, *force*, only in Nom., Acc. & Abl. sing. — Plural entire.

183. Of many verbal nouns in sŭs or tŭs of the *Fourth Declension*, only the Ablative singular is used; as: jussŭ měō, *by my command*; concessŭ, impulsŭ, permissŭ, rōgātŭ měō.

184. The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic words does not occur; such are:

cōs, cōr, fāx, lŭx, ōs, pāx, rōs, sāl, sōl, tŭs, vēr.

185. Monosyllabic neuters, such as: aes, jŭs, rŭs, are found only in the Nominative and Accusative Plural: aerā, jūrā, rurā.

186. Defective in Number are those which want either the singular or the plural.

187. Nouns used in the Singular only: **Singulariā tantum.** Some nouns, from the nature of the things meant, have no plural, as: justītīā, *justice*; fāmēs, *hunger*; aurŭm, *gold*. There are also other nouns which lack the plural, without any obvious reason, as: spēcīmĕn, *a sample*; vespĕr, *evening*; mĕrīdīēs, *mid-day*; vĕr, *spring*.

188. Nouns used in the Plural only: **Pluraliā tantum.** The commonest of them are:

First Declension.

dĕlīciāe, -ārŭm, *delight*

dīvītīae, -ārŭm, *riches*

exsĕquīae, -ārŭm, *a funeral*

fĕriāe, -ārŭm, *holidays*

indŭtīae, -ārŭm, *a truce*

insīdiāe, -ārŭm, *an ambush*

nundīnae, -ārŭm, *market-day*

nuptīae, -ārŭm, *a wedding*

tĕnĕbrae, -ārŭm, *darkness*

Athēnae, -ārŭm, *Athens*

Second Declension.

armă, -ōrŭm, <i>arms, weapons</i>	libērī, -ōrŭm, <i>children</i>
fastī, -ōrŭm, <i>an almanac</i>	postērī, -ōrŭm, <i>descendants</i>
gēminī, -ōrŭm, <i>twins</i>	Delphī, -ōrŭm, <i>Delphi</i>

Third Declension.

Alpēs, -īŭm, <i>the Alps</i>	faucēs, -īŭm, <i>the throat</i>
mājōrēs, -ŭm, <i>ancestors</i>	mānēs, -īŭm, <i>the shades of the dead</i>

189. Some words have, besides the *general* meaning for both numbers, a *special* meaning for the **Plural**.

Singular.

aedēs, -īs, <i>a temple</i>
āquā, -ae, <i>water</i>
auxiliŭm, -ī, <i>help</i>
castrŭm, -ī, <i>a fort</i>
cōpiā, -ae, <i>abundance</i>
fīnīs, -, <i>an end, limit</i>
fortūnā, -ae, <i>fortune</i>
grātiā, -ae, <i>favor</i>
littērā, -ae, <i>a letter (of the alphabet)</i>
impēdimentŭm, -ī, <i>a hindrance</i>
ōpērā, -ae, <i>a task; service</i>
(ops) ōpīs, <i>help; power</i>
pars, -tīs, <i>a part</i>
rostrŭm, -ī, <i>a beak</i>
sāl, sālīs, <i>salt</i>

Plural.

aedēs, -īŭm, <i>a house</i>
āquae, -ārŭm, <i>medicinal springs</i>
auxiliā, -ōrŭm, <i>auxiliary troops</i>
castrā, -ōrŭm, <i>a camp</i>
cōpīae, -ārŭm, <i>troops</i>
fīnēs, -īŭm, <i>borders; a territory</i>
fortūnae, -ārŭm, <i>wealth</i>
grātiāe, -ārŭm, <i>favours; thanks</i>
littērae, -ārŭm, <i>an epistle; learning; literature</i>
impēdimentā, -ōrŭm, <i>baggage</i>
ōpērae, -ārŭm, <i>workmen</i>
ōpēs, -ŭm, <i>wealth</i>
partēs, -īŭm, <i>a part (on the stage); a party</i>
rostrā, -ōrŭm, <i>a speaker's platform</i>
sālēs, -īŭm, <i>witty sayings</i>

190. Some nouns have two or more forms of Declension (**Heteroclites**). Such are:

laurŭs, -ī	laurŭs, -ŭs, <i>a laurel-tree</i>
ēventŭs, -ŭs	ēventŭm, -ī, <i>an event</i>
luxŭriā, -ae	luxŭriēs, -ēī, <i>luxury</i>
mātērīā, -ae	mātērīēs, -ēī, <i>matter</i>
segnītiā, -ae	segnītiēs, -ēī, <i>slothfulness</i>
ēlēphantŭs, -ī	ēlēphās, -antīs, <i>an elephant</i>
plēbs, -īs	plēbēs, -ēī, <i>the common people</i>

vās, vāsīs, *a vessel, etc. etc.*

[107. 108.]

191. The following have the plural in a gender different from that of the singular (**Heterogeneous Nouns**):

Singular.	Plural.
jōcūs, -ī, <i>a joke, jest</i>	jōcī, -ōrūm, & jōcā, -ōrūm, <i>jokes</i>
lōcūs, -ī, <i>a place</i>	{ lōcī, -ōrūm, <i>passages (in books)</i> lōcā, -ōrūm, <i>places</i>
margārītā, -ae, <i>a pearl</i>	{ margārītae, -ārūm } <i>pearls</i> margārītā, -ōrūm }
caelūm, -ī, <i>heaven</i>	caelī, -ōrūm, <i>heavens</i>
ēpūlūm, -ī, <i>a banquet</i>	ēpūlae, -ārūm, <i>a meal</i>
balnēūm, -ī, <i>a bath</i>	balnēae, -ārūm, <i>baths, a bathhouse</i>
frēnūm, -ī, <i>a bridle</i>	frēnī, -ōrūm, & frēnā, -ōrūm, <i>a bit</i>

[107. 108.]

192. Sometimes a Noun in combination with an adjective takes a special signification, both parts being regularly inflected, as: jūs-jūrandūm, *an oath*; rēspubiā, *a commonwealth*.

Singular.

	<i>an oath</i>	<i>a commonwealth</i>
Nom.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Gen.	jū ris jū ran' dī	rē ī pu' blī cae
Dat.	jū rī jū ran' dō	rē ī pu' blī cae
Acc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēm pu' blī cām
Voc.	jūs jū ran' dūm	rēs pu' blī cā
Abl.	jū rē jū ran' dō	rē pu' blī cā

Plural.

Nom.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cae
Gen.	—	rē rūm pu blī cā' rūm
Dat.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs
Acc.	jū rā jū ran' dā	rēs pu' blī cās
Voc.	—	rēs pu' blī cae
Abl.	—	rē būs pu' blī cīs

[109. 110.]

Proper Names.

193. The Romans regularly had three names, as: Marcus Tullius Cicēro.

194. Marcus, the **praenōmen**, corresponded to our *Christian name*; Tullius, the **nōmen**, was the *name* of the gens or clanship; the **cognōmen**, or *surname*, as Cicēro, indicated the particular family to which one belonged. Another species of *surname*, **agnōmen**,

was some significant epithet, as: *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africānus*, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

195. The three names, however, were not always used, commonly two. The Romans, when addressing a person, generally used the praenomen.

196. Women had no personal names, but were known only by that of their gens with a feminine termination, as: *Julia*, the daughter of *Gaius Julius Caesar*.

197. The commonest praenomens are thus abbreviated:

A. = Aulus	L. = Lucius	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus
App. = Appius	M. = Marcus	S. (Sex.) = Sextus
C. (G.) = Gaius	M'. = Manius	Serv. = Servius
Cn. (Gn.) = Gnaeus	Mam. = Mamercus	Sp. = Spurius
D. = Decimus	N. (Num.) = Numerius	T. = Titus
K. = Kaeso	P. = Publius	Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius.

ADJECTIVES.

198. Adjectives and Participles are in general declined like substantives. They distinguish gender by different forms in the same word, corresponding with their substantives in **Number, Gender, and Case**.

199. Some Adjectives denote each gender by a different termination, and consequently have **three terminations**, viz.:

Of the **First and Second Declensions**:

ūs, ā, ūm, as: *bōnūs, -ā, -ūm*, good (see 72.)

ēr, ā, ūm, as: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{libēr, -ā, -ūm, free (see 74.)} \\ \text{nīgēr, -rā, -rūm, black (see 76.)} \end{array} \right.$

ūr, ā, ūm, only *sātūr, -ā, -ūm*, sated (see 66.)

[21. 22. 25. 26.]

Of the **Third Declension**:

ēr, īs, ě, as: *ācēr, -rīs, -rĕ*, sharp (see 137.) [55. 56.]

200. Some Adjectives of the **Third Declension** have **two terminations** — one for the masculine and feminine, and the other for the neuter; they end in:

īs, ě, as: *tristīs, -ĕ*, sad (see 139.)

ōr, ūs, as: *dūrīōr, -ūs*, harder (see 139.)

[55. 56. 73. 74.]

201. Some Adjectives of the Third Declension have only one termination which is common to all genders; they end in:

- l**, as: *vīgīl, wakeful* (see **90**.)
r, as: *paupēr, poor* (see **95**.)
s, as: *prūdēns, sensible* (see **141**.)
x, as: *fēlix, happy* (see **141**.)

[57—60.]

Irregular Adjectives.

202. The following Adjectives with their Compounds have the Genitive singular in *īūs*, and the Dative in *ī* for all genders (see **77**.).

<i>ālūs, -ā, -ūd, another</i>	<i>ullūs, -ā, -ūm, any</i>
<i>nullūs, -ā, -ūm, no</i>	<i>ūnūs, -ā, -ūm, one</i>
<i>sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, alone</i>	<i>altēr, -ā, -ūm, the other (of two)</i>
<i>tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, whole</i>	<i>ūtēr, -rā, -rūm, which (of two)</i>
<i>neutēr, -rā, -rūm, neither</i>	

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	<i>sō' lūs</i>	<i>sō' lā</i>	<i>sō' lūm, alone</i>
Gen.	<i>sō lī' ūs</i>	<i>sō lī' ūs</i>	<i>sō lī' ūs</i>
Dat.	<i>sō' lī</i>	<i>sō' lī</i>	<i>sō' lī</i>

Like *ūtēr* are declined its compounds, as *ūterque, ūtrāquē, ūtrumquē, either*. Of *altērūtēr, the one or the other of the two*, either both parts are declined; *altēr ūtēr, altērā ūtrā, altērūm ūtrūm*; or only the latter: *altērūtēr, altērūtērā, altērūtērūm*.

[71. 72.]

203. Many Adjectives of one termination, especially such as end in *ēr, ēs, ōr, ōs, fex*, are not used in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural of the neuter gender, viz.:

<i>dēgēnēr, -īs, degenerate</i>	<i>compōs, -ōtīs, capable</i>
<i>paupēr, -īs, poor</i>	<i>artīfex, -īcīs, artificial</i>
<i>ālēs, -ītīs, winged</i>	<i>īnops, īnōpīs, needy</i>
<i>bīpēs, -ēdīs, two-footed</i>	<i>rēdux, -ūcīs, returning</i>
<i>dīvēs, -ītīs, rich</i>	<i>sons, -tīs, guilty</i>
<i>sospēs, -ītīs, safe</i>	<i>supplex, -īcīs, suppliant</i>
<i>concōlōr, -ōrīs, of the same co-</i>	<i>trux, -ūcīs, fierce</i>
<i>mēmōr, -īs, mindful</i>	[lor <i>vīgīl, -īs, wakeful</i>

204. Of *cētērī, -ae, -ā, the rest*, the Nominative singular masculine is not used. *singūlī, -ae, -ā, one at a time*; *paucī, -ae, -ā, few*; and *plērīquē, plēraequē, plērāquē* are not used in the singular.

205. The following Adjectives are **Indeclinable**:

frūgī, <i>frugal</i>	tōt, <i>so many</i>
něquām, <i>worthless</i>	quōt, <i>how many</i>

206. The Substantives: victōr, *conqueror*, and ultōr, *avenger*, are also used as Adjectives — *victorious*, *vengeful* — and, in poetry, they admit even a neuter of the plural, as: armā victričiā, *victorious arms*.

Comparison.

207. Adjectives have three degrees of **Comparison**: the **Positive**, the **Comparative**, and the **Superlative**.

208. The **Positive Degree** is expressed by the adjective in its simple form, as: dūrūs, *hard*.

209. The **Comparative Degree** ends in **ōr** for the masculine and feminine, and in **ūs** for the neuter, and is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **īs** of the positive into **iōr**, **iūs**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Comparative.
excelsūs, <i>high</i>	excelsī	excelsiōr, excelsiūs
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libēriōr, libēriūs
pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrī	pulchriōr, pulchriūs
ācēr, <i>sharp</i>	ācrīs	ācriōr, ācriūs
lēvis, <i>light</i>	lēvis	lēviōr, lēviūs
sāgax, <i>sagacious</i>	sāgācīs	sāgāciōr, sāgāciūs
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i>	prudentīs	prudentiōr, prudentiūs

210. Comparatives are of the *Third Declension*; they are declined like dūriōr, dūriūs (see **139**.)

211. The **Superlative** is formed by changing the genitive ending **ī** or **īs** of the positive into **issimūs**, **issimā**, **issimūm**; thus:

Positive.	Genitive.	Superlative.
prētīōsūs, <i>valuable</i>	prētīōsī	prētīōsissimūs
diligēns, <i>diligent</i>	diligētīs	diligentissimūs

212. Superlatives are declined like bōnūs, -ā, -ūm of the *First* and *Second Declensions*.

213. Adjectives in **ēr** add **rīmūs** to the positive to form the **Superlative**, as:

pulchēr, *beautiful*, pulcherrīmūs; ācēr, *sharp*, ācerrīmūs.

214. *vētūs*, *old*, has **Superlative** *vēterrīmūs*, and *mātūrūs*, *ripe*, *mātūrissīmūs* and sometimes *māturrīmūs*.

215. Six adjectives in *īlis* form their **Superlative** by changing the ending *īs* into *īmūs*, as: *fācilīs*, *fācillīmūs*. These are:

<i>fācilīs</i> , <i>easy</i> , <i>fācillīmūs</i>	<i>difficilīs</i> , <i>difficult</i> , <i>difficillīmūs</i>
<i>similīs</i> , <i>like</i> , <i>simillīmūs</i>	<i>dissimilīs</i> , <i>unlike</i> , <i>dissimillīmūs</i>
<i>grācilīs</i> , <i>slender</i> , <i>grācillīmūs</i>	<i>hūmilīs</i> , <i>low</i> , <i>hūmillīmūs</i>

216. Compound adjectives in *dīcūs*, *fīcūs*, and *vōlūs* form their **Comparative** and **Superlative** by changing *ūs* into *entiōr*, *entissīmūs*, as:

<i>bēnēvōlūs</i> , <i>benevolent</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentiōr</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentissīmūs</i>
<i>bēnēfīcūs</i> , <i>beneficent</i>	<i>bēnēfīcentiōr</i>	<i>bēnēfīcentissīmūs</i>
<i>magnificūs</i> , <i>magnificent</i>	<i>magnificentiōr</i>	<i>magnificentissīmūs</i>

217. In like manner are compared:

<i>ēgēnūs</i> (<i>ēgens</i>), <i>needy</i>	<i>ēgentiōr</i>	<i>ēgentissīmūs</i>
<i>prōvidūs</i> , <i>provident</i>	<i>prōvidentiōr</i>	<i>prōvidentissīmūs</i>

218. Adjectives in *ūs*, preceded by a vowel, are compared by means of *māgis* and *maximē*, *more* and *most*:

<i>dūbīūs</i> , <i>doubtful</i>	<i>māgis dūbīūs</i>	<i>maximē dūbīūs</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

219. But adjectives in *quūs* are regular:

<i>antīquūs</i> , <i>old</i>	<i>antīquiōr</i>	<i>antīquissīmūs</i>
------------------------------	------------------	----------------------

[73—76.]

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

220. The following adjectives have different words for expressing the different degrees of comparison:

<i>bōnūs</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>mēlīōr</i> , <i>better</i>	<i>optīmūs</i> , <i>best</i>
<i>mālūs</i> , <i>bad</i>	<i>pējōr</i> , <i>worse</i>	<i>pessimūs</i> , <i>worst</i>
<i>magnūs</i> , <i>great</i>	<i>mājōr</i> , <i>greater</i>	<i>maxīmūs</i> , <i>greatest</i>
<i>parvūs</i> , <i>little</i>	<i>mīnōr</i> , <i>less, lesser</i>	<i>mīnimūs</i> , <i>least</i>
<i>multūs</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>plūs</i> , <i>more</i>	<i>plūrīmūs</i> , <i>most</i>

221. *plūs*, *more*, is thus declined:

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. & Acc.	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plū' rēs</i>	<i>plū' rā</i> (<i>plū' rī ā</i>)
Gen.	<i>plū' rīs</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>	<i>plū' rī ūm</i>
Dat. & Abl.	—	<i>plū' rī būs</i>	<i>plū' rī būs</i>

complūrēs, *several, very many*, is declined like *plūrēs*.

222. Mark the degrees of the two **Indeclinable** adjectives:

nēquām, *worthless*
frūgī, *frugal*

nēquiōr
frūgālīor

nēquissimūs
frūgālissimūs

223. The following adjectives have two **Irregular Superlatives**:

extērūs, <i>outward</i>	extēriōr, <i>outer</i>	extrēmūs, (extīmūs), <i>outmost</i>
infērūs, <i>below</i>	infēriōr, <i>lower</i>	infīmūs, imūs, <i>lowest</i>
postērūs, <i>next</i>	postēriōr, { <i>latter</i> { <i>later</i>	postrēmūs, } <i>last</i> postūmūs, } <i>latest</i>
sūpērūs, <i>above</i>	sūpēriōr, <i>upper</i>	suprēmūs, summūs, <i>highest</i>

224. The following adjectives are **Defective** in their comparison:

I. Positive wanting.

Comparative.

cītēriōr, *more on this side*
intēriōr, *inner*
priōr, *prior, former*
prōpiōr, *nearer*
ultēriōr, *ulterior, further*
ōciōr, *swifter*
pōtiōr, *preferable*
dētēriōr, *worse*

Superlative.

cītīmūs, *most on this side*
intīmūs, *innermost, intimate*
primūs, *foremost, first*
proxīmūs, *nearest*
ultīmūs, *furthest, last*
ōcissimūs, *swiftest*
pōtissimūs, *most important*
dētērimūs, *worst*

II. Comparative wanting.

Positive.

dīversūs, *different*
falsūs, *false*
inclūtūs, *renowned*
invītūs, *unwilling*
nōvūs, *new*
sācēr, *sacred*
vētūs, *old*

Superlative.

dīversissimūs, *most different*
falsissimūs, *falsest*
inclūtissimūs, *most renowned*
invītissimūs, *most unwilling*
nōvissimūs, *latest, last*
sācerrimūs, *most sacred*
vēterrimūs, *oldest*

III. Superlative wanting.

Positive.

jūvēnīs, *young*
sēnex, *old*
ālācēr, *gay*
longinquūs, *far*
propinquūs, *near*
pōpūlārīs, *popular*
sālūtārīs, *salutary*

Comparative.

jūniōr, *younger*
sēniōr, *older*
ālācriōr, *gayer*
longinquiōr, *farther*
propinquiōr, *nearer*
pōpūlārīōr, *more popular*
sālūtārīōr, *more salutary*

225. Some Adjectives are, **by their meaning**, excluded from comparison. Among these are certain words implying *matter, time, place, and person*, as: *ferrĕūs, iron; hōdiernūs, of to-day; Rōmānūs, Roman; pāternūs, paternal*; also words denoting the lowest or highest degree of a quality, as: *singŭlārīs, alone of its kind*, and Compounds with **pĕr** and **prae**; but *praeclārūs, renowned*, and *pertīnax, very tenacious*, are found in the Comparative and Superlative.

226. Again, there are Adjectives which, **from their form**, or without any obvious reason, are incapable of comparison, viz.:

1. Adjectives in **ūs**, after a vowel (see **218.**).

2. Compound Adjectives containing a verb or a substantive, as: *particeps, sharing; ĩnops, needy*; except Compounds of *dīcō, faciō, vōlō* (see **216.**), and Compounds of *ars, cōr, mens*, as: *ĩners, unskilled; concors, harmonious; āmens, senseless*; which are regularly compared.

3. Adjectives in **īcūs, ĩmūs, ĩnūs, ĩnūs, ōrūs, ūlūs**, as: *mōdīcūs, moderate; lĕgītīmūs, lawful; dīūtīnūs, lasting; mātūtīnūs, early; cānōrūs, melodious; sĕdŭlūs, busy*.

4. Many Adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct headings:

<i>cādŭcūs, drooping</i>	<i>mĕrūs, mere</i>
<i>cīcŭr, tame</i>	<i>mĕdīōcrīs, middling</i>
<i>curvūs, curved</i>	<i>mĕmōr, mindful</i>
<i>fĕrūs, wild</i>	<i>mīrūs, wonderful</i>
<i>gnārūs, skilful</i>	<i>pār, equal</i>
<i>ĩnpīgĕr, active</i>	<i>ĩmpār, unequal</i>
<i>lācĕr, torn</i>	<i>rŭdīs, rude</i>
<i>lassūs, wearied</i>	<i>trŭx, fierce</i>
<i>mŭtīlūs, maimed</i>	<i>vāgūs, vagrant.</i>

227. Participles, when used as Adjectives, are regularly compared, as: *doctŭs, learned; doctīōr, doctissīmūs; abstīnens, abstinent, abstīnentiōr, abstīnentissīmūs*.

Adverbs formed from Adjectives are compared as follows (see **440.**):

<i>cārūs, dear:</i>	<i>cārĕ,</i>	<i>cārīūs,</i>	<i>cārissīmĕ</i>
<i>mīsĕr, wretched:</i>	<i>mīsĕrĕ,</i>	<i>mīsĕrīūs,</i>	<i>mīserrīmĕ</i>
<i>lĕvīs, light:</i>	<i>lĕvītĕr,</i>	<i>lĕvīūs,</i>	<i>lĕvissīmĕ</i>

NUMERALS.

Numeral Adjectives.

228. Cardinal Numerals express number in its simplest form, and answer the question *quōt? how many?*

1	I	ūnūs, ūnā, ūnūm
2	II	dŭō, dŭae, dŭō
3	III	trēs, triā
4	IV	quattuōr
5	V	quinquē
6	VI	sex
7	VII	septēm
8	VIII	octō
9	IX	nōvēm
10	X	dēcēm
11	XI	undēcīm
12	XII	dŭōdēcīm
13	XIII	trēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt trēs)
14	XIV	quattuōrdēcīm (dēcēm ēt quattuōr)
15	XV	quindēcīm (dēcēm ēt quinquē)
16	XVI	sēdēcīm (dēcēm ēt sex)
17	XVII	septendēcīm (dēcēm ēt septēm)
18	XVIII	dŭōdēvigintī (dēcēm ēt octō)
19	XIX	undēvigintī (dēcēm ēt nōvēm)
20	XX	vīgintī
21	XXI	ūnūs ēt vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī ūnūs
22	XXII	dŭō ēt vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī dŭō
23	XXIII	trēs ēt vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī trēs
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XXXX or XL	quādrāgintā
50	L	quinquāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septuāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	LXXXX or XC	nōnāgintā
100	C	centūm
101	CI	centūm ēt ūnūs <i>or</i> centūm ūnūs
200	CC	dūcentī, -ae, -ā
300	CCC	trēcentī, -ae, -ā
400	CCCC	quādringentī, -ae, -ā

500	D or IO	quingentī, -ae, -ă
600	DC or IOC	sescentī, -ae, -ă
700	DCC or IOCC	septingentī, -ae, -ă
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ă
900	DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -ă
1000	M or CIO	millē
2000	MM or IIM	dŭō milīā
5000	IOO	quinquē milīā
6000	IOOM	sex milīā
10 000	CCIOO	dēcēm milīā
50 000	IOOO	quinquāgintā milīā
100 000	CCCIOOO	centūm milīā [milīā
1 000 000	CCCCIOOOO	dēcīēs centēnā milīā or dēcīēs centūm

229. The three first are declined; the rest, as far as one hundred, are indeclinable. Hundreds, as: dŭcentī, **ae**, **ă**, trēcentī, **ae**, **ă**, etc., are declined like the plural of bŏnŭs.

ŭnŭs, ŭnă, ŭnŭm, *one*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. ŭ' nŭs	ŭ' nă	ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nae	ŭ' nă
G. ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nī' ŭs	ŭ nō' rūm	ŭ nă' rūm	ŭ nō' rūm
D. ŭ' nī	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nī	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs
A. ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' năm	ŭ' nŭm	ŭ' nōs	ŭ' năs	ŭ' nă
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
A. ŭ' nō	ŭ' nă	ŭ' nō	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs	ŭ' nīs

The plural of ŭnŭs occurs only with such nouns as have no singular, as: ŭnă castră, *one camp*; ŭnae nuptīae, *one marriage*.

dŭō, dŭae, dŭō, *two*

trēs, trīă, *three*

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. dŭ' ō	dŭ' ae	dŭ' ō	trēs	trī' ă
G. dŭ ō' rūm	dŭ ă' rūm	dŭ ō' rūm	trī' ūm	trī' ūm
D. dŭ ō' bŭs	dŭ ă' bŭs	dŭ ō' bŭs	trī' bŭs	trī' bŭs
A. dŭ' ōs, dŭ' ō	dŭ' ăs	dŭ' ō	trēs	trī' ă
V. —	—	—	—	—
A. dŭ ō' bŭs	dŭ ă' bŭs	dŭ ō' bŭs	trī' bŭs	trī' bŭs

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both*, is declined like dŭō.

230. In the singular millē is an **Indeclinable Adjective**; in the plural it is a **Substantive** and takes the genitive, as: millē milītēs, *a thousand soldiers*; dŭō milīā milītŭm, *two thousand soldiers*.

231. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English, as: *vīgintī ūnūs*, *twenty-one*, or *ūnūs ēt vīgintī*, *one and twenty*.

232. From 100 on, units follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; *ēt*, *and*, is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations, as:

centūm ēt quinquāgintā or centūm quinquāgintā, 150

centūm ēt quinquāgintā trēs or centūm quinquāgintā trēs, 153.

233. *sexcentī* is used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* in English.

[79. 80.]

234. Ordinal Numerals denote a series, and answer the question *quōtūs? which one in the series?*

1st, <i>prīmūs, -ā, -ūm</i> (<i>prīor, -ūs</i>)	23d, <i>tertīūs ēt vīcēsīmūs</i>
2d, <i>sēcundūs</i> (<i>altēr</i>)	30th, <i>tricēsīmūs or trigēsīmūs</i>
3d, <i>tertīūs</i>	
4th, <i>quartūs</i>	40th, <i>quādrāgēsīmūs</i>
5th, <i>quintūs</i>	50th, <i>quīquāgēsīmūs</i>
6th, <i>sextūs</i>	60th, <i>sexāgēsīmūs</i>
7th, <i>septīmūs</i>	70th, <i>septuāgēsīmūs</i>
8th, <i>octāvūs</i>	80th, <i>octōgēsīmūs</i>
9th, <i>nōnūs</i>	90th, <i>nōnāgēsīmūs</i>
10th, <i>dēcīmūs</i>	100th, <i>centēsīmūs</i>
11th, <i>undēcīmūs</i>	101st, <i>centēsīmūs (ēt) prīmūs</i>
12th, <i>dūdēcīmūs</i>	200th, <i>dūcentēsīmūs</i>
13th, <i>tertīūs dēcīmūs</i>	300th, <i>trēcentēsīmūs</i>
14th, <i>quartūs dēcīmūs</i>	400th, <i>quādringentēsīmūs</i>
15th, <i>quintūs dēcīmūs</i>	500th, <i>quīngentēsīmūs</i>
16th, <i>sextūs dēcīmūs</i>	600th, <i>sescentēsīmūs</i>
17th, <i>septīmūs dēcīmūs</i>	700th, <i>septīngentēsīmūs</i>
18th, <i>octāvūs dēcīmūs or dūō-dēvīcēsīmūs</i>	800th, <i>octīngentēsīmūs</i>
19th, <i>nōnūs dēcīmūs or undē-vīcēsīmūs</i>	900th, <i>nongentēsīmūs</i>
20th, <i>vīcēsīmūs or vīgēsīmūs</i>	1000th, <i>millēsīmūs</i>
21st, <i>ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs or vīcēsīmūs prīmūs</i>	2000th, <i>bīs millēsīmūs</i>
22d, <i>altēr ēt vīcēsīmūs or vīcēsīmūs sēcundūs</i>	3000th, <i>tēr millēsīmūs</i>
	10 000th, <i>dēcīēs millēsīmūs</i>
	100 000th, <i>centīēs millēsīmūs</i>
	1 000 000th, <i>dēcīēs centīēs millēsīmūs</i>

235. All **Ordinals** are adjectives in **ūs, ā, ūm**; except **priōr**, **priūs**, *first*, which is used instead of **primūs** in speaking of *two*; **altēr** is often used for **sēcundūs**. In compounding **Ordinals**, observe the same practice as with **Cardinals** (see **231**).

236. **Ordinals** with **pars**, *part*, expressed or understood, may be used to denote fractions, as: **tertiā pars**, *a third*; **quartā pars**, *a fourth*; **duae quintae**, *two fifths*. [81. 82.]

237. **Distributive Numerals** answer the question **quōtēnī?** *how many at a time?* and are declined like the plural of **bōnūs**.

1. singŭlī, -ae, -ā, <i>one by one</i>	22. vīcēnī bīnī
2. bīnī, -ae, -ā, <i>two by two</i> , etc.	23. vīcēnī ternī
3. ternī (trīnī)	30. trīcēnī
4. quāternī	40. quādrāgēnī
5. quīnī	50. quinquāgēnī
6. sēnī	60. sexāgēnī
7. septēnī	70. septuāgēnī
8. octōnī	80. octōgēnī
9. nōvēnī	90. nōnāgēnī
10. dēnī	100. centēnī
11. undēnī	200. dūcēnī
12. dūōdēnī	300. trēcēnī
13. ternī dēnī	400. quādrīngēnī
14. quāternī dēnī	500. quīngēnī
15. quīnī dēnī	600. sexcēnī
16. sēnī dēnī	700. septīngēnī
17. septēnī dēnī	800. octīngēnī
18. octōnī dēnī <i>or</i> dūōdēvīcēnī	900. nongēnī
19. nōvēnī dēnī <i>or</i> undēvīcēnī	1000. singŭlā mīliā
20. vīcēnī	2000. bīnā mīliā
21. vīcēnī singŭlī	3000. ternā mīliā, etc.

238. **Distributives** are used as follows:

In the meaning of *so many a piece* or *on each side*, as: **Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus congressi sunt**, *Scipio and Hannibal met, with an interpreter on each side*;

In multiplication, as: **bis bina**, *twice two*;

Instead of **Cardinals**, when a noun is plural in form, but singular in meaning, as: **bīna castrā**, *two camps*. But with these, **ūnī, -ae, -ā** is used instead of **singŭlī**, and **trīnī** instead of **ternī**; as: **ūnae littērae**, *one letter*; **trīnae littērae**, *three letters*.

239. Multiplicative Numerals answer the question *quōtūplex? how many fold?* They are adjectives in **ex, icis**.

simplex, **-īcis**, *single*
dūplex, *twofold, double*
trīplex, *threefold, triple*
quādrūplex, *fourfold*

quincūplex, *fivefold*
septemplex, *sevenfold*
dēcemplex, *tenfold*
centūplex, *a hundredfold*

240. Proportional Numerals answer the question *quōtūplūs? how many times as great?* and are adjectives in **ūs, ā, ūm**. Only a few are commonly used.

simplūs, **-ā, -ūm**, *simple*
dūplūs, *twice as great*
trīplūs, *three times as great*

quādrūplūs, *four times as great*
septūplūs, *seven times as great*
octūplūs, *eight times as great*

Numeral Adverbs.

241. Numeral Adverbs answer the question *quōtīens? how often?* Being adverbs, they are indeclinable.

1. sēmēl, *once*
2. bīs, *twice*
3. tēr, *thrice*
4. quātēr, *four times, etc.*
5. quinquēš
6. sexīš
7. septīš
8. octīš
9. nōvīš
10. dēcīš
11. undēcīš
12. dūōdēcīš
13. terdēcīš (trēdēcīš)
14. quātērdēcīš (quattūōrdēcīš)
15. quinquēšdēcīš (quindēcīš)
16. sexīšdēcīš
17. septīšdēcīš
18. dūōdēvīcīš (octīš dēcīš)
19. undēvīcīš (nōvīš dēcīš)
20. vīcīš

21. sēmēl ēt vīcīš
22. bīs ēt vīcīš
23. tēr ēt vīcīš
30. trīcīš
40. quādrāgīš
50. quinquāgīš
60. sexāgīš
70. septūāgīš
80. octōgīš
90. nōnāgīš
100. centīš
200. dūcentīš
300. trēcentīš
400. quādringentīš
500. quingentīš
600. sescentīš
700. septingentīš
800. octingentīš
900. nongentīš
1000. milīš

2000. bīs milīēs	100 000. centiēs milīēs
3000. tēr milīēs	1 000 000. milīēs milīēs
10 000. dēciēs milīēs	2 000 000. bīs milīēs milīēs

242. The Accusative and Ablative neuter of Ordinals are used as **Adverbs of order**, thus:

prīmūm, prīmō, *first, at first*;
(sēcundūm, sēcundō) commonly: itērūm, *secondly*;
tertīūm, tertīō, *thirdly*.

[81. 82.]

PRONOUNS.

243. Pronouns distinguish the Person speaking, or the **First Person**, from the Person spoken to, or the **Second Person**, and the object spoken of, **Third Person**. Accordingly, we have pronouns of the First, Second, and Third persons which are used either substantively or adjectively, or both substantively and adjectively.

244. Strictly speaking, the Pronouns of the *First* and *Second Persons* are the only **Personal Pronouns**, because they apply to Persons, *and to these only*.

245. The **Personal Pronouns** of the *First Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.	
		Singular.	
Nom.	ě' gŏ, <i>I</i>		
Gen.	mě' ĭ, <i>of me</i>		
Dat.	mĭ' hĭ, <i>to me</i>		
Acc.	mē, <i>me</i>		měūs, měă, měūm, <i>my</i>
Voc.	—		
Abl.	mē, <i>from me</i>		
		Plural.	
Nom.	nōs, <i>we</i>		
Gen.	no' strūm } <i>of us</i>		
	no' strĭ }		
Dat.	nō' bīs, <i>to us</i>		nostěr, nostră, nostrūm, <i>our</i>
Acc.	nōs, <i>us</i>		
Voc.	—		
Abl.	nō' bīs, <i>from us</i>		

246. The Personal Pronouns of the *Second Person* are:

SUBSTANTIVE.		Singular.	POSSESSIVE.
Nom.	tū, <i>thou</i>		
Gen.	tū' ī, <i>of thee</i>		
Dat.	tī' bī, <i>to thee</i>		
Acc.	tē, <i>thee</i>		tūis, tūā, tūūm, <i>thy, your</i>
Voc.	tū, <i>O thou</i>		
Abl.	tē, <i>from thee</i>		
		Plural.	
Nom.	vōs, <i>ye or you</i>		
Gen.	ve' strūm } <i>of you</i> ve' strī }		
Dat.	vō' bīs, <i>to you</i>		vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm, <i>your</i>
Acc.	vōs, <i>you</i>		
Voc.	vōs, <i>O ye or O you</i>		
Abl.	vō' bīs, <i>from you</i>		

The Genitives *nostrūm*, *vestrūm* are used *partitively* in reference to number.

247. The Personal Pronouns of the *Third Person* (*he, she, it, they*) are wanting in Latin; they are represented by the Determinative *is, ēā, id, he, she, it*.

SUBSTANTIVE.			Singular.	POSSESSIVE.
m.	f.	n.		
N. is	ē' ā	id	<i>he, she, it</i>	
G. ē' jūs	ē' jūs	ē' jūs	<i>of him, etc.</i>	(<i>supplied by the Gen.</i>)
D. ē' ī	ē' ī	ē' ī	<i>to, for him</i>	ējūs, <i>his, hers,</i>
A. ē' ūm	ē' ām	id	<i>him, her, it</i>	<i>its</i>
A. ē' ō	ē' ā	ē' ō	<i>from, by him</i>	
			Plural.	
N. ī' ī, ē' ī	ē' ae	ē' ā	<i>they</i>	
G. ē' ō' rūm	ē' ā' rūm	ē' ō' rūm	<i>of them</i>	ēōrūm, ēārūm,
D. ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	<i>to, for them</i>	ēōrūm, <i>their</i>
A. ē' ōs	ē' ās	ē' ā	<i>them</i>	<i>or theirs</i>
A. ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	ī' īs, ē' īs	<i>from, by them</i>	

Pronouns of the *Third Person*, from their signification, cannot have a **Vocative**.

248. The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person is:

SUBSTANTIVE.

Singular.

POSSESSIVE.

Nom. —

Gen. sŭ' ĭ, *of him(self), her(self), it(self)*

Dat. sĭ' bĭ, *to him(self), her(self), it(self)*

Acc. sē, *him(self), her(self), it(self)*

Abl. sē, *with him(self), her(self), it(self)*

sŭūs, sŭă, sŭūm, *his,*
her(s), its own

Plural.

Nom. —

Gen. sŭ' ĭ, *of them(selves)*

Dat. sĭ' bĭ, *to them(selves)*

Acc. sē, *them(selves)*

Abl. sē, *with them(selves)*

sŭūs, sŭă, sŭūm, *their*
own

249. Possessives are declined like Adjectives of the first and second Declensions; but mēūs has the **Voc. Sing. Masc.** mī (see 67).

250. From *nostr* and *vestr* come the **Patrial Adjectives**: *nostrās, -ātīs, of our country; vestrās, -ātīs, of your country.*

251. The particle **-mēt** is joined for emphasis to all forms of *ĕgŏ*, except *nostrūm*; to all forms of *tū*, except *tū* and *vestrūm*; to *sĭbĭ*, *sē* and the forms of *sŭūs*; as: *ĕgŏmēt, I myself. -tē* is joined to *tū*: *tūtē, yourself; -ptē* is joined to the **Ablative Singular** of the Possessive, as: *suaptē mănū, by his own hand; sē, the Accusative of sŭi, is often doubled, as: sēsē.* [27. 28. 83. 84.]

Pronouns of the Third Person.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

252. The proper Demonstratives are:

hĭc, this; istē, that; illē, that (yonder).

Singular.

Plural.

hĭc, haec, hŏc, this (of mine)

m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
G. hŭ' jŭs	hŭ' jŭs	hŭ' jŭs	hŏ' rūm	hā' rūm	hŏ' rūm
D. hŭ' ĭc	hŭ' ĭc	hŭ' ĭc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hŏc	hŏs	hās	haec
A. hŏc	hāc	hŏc	hīs	hīs	hīs

istě, istā, istūd, that (of yours)

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
N. i' stě	i' stā	i' stūd	i' stī	i' stae	i' stā
G. i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stī' ūs	i stō' rūm	i stā' rūm	i stō' rūm
D. i' stī	i' stī	i' stī	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs
A. i' stūm	i' stām	i' stūd	i' stōs	i' stās	i' stā
A. i' stō	i' stā	i' stō	i' stīs	i' stīs	i' stīs

illě, illā, illūd, that (yonder)

N. il' lě	il' lā	il' lūd	il' lī	il' lae	il' lā
G. il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lī' ūs	il lō' rūm	il lā' rūm	il lō' rūm
D. il' lī	il' lī	il' lī	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs
A. il' lūm	il' lām	il' lūd	il' lōs	il' lās	il' lā
A. il' lō	il' lā	il' lō	il' līs	il' līs	il' līs

253. *istě* and *illě* have forms in **c**, but only in the Nominative, Accusative and Ablative singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative plural (*neuter only*), thus:

	Singular.			Plural.
Nom.	istīc	istaec	istōc (commonly istūc)	istaec
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istōc (" istūc)	istaec
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc	

254. Forms of *hīc* ending in **s**, and the neuter *hōc* are found with the intensive **-cě**, as: *hūjuscě*, *hoccě*. There is also an interrogative form with **-ně**, *hīcīně*, *haecīně*, *hōcīně*? *this here*?

[85. 86.]

Determinative Pronouns.

255. Certain pronouns connected with the Demonstratives in meaning, are ordinarily called **Determinatives**. These are:

īs, *he, that*; **īdēm**, *the same*; **ipsě**, *he, self*.

īs, *ěā*, *īd*, *he, she, it; that*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	īs	ě' ā	īd	ī' ī, ě' ī	ě' ae	ě' ā
Gen.	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' jūs	ě' ō' rūm	ě' ā' rūm	ě' ō' rūm
Dat.	ě' ī	ě' ī	ě' ī	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs
Acc.	ě' ūm	ě' ām	īd	ě' ōs	ě' ās	ě' ā
Abl.	ě' ō	ě' ā	ě' ō	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs	ī' īs, ě' īs

īdēm, ēādēm, īdēm, *the same.*

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ī' dēm	ě' ā dēm	ī' dēm
Gen.	ē jūs' dēm	ē jus' dēm	ē jus' dēm
Dat.	ě ī' dēm	ě ī' dēm	ě ī' dēm
Acc.	ě un' dēm	ě an' dēm	ī' dēm
Abl.	ě ō' dēm	ě ā' dēm	ě ō' dēm

Plural.

Nom.	ī ī' dēm, ē ī' dēm	ě ae' dēm	ě' ā dēm
Gen.	ě ō run' dēm	ě ā run' dēm	ě ō run' dēm
Dat.	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm
Acc.	ě ōs' dēm	ě ās' dēm	ě' ā dēm
Abl.	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm	ě īs' dēm, ī īs' dēm

ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm, *he, she, it; self.*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	ip' sē	ip' sǎ	ip' sūm	ip' sī	ip' sae	ip' sǎ
G.	ip' sī ūs	ip' sī ūs	ip' sī ūs	ip' sō' rūm	ip' sǎ' rūm	ip' sō' rūm
D.	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sī	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs
A.	ip' sūm	ip' sām	ip' sūm	ip' sōs	ip' sās	ip' sǎ
A.	ip' sō	ip' sǎ	ip' sō	ip' sīs	ip' sīs	ip' sīs

[85, 86.]

Relative Pronouns.

256. The Relative Pronoun is

quī, quae, quōd, *who, which, that.*

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cū' jūs	cū' jūs	cū' jūs	quō' rūm	quā' rūm	quō' rūm
D.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs
A.	quēm	quām	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
A.	quō	quā	quō	quī' būs	quī' būs	quī' būs

257. Ancient and rare forms: quīs (queis) for quībūs; quī for quō, quā, chiefly with -cūm; quīcūm = quōcūm, *with whom.*

258. The following are **General Relatives**:

Adjective.	quicunque	quaecunque	quodcunque, <i>whichever</i>
Substantive.	quisquis, <i>whoever</i>	—	quidquid, <i>whatever</i>

259. They are declined in the same manner as the simple words; **cunque** is invariable; of **quisquis** both parts are declined, but it is generally used in these two forms only: **quisquis**, *whoever*; **quidquid**, *whatever*. [87. 88.]

Interrogative Pronouns.

260. The **Interrogative** (that is question-asking) pronouns are:

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Substantive.	quīs? <i>who?</i>		quīd? <i>what?</i>
Adjective.	quī?	quae?	quōd? <i>which?</i>
Subst. and Adj.	ūtēr?	ūtrā?	ūtrūm? <i>who? which of two?</i>

Singular.

Nom.	quīs? <i>who?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Gen.	cū' jūs? <i>whose?</i>	cū' jūs? <i>of what?</i>
Dat.	cūi? <i>to or for whom?</i>	cūi? <i>to or for what?</i>
Acc.	quēm? <i>whom?</i>	quīd? <i>what?</i>
Abl.	quō? <i>from or with whom?</i>	quō? <i>from or with what?</i>

261. The Plural of **quīs**, **quīd**? *who, what?* and both numbers of **quī**, **quae**, **quōd**? *which?* are the same as the forms of the **Relative** **quī**, **quae**, **quōd**, *who, which*.

262. For the Declension of **ūtēr** see **77**.

263. To all cases of **quīs**? **quīd**? the particle **nām** (literally *for*) may be appended for the sake of emphasis, answering to our English *pray*, as: **quidnām** *āgīs?* *pray, what are you doing?*

264. From **cūjūs**, *whose?* comes the **Patrial Adjective**

cūjās, **-ātīs**, *of whose country?* [87. 88.]

Indefinite Pronouns.

265. The following are **Indefinite Pronouns**:

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
quīs (subst. & adj.)	quae or quā	quīd (subst.), <i>any one</i>
quī (adj.)	quae or quā	quōd (adj.), <i>any one, any</i>
āliquīs (subst. & adj.)	āliquā	āliquīd (subst.), <i>some, some one</i>
āliquī (adj.)	āliquā	āliquōd (adj.), <i>some, some one</i>
quīdām (subst. & adj.)	quaedām	{ quiddām (subst.) } <i>a certain</i>
		{ quoddām (adj.) } <i>one</i>

quispiām (subst. & adj.)	quaepiām	{ quidpiām (subst.)	{ some one,
quisquām (subst.)	—	{ quodpiām (adj.)	{ some
quisquē (subst. & adj.)	quaequē	quidquām (subst.),	any one (no pl.)
		{ quodquē (adj.)	{ each one
quīvis (subst. & adj.)	quaevis	{ quidvis (subst.)	{ any one
		{ quodvis (adj.)	{ you please,
quīlibēt (subst. & adj.)	quaelībēt	{ quidlibēt (subst.)	{ any one
		{ quodlibēt (adj.)	{ you like

266. They are all declined like the **Interrogatives**, except *āli-* *quīs*, which has in the feminine singular and the neuter plural *ālī-quā*. They take *quid* in the neuter when used substantively, and *quod* when used adjectively; *quisquām*, *any one*, is almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences.

267. *ūnusquisquē*, *ūnāquaeque*, *ūnumquidquē*, *ūnumquodquē*, *each one*, *every one*, *each*, is used only in the singular, and both *ūnūs* and *quisquē* are declined: Gen. *ūnīūs* *cujusquē*, Dat. *ūnīcuiquē*, and so on.

268. Akin to *Indefinite Pronouns* are **Indefinite Adjectives**:

ullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>any</i>	ālīūs, -ā, -ūd, <i>another</i>
nullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>no</i>	altēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>the other (of two)</i>
nonnullūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>some</i>	neutēr, -rā, -rūm, <i>neither</i>

To *ullūs* and *nullūs* the corresponding nouns are: *nēmō* (*-īnīs*), *nobody*, and *nīhīl* (indeclinable), *nothing*.

269. Mark the following **Pronominal Adjectives**:

Demonstrative.	Relative.
tālīs, -ē, <i>such</i>	quālīs, -ē, <i>such as</i>
tantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>so great</i>	quantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>as great</i>
tōt, <i>so many</i>	quōt, <i>as many as</i>
Interrogative.	Indefinite.
quālīs, -ē? <i>what? of what sort?</i>	ālīquantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>some, con-</i>
quantūs, -ā, -ūm? <i>how great?</i>	<i>siderable</i>
quōt? <i>how many?</i>	ālīquōt, <i>some</i>

Of these *tōt*, *quōt*, *ālīquōt* are indeclinable, the rest are declined like adjectives.

They are called **Correlatives**, when used in pairs, so that one refers or answers to the other, as: *tālīs..quālīs*, *such..as; like..like*; *tantūs..quantūs*, *so great..as; tōt..quōt*, *so many..as*;

VERBS.

270. The **Essential Characteristic** of a verb is that it ascribes some action, state, or quality to a subject. Verbs, like Nouns and Pronouns, have their inflection, or changes of form in order to express certain changes of meaning; this inflection is called their **Conjugation**.

The forms of **Conjugation** are:

Voices, genēra; **Tenses**, tempōra; **Moods**, mōdi;
Numbers and **Persons**, numēri et persōnae.

Voices.

271. Some verbs are usually followed by an object signifying that at which the action of the verb is directed. They are said to be **Transitive Verbs** and express an assertion in two forms, called the **Active Voice** and the **Passive Voice**.

272. The **Active Voice** denotes that the action proceeds from the subject, as: canis puērum mordēbat, *the dog bit the boy*. The **Passive** denotes that the subject receives the action of the verb, as: puer mordebātur a cane, *the boy was bitten by the dog*.

273. Other verbs, again, express an action which is limited to the subject, as: puer currit, *the boy runs*. They are called **Intransitive Verbs**, and from their nature cannot be regularly used in the **Passive Voice**.

274. Transitive verbs may be used without any expressed object (*absolutely*), as: puer scribit, *the boy writes*.

275. A **Reflexive Verb** is one that represents the action as exerted by the subject upon itself. The **Passive Voice** often has a reflexive meaning, as: occasio datur, *the occasion offers, presents itself*.

276. The **Active** and **Passive Voices** in Latin are equivalent to the corresponding English forms. Many verbs are only used in the **Passive** form, but with an active or reflexive signification; they are called **Deponents**.

277. Some verbs which form their Perfect like *Deponents*, are called **Semi-Deponents**, as:

audēō, -ēre, <i>to dare</i>	ausūs sūm, <i>I dared</i>
gaudēō, -ēre, <i>to rejoice</i>	gāvīsūs sūm, <i>I rejoiced</i>
sōlēō, -ēre, <i>to be wont</i>	sōlītūs sūm, <i>I was wont</i>
fīdō, -ere, <i>to trust</i>	fīsūs sūm, <i>I trusted</i>

278. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect **Passive** Participle with **Active** meaning, viz.:

cēnō, -āre, <i>to dine</i>	cēnātūs, <i>having dined</i>
prandēō, -ēre, <i>to breakfast</i>	pransūs, <i>having breakfasted</i>
pōtō, -āre, <i>to drink</i>	pōtūs, <i>having drunk</i>
jūrō, -āre, <i>to swear</i>	jūrātūs, <i>having sworn</i>

279. Again, a few **Active** verbs have a **Passive** meaning; they are sometimes called **Neutral Passives**, viz.:

vāpūlārē, *to be flogged*; vēnīrē (vēnūm īrē, *to go to sale*), *to be sold*.

Tenses.

280. There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

Of Continued Action

- the **Present**, as: scribō, *I am writing*;
- the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: scribebām, *I was writing*;
- the **Future**, as: scribām, *I shall write*.

Of Completed Action

- the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: scripsī, *I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);
 - the **Pluperfect**, as: scripsērām, *I had written*;
 - the **Future Perfect**, as: scripsérō, *I shall have written*.
- The Passive has the same tenses. (For Particulars see *Syntax*.)

Moods.

281. The **Moods** are three, **Indicative**, **Subjunctive**, and **Imperative**.

282. The **Indicative** is used for direct assertions or interrogations, corresponding, without any auxiliary, to the three forms of an English verb, viz.: the **Simple**, **Progressive**, and **Emphatic**, as: scribō, *I write, am writing, do write*.

283. The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances, as: *āmārēm, I should love.*

284. The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice, or exhortation*, as: *este diligentes, puēri, be diligent, boys!*

285. These three moods which are limited by *person, number, and time* are called the **Finite Verb**.

Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.

286. Outside of the Finite Verb, and partaking of the nature of nouns, are certain **Verbal Forms** which are so important that they are always given with the inflectional forms, as part of the conjugation of the verb.

287. The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**, as: *āmārē, to love.*

288. The **Gerund** is a verbal noun of the *Second Declension*, used only in the singular, and wanting the nominative and vocative; it corresponds to the English Participial Infinitive in *ing*, as: *āmandī, of loving.*

289. The **Gerundive** differs from the Gerund only in having adjective terminations in *ūs, ā, ūm*, thus: *Gerund, āmandī, of loving; Gerundive, āmandūs, -ā, -ūm, to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

290. The **Participle** gives, like the English Participle, the meaning of the verb in the form of an Adjective.

291. A Latin verb may have **four Participles**: two in the **Active**, the Present and the Future — *āmans, loving; āmātūrūs, about to love*; and two in the **Passive**, the Perfect, *āmātūs, loved*, and the Future, commonly called Gerundive; *āmandūs, deserving to be loved.*

292. The **Supine** is a verbal noun of the *Fourth Declension*, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm, āmātū, to love.*

Numbers and Persons.

293. There are two **Numbers**, *Singular* and *Plural*, and three **Persons**: *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

294. The **Personal Endings** for each of the three persons, both singular and plural, active and passive, are as follows:

PERSON.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Sing. 1. <i>I</i>	-ō, -m ām-ō	-r āmō-r
2. <i>thou, you</i>	-s āmā-s	-rīs āmā-rīs
3. <i>he, she, it</i>	-t āmā-t	-tūr āmā-tūr
Plur. 1. <i>we</i>	-mūs āmā-mūs	-mūr āmā-mūr
2. <i>you</i>	-tīs āmā-tīs	-mīnī āmā-mīnī
3. <i>they</i>	-nt āma-nt	-ntūr āma-ntūr

The *Imperative* has the following terminations:

Sing. 2.	-	āmā	-rē	āmā-rē
" 3.	-tō	āmā-tō	-tōr	āmā-tōr
Plur. 2.	-tē, -tōtē	āmā-tē	-mīnī	āmā-mīnī
" 3.	-ntō	āma-ntō	-ntōr	āma-ntōr

The *Perfect Indicative (active)* has the special terminations:

Sing. 2.	-stī	āmāvi-stī	Plur. 2.	-stīs	āmāvi-stīs
			" 3.	-ērunt	āmāv-ērunt

The Four Conjugations.

295. Verbs are inflected in four regular **Conjugations**, distinguished by the ending of the **Present Infinitive Active**, viz.:

- I. **First Conjugation** -āre; stem ending in ā;
- II. **Second Conjugation** -ēre; " " in ē;
- III. **Third Conjugation** -ere; " " in a consonant or ū;
- IV. **Fourth Conjugation** -ire; " " in ī.

296. Besides the **Present Infinitive** we need to know the **Present Indicative Active**, *First Person*, the **Perfect Indicative Active**, *First Person*, the **Former Supine**,

in order to understand the whole inflection of any verb. Hence these four are called the **Principal Parts**

or **Stem-forms**, and in describing any verb these are given. Their regular forms are seen in the following:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
I. āmō	āmārē , <i>to love</i>	āmāvī	āmātūm
II. mōnēō	mōnērē , <i>to advise</i>	mōnūī	mōnītūm
III. lēgō	lēgērē , <i>to read</i>	lēgī	lectūm
IV. audīō	audīrē , <i>to hear</i>	audīvī	audītūm

297. The **Principal Parts** being known, the rest of the conjugation is found by the following rules.

Simple Forms of the Verb.

298. From the **PRESENT INDICATIVE** are formed:
the **Present Subjunctive** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ēm	ām-ō	ām-ēm
II.	-ēō	"	-ēām	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēām
III.	-ō	"	-ām	lēg-ō	lēg-ām
IV.	-īō	"	-īām	aud-īō	aud-īām

the **Imperfect Indicative** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ābām	ām-ō	ām-ābām
II.	-ēō	"	-ēbām	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēbām
III.	-ō	"	-ēbām	lēg-ō	lēg-ēbām
IV.	-īō	"	-īēbām	aud-īō	aud-īēbām

the **Future Indicative** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ābō	ām-ō	ām-ābō
II.	-ēō	"	-ēbō	mōn-ēō	mōn-ēbō
III.	-ō	"	-ām	lēg-ō	lēg-ām
IV.	-īō	"	-īām	aud-īō	aud-īām

the **Present Participle** by changing

I.	-ō	into	-ans	ām-ō	ām-ans
II.	-ēō	"	-ens	mōn-ēō	mōn-ens
III.	-ō	"	-ens	lēg-ō	lēg-ens
IV.	-īō	"	-iens	aud-īō	aud-iens

the **Gerundive** (and the **Gerund**) by changing

I.	-ō	into	-andūs	ām-ō	ām-andūs
II.	-ēō	"	-endūs	mōn-ēō	mōn-endūs
III.	-ō	"	-endūs	lēg-ō	lēg-endūs
IV.	-īō	"	-iendūs	aud-īō	aud-iendūs

299. From the PRESENT INFINITIVE are formed:

the **Imperfect Subjunctive Active** by adding **m**:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| I. ămără, ămără-m | III. lęgără, lęgără-m |
| II. mönără, mönără-m | IV. audără, audără-m |

the **Imperfect Subjunctive Passive** by adding **r**:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| I. ămără, ămără-r | III. lęgără, lęgără-r |
| II. mönără, mönără-r | IV. audără, audără-r |

the **Present Imperative Active** by dropping **rě**:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| I. ămă-rě, ămă | III. lęgă-rě, lęgă |
| II. mönă-rě, mönă | IV. audă-rě, audă |

the **Present Imperative Passive** identically:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| I. ămără | II. mönără | III. lęgără | IV. audără |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|

the **Present Infinitive Passive** by changing

- | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| I. ě into ī | ămăr-ě | ămăr-ī |
| II. ě " ī | mönăr-ě | mönăr-ī |
| III. ěrě " ī | lęg-ěrě | lęg-ī |
| IV. ě " ī | audăr-ě | audăr-ī |

300. From the PERFECT INDICATIVE are formed:

the **Pluperfect Indicative** by changing **ī** into **ěrăm**:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I. ămāv-ī, ămāv-ěrăm | III. lęg-ī, lęg-ěrăm |
| II. mönū-ī, mönū-ěrăm | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-ěrăm |

the **Future Perfect** by changing **ī** into **ěrō**:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| I. ămāv-ī, ămāv-ěrō | III. lęg-ī, lęg-ěrō |
| II. mönū-ī, mönū-ěrō | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-ěrō |

the **Perfect Subjunctive** by changing **ī** into **ěrīm**:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I. ămāv-ī, ămāv-ěrīm | III. lęg-ī, lęg-ěrīm |
| II. mönū-ī, mönū-ěrīm | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-ěrīm |

the **Pluperfect Subjunctive** by changing **ī** into **issēm**:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I. ămāv-ī, ămāv-issēm | III. lęg-ī, lęg-issēm |
| II. mönū-ī, mönū-issēm | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-issēm |

the **Perfect Infinitive** by changing **ī** into **issě**:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| I. ămāv-ī, ămāv-issě | III. lęg-ī, lęg-issě |
| II. mönū-ī, mönū-issě | IV. audīv-ī, audīv-issě |

301. From the SUPINE are formed:

the **Perfect Participle** by changing **ŭm** into **ŭs**:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I. āmāt-ŭm , āmāt-ŭs | III. lect-ŭm , lect-ŭs |
| II. mōnīt-ŭm , mōnīt-ŭs | IV. audīt-ŭm , audīt-ŭs |

the **Future Participle** by changing **ŭm** into **ūrŭs**:

- | | |
|---|---|
| I. āmāt-ŭm , āmāt-ūrŭs | III. lect-ŭm , lect-ūrŭs |
| II. mōnīt-ŭm , mōnīt-ūrŭs | IV. audīt-ŭm , audīt-ūrŭs |

302. Of the active tenses of continued action, viz.: **Present**, **Imperfect**, and **Future**, those ending in **ō** become passive by changing **ō** into **ōr**; those ending in **m**, by changing **m** into **r**, as:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I. ām-ō , ām-ōr | III. lēg-ō , lēg-ōr |
| āmē-m , āmē-r | lēgā-m , lēgā-r |
| II. mōnē-ō , mōnē-ōr | IV. audī-ō , audī-ōr |
| mōnēā-m , mōnēā-r | audiā-m , audiā-r |

TO TEACHERS. As the *theory* of conjugation is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the *Paradigms themselves* should be made very familiar, before the *systematic study* of the foregoing rules is taken up. At this stage, **AHN-HENN'S Paradigm Charts** exhibiting the *Essentials of Latin Conjugation*, will greatly help in mastering one of the numerous difficulties of the language.

Compound Forms.

303. All the rest are compound forms, made by the aid of the **Auxiliary** verb **essē**, *to be*:

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
sūm	essē, <i>to be</i>	fūī	—

INDICATIVE.

Present.	Perfect.
sūm, <i>I am</i>	fū' ī, <i>I have been (was)</i>
ēs, <i>thou art</i>	fū' ī' stī, <i>thou hast been</i>
est, <i>he, she, it is</i>	fū' īt, <i>he has been</i>
sū' mūs, <i>we are</i>	fū' ī' mūs, <i>we have been</i>
e' stīs, <i>you are</i>	fū' ī' stīs, <i>you have been</i>
sunt, <i>they are</i>	fū' ē' runt, <i>they have been</i>

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

ě' rām, *I was*
 ě' rās, *thou wast*
 ě' rāt, *he was*
 ě' rā' mūs, *we were*
 ě' rā' tīs, *you were*
 ě' rant, *they were*

Future.

ě' rō, *I shall be*
 ě' rīs, *thou wilt be*
 ě' rīt, *he will be*
 ě' rī mūs, *we shall be*
 ě' rī tīs, *you will be*
 ě' runt, *they will be*

Pluperfect.

fŭ' ě rām, *I had been*
 fŭ' ě rās, *thou hadst been*
 fŭ' ě rāt, *he had been*
 fŭ' ě rā' mūs, *we had been*
 fŭ' ě rā' tīs, *you had been*
 fŭ' ě rant, *they had been*

Future Perfect.

fŭ' ě rō, *I shall have been*
 fŭ' ě rīs, *thou wilt have been*
 fŭ' ě rīt, *he will have been*
 fŭ' ě rī mūs, *we shall have been*
 fŭ' ě rī tīs, *you will have been*
 fŭ' ě rint, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sīm, *may I be**
 sīs, *be thou, or may you be*
 sīt, *let him be (may he be)*
 sī' mūs, *let us be*
 sī' tīs, *be ye, or may ye be*
 sint, *let them be (may they be)*

Imperfect.

es' sēm, *I should be (were)*
 es' sēs, *thou wouldst be*
 es' sēt, *he would be*
 es' sē' mūs, *we should be*
 es' sē' tīs, *you would be*
 es' sent, *they would be*

Perfect.

fŭ' ě rīm, *I may have been*
 fŭ' ě rīs, *thou mayest have been*
 fŭ' ě rīt, *he may have been*
 fŭ' ě rī mūs, *we may have been*
 fŭ' ě rī tīs, *you may have been*
 fŭ' ě rint, *they may have been*

Pluperfect.

fŭ' is' sēm, *I should have been*
 fŭ' is' sēs, *thou wouldst have been*
 fŭ' is' sēt, *he would have been*
 fŭ' is' sē' mūs, *we should have been*
 fŭ' is' sē' tīs, *you would have been*
 fŭ' is' sent, *they would have been*

Future.

fŭ' tŭ' rūš, -ă, -ŭm	{	sīm, <i>I may be about to be</i>
		sīs, <i>thou mayest be about to be</i>
		sīt, <i>he may be about to be</i>
fŭ' tŭ' rī, -ae, -ă	{	sī' mūs, <i>we may be about to be</i>
		sī' tīs, <i>you may be about to be</i>
		sint, <i>they may be about to be</i>

* The rendering of the Subjunctive here given shows the most frequent meanings of its forms *when used independently*.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Present.	ēs, <i>be thou</i>	e' stě, <i>be ye</i>
Future.	e' stō, <i>thou shalt be</i> e' stō, <i>he shall be</i>	e stō' tě, <i>ye shall be</i> sun' tō, <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	es' sě, <i>to be</i>
Perfect.	fū is' sě, <i>to have been</i>
Future.	fū tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě, or fō'rě, <i>to be about to be</i>
Future Participle.	fū tū' rūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>about to be</i>

304. The Future Perfect is wanting in the Subjunctive which is represented, when necessary, by the Subjunctive of the Perfect or Pluperfect, according to the connection of the sentence.

305. The verb *essē* has no Gerund or Supine, and no Participle but the Future.

[111—114.]

306. Compounds of *essē*.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
absūm	ābessē, <i>to be absent, be away</i>	āfūi	—
adsūm	ādessē, <i>to be present</i>	adfūi	—
dēsūm	dēssē, <i>to be wanting</i>	dēfūi	—
insūm	inessē, <i>to be in</i>	infūi	—
intersūm	intēssē, <i>to be between</i>	interfūi	—
obsūm	ōbessē, <i>to be in the way</i>	obfūi	—
praesūm	praeessē, <i>to be over</i>	praefūi	—
prōsūm	prōdessē, <i>to be useful</i>	prōfūi	—
subsūm	sūbessē, <i>to be under</i>	wanting	—
sūpersūm	sūpēressē, <i>to remain over</i>	sūperfūi	—

307. All these Compounds are conjugated like *sūm*; but *prōsūm* inserts a *d* when *prō* would be followed by *e*, thus:

Present.	Imperf. Indic.	Imperf. Subj.	Future.
prōsūm	prōdērām	prōdessēm	prōdērō
prōdēs	prōdērās	prōdessēs	prōdērīs
prōdest	prōdērāt	prōdessēt	prōdērīt
prōsūmūs	prōdērāmūs	prōdessēmūs	prōdērīmūs
prōdestīs	prōdērātīs	prōdessētīs	prōdērītīs
prōsunt	prōdērant	prōdessent	prōdērunt

Imperative.

Infinitive.

prōdēs	prōdestē
prōdestō	prōdestōtē

prōdessē

308. Neither *sūm* nor any of its compounds has a present participle, except: *praesens*, **-tīs**, *present*; *absens*, **-tīs**, *absent*; *essē* is also compounded with **pōtīs**, **pōtē**, *able*, in the verb *possē*. For its inflection see **401**. [115. 116.]

309. The **Perfect**, **Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect**, and also the **Perfect Infinitive** in the **Passive Voice** are compound forms, made up of the **Perfect Participle** and the verb *essē* as an auxiliary, as:

Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *sūm*, *I have been or was loved*
Perf. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *es'sē*, *to have been loved*
Pluperf. *ā mā' tūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *ērām*, *I had been loved*
Fut. Perf. *ā mā' tūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *ērō*, *I shall have been loved*
Fut. Inf. *ā mā' tūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *fōrē*, *to be about to be loved*

310. In the compound tenses of the **Passive**, the **Participle** is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb, as:

bellum parātum est, *war has been prepared*.

Periphrastic Conjugation.

311. The **Periphrastic Conjugation** is formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle** (**Active**), and with the **Gerundive** (**Passive**).

312. **Active Periphrastic Conjugation.**

INDICATIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *sūm*, *I am about to love*
Imperf. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *ērām*, *I was about to love*
Future. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *ērō*, *I shall be about to love*
Perfect. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *fūī*, *I have been, or was about to love*
Pluperf. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *fūērām*, *I had been about to love*
Fut. Perf. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *fūērō*, *I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *sīm*, *I may be about to love*
Imperf. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *essēm*, *I should be about to love*
Future. (*wanting*)
Perfect. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *fūērīm*, *I may have been about to love*
Pluperf. *āmātūrūs*, **-ā**, **-ūm** *fūissēm*, *I should have been about to*
Fut. Perf. (*wanting*) [love]

INFINITIVE.

- Present. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm* *essē, to be about to love*
 Perfect. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissē, to have been about to love*

313. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

- Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *sūm, I have to be loved*
 Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *ērām, I had to be loved*
 Future. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *ērō, I shall have to be loved*
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūī, I (have) had to be loved*
 Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērām, I had had to be loved*
 Fut. Perf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērō, I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *sīm, I may have to be loved*
 Imperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *essēm, I should have to be loved*
 Future. *(wanting)*
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūērīm, I may have had to be loved*
 Pluperf. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissēm, I should have had to be loved*
 Fut. Perf. *(wanting)*

INFINITIVE.

- Present. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *essē, to have to be loved*
 Perfect. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm* *fūissē, to have had to be loved*

314. Impersonal Periphrastic Conjugation.

The Neuter of the Gerundive with *est, ērāt, etc.*, is used impersonally, if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vīvendūm est, we or you must live; mōriendūm est, we or you must die.* But the person *by whom* may also be added in the dative, thus:

- mihi* scribendum est, *I must or should write*
tibi scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*
ei scribendum est, *he must or should write*
nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write*
vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write*
eis scribendum est, *they must or should write*

[171. 172.]

315. The **Future Infinitive Passive** is a compound form made up of the **Supine** and **īrī** (lit. *to be gone*), which is the *Infinitive Passive* of the verb *irē, to go*.

- I. *āmātūm īrī*
 II. *mōnītūm īrī*

- III. *lectūm īrī*
 IV. *audītūm īrī*

316. First Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
 ămō, -ărě, to love

Perfect.
 ămāvī

Supine.
 ămātūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ă' mō, I love
 ă' mās, thou lovest
 ă' măt, he loves
 ă mă' mūs, we love
 ă mă' tīs, you love
 ă' mant, they love

ă' mēm, may I love
 ă' mēs, love thou
 ă' mēt, let him love
 ă mē' mūs, let us love
 ă mē' tīs, love ye
 ă' ment, let them love

Imperfect.

ă mă' bām, I was loving
 ă mă' bās, thou wast loving
 ă mă' băt, he was loving
 ă mă bā' mūs, we were loving
 ă mă bā' tīs, you were loving
 ă mă' bant, they were loving

ă mă' rēm, I should love
 ă mă' rēs, thou wouldst love
 ă mă' rēt, he would love
 ă mă rē' mūs, we should love
 ă mă rē' tīs, you would love
 ă mă' rent, they would love

Future.

ă mă' bō, I shall love
 ă mă' bīs, thou wilt love
 ă mă' bīt, he will love
 ă mă' bī mūs, we shall love
 ă mă' bī tīs, you will love.
 ă mă' bunt, they will love

ă mă tū' rūś, { sīm
 -ă, -ūm { sīs
 { sīt be about
 ă mă tū' rī, { sī' mūs
 -ae, -ă { sī' tīs to love
 { sīt

Perfect.

ă mă' vī, I have loved
 ă mă vi' stī, thou hast loved
 ă mă' vīt, he has loved
 ă mă' vī mūs, we have loved
 ă mă vi' stīs, you have loved
 ă mă vē' runt, they have loved

ă mă' vē rīm, I may have loved
 ă mă' vē rīs, thou mayest have l.
 ă mă' vē rīt, he may have loved
 ă mă vē rī mūs, we may have l.
 ă mă vē rī tīs, you may have l.
 ă mă' vē rint, they may have l.

Pluperfect.

ă mă' vē rām, I had loved
 ă mă' vē rās, thou hadst loved
 ă mă' vē răt, he had loved
 ă mă vē rā' mūs, we had loved
 ă mă vē rā' tīs, you had loved
 ă mă' vē rant, they had loved

ă mă vis' sēm, I should have l.
 ă mă vis' sēs, thou wouldst h. l.
 ă mă vis' sēt, he would have l.
 ă mă vis sē' mūs, we should h. l.
 ă mă vis sē' tīs, you would h. l.
 ă mă vis' sent, they would h. l.

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ă mā' vē rō, <i>I shall have loved</i>	(wanting)
ă mā' vē rīs, <i>thou wilt have loved</i>	
ă mā' vē rīt, <i>he will have loved</i>	
ă mā vē rī mūs, <i>we shall have loved</i>	
ă mā vē rī tīs, <i>you will have loved</i>	
ă mā' vē rint, <i>they will have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Present.	ă' mā, <i>love thou</i>	ă mā' tē, <i>love ye</i>
Future.	ă mā' tō, <i>thou shalt love</i>	ă mā tō' tē, <i>ye shall love</i>
	ă mā' tō, <i>he shall love</i>	ă man' tō, <i>they shall love</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ă mā' rē, <i>to love</i>	
Perfect.	ă mā vis' sē, <i>to have loved</i>	
Fut. Sing.	Nom. ă mā tū' rūš, -ă, -ūm es' sē	} <i>to be about to love</i>
"	Acc. ă mā tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur.	Nom. ă mā tū' rī, -ae, -ă es' sē	
"	Acc. ă mā tū' rōš, -ās, -ă es' sē	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ă' mans, ă man' tīs, <i>loving</i>
Future.	ă mā tū' rūš, ă mā tū' rā, ă mā tū' rūm, <i>about to love</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	ă man' dī, <i>of loving</i>	
Dat.	ă man' dō, <i>for loving</i>	
Acc.	ă man' dūm, <i>loving</i>	} <i>to love</i>
Abl.	ă man' dō, <i>by loving</i>	

[117-120.]

317. First Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ă mōr, <i>I am loved</i>	ă' mēr, <i>may I be loved</i>
ă mā' rīs, <i>thou art loved</i>	ă mē' rīs, <i>be thou loved</i>
ă mā' tūr, <i>he is loved</i>	ă mē' tūr, <i>let him be loved</i>
ă mā' mūr, <i>we are loved</i>	ă mē' mūr, <i>let us be loved</i>
ă mā' mī nī, <i>you are loved</i>	ă mē' mī nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
ă man' tūr, <i>they are loved</i>	ă men' tūr, <i>let them be loved</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres.	ă mǎ' rě, <i>be thou loved</i>	ă mǎ' mǐ nī, <i>be ye loved</i>
Fut.	ă mǎ' tǒr, <i>thou shalt be loved</i>	ă mǎ' tǒr, <i>he shall be loved</i>
	ă mǎ' tǒr, <i>he shall be loved</i>	ă man' tǒr, <i>they shall be loved</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present.	ă mǎ' rī, <i>to be loved</i>	
Perfect Sing.	Nom. ă mǎ' tūs, -ă, -ŭm es' sě	} <i>to have been loved</i>
"	Acc. ă mǎ' tŭm, -ăm, -ŭm es' sě	
Plur.	Nom. ă mǎ' tī, -ae, -ă es' sě	
"	Acc. ă mǎ' tōs, -ăs, -ă es' sě	
Future.	ă mǎ' tŭm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be loved</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	ă mǎ' tūs, ă mǎ' tă, ă mǎ' tŭm, <i>loved, beloved, or having been loved</i>
Gerundive.	ă man' dŭs, ă man' dă, ă man' dŭm, <i>to be loved, deserving to be loved</i>

Examples for Practice:

ăgītō, -ărě, <i>to agitate</i>	spērō, -ărě, <i>to hope for</i>
ēducō, -ărě, <i>to bring up</i>	occō, -ărě, <i>to harrow</i>
ēvitō, -ărě, <i>to avoid, shun</i>	compārō, -ărě, <i>to compare</i>
administrō, -ărě, <i>to govern</i>	cāvō, -ărě, <i>to (make) hollow</i>
turbō, -ărě, <i>to trouble</i>	lăcērō, -ărě, <i>to tear into pieces</i>
conservō, -ărě, <i>to preserve</i>	expugnō, -ărě, <i>to capture</i>
multō, -ărě, <i>to punish</i>	vastō, -ărě, <i>to lay waste</i>

[121. 122.]

318. Second Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
mōnēcō, -ērě, *to advise*

Perfect.
mōnŭi

Supine.
mōnītŭm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mǒ' nēc ō, *I advise*
mǒ' nēs, *thou advisest*
mǒ' nēt, *he advises*
mō nēc' mŭs, *we advise*
mō nēc' tīs, *you advise*
mǒ' nent, *they advise*

mǒ' nēc ăm, *may I advise*
mǒ' nēc ăs, *advise thou*
mǒ' nēc ăt, *let him advise*
mō nēc ă' mŭs, *let us advise*
mō nēc ă' tīs, *advise ye*
mǒ' nēc ant, *let them advise*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

mǒ nē' bām, <i>I was advising</i>	mǒ nē' rēm, <i>I should advise</i>
mǒ nē' bās, <i>thou wast advising</i>	mǒ nē' rēs, <i>thou wouldst advise</i>
mǒ nē' bāt, <i>he was advising</i>	mǒ nē' rēt, <i>he would advise</i>
mǒ nē' bā' mūs, <i>we were advis'g</i>	mǒ nē' rē' mūs, <i>we should advise</i>
mǒ nē' bā' tīs, <i>you were advis'g</i>	mǒ nē' rē' tīs, <i>you would advise</i>
mǒ nē' bant, <i>they were advis'g</i>	mǒ nē' rent, <i>they would advise</i>

Future.

mǒ nē' bō, <i>I shall advise</i>	mǒ nī tū' rūš, { -ā, -ūm {	sīm	} <i>be about</i>
mǒ nē' bīs, <i>thou wilt advise</i>		sīs	
mǒ nē' bīt, <i>he will advise</i>		sīt	
mǒ nē' bī mūs, <i>we shall advise</i>	mǒ nī tū' rī, { -ae, -ā {	sī' mūs	} <i>to advise</i>
mǒ nē' bī tīs, <i>you will advise</i>		sī' tīs	
mǒ nē' bunt, <i>they will advise</i>		sint	

Perfect.

mǒ' nū ī, <i>I (have) advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rīm, <i>I may have adv'd</i>
mǒ nū i' stī, <i>thou hast advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rīs, <i>thou mayest have a.</i>
mǒ' nū it, <i>he has advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rīt, <i>he may have adv'd</i>
mǒ nū' ī mūs, <i>we have advised</i>	mǒ nū ě rī mūs, <i>we may have a.</i>
mǒ nū i' stīs, <i>you have advised</i>	mǒ nū ě rī tīs, <i>you may have a.</i>
mǒ nū ě' runt, <i>they have advised</i>	mǒ nū' ě rint, <i>they may have a.</i>

Pluperfect.

mǒ nū' ě rām, <i>I had advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sēm, <i>I should have a.</i>
mǒ nū' ě rās, <i>thou hadst advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sēs, <i>thou wouldst h. a.</i>
mǒ nū' ě rāt, <i>he had advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sēt, <i>he would have a.</i>
mǒ nū ě rā' mūs, <i>we had adv'd</i>	mǒ nū is sē' mūs, <i>we should h. a.</i>
mǒ nū ě rā' tīs, <i>you had adv'd</i>	mǒ nū is sē' tīs, <i>you would h. a.</i>
mǒ nū' ě rant, <i>they had advised</i>	mǒ nū is' sent, <i>they would h. a.</i>

Future Perfect.

mǒ nū' ě rō, <i>I shall have advised</i>	(wanting)
mǒ nū' ě rīs, <i>thou wilt have adv'd</i>	
mǒ nū' ě rīt, <i>he will have advised</i>	
mǒ nū ě rī mūs, <i>we shall have a.</i>	
mǒ nū ě rī tīs, <i>you will have a.</i>	
mǒ nū' ě rint, <i>they will have a.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. mǒ' nē, <i>advise thou</i>	mǒ nē' tē, <i>advise ye</i>
Fut. mǒ nē' tō, <i>thou shalt advise</i>	mǒ nē tō' tē, <i>ye shall advise</i>
mǒ nē' tō, <i>he shall advise</i>	mǒ nen' tō, <i>they shall advise</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mǒ nē' rē, <i>to advise</i>	
Perf.	mǒ nū is' sē, <i>to have advised</i>	
Fut. Sing. Nom.	mǒ nī tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē	} <i>to be about to advise</i>
" Acc.	mǒ nī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	mǒ nī tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
" Acc.	mǒ nī tū' rōš, -ās, -ā es' sē	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mǒ' nens, mǒ nen' tīs, <i>advising</i>
Fut. mǒ nī tū' rūš, mǒ nī tū' rā, mǒ nī tū' rūm, <i>about to advise</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. mǒ nen' dī, <i>of advising</i>	
Dat. mǒ nen' dō, <i>for advising</i>	
Acc. mǒ nen' dūm, <i>advising</i>	mǒ' nī tūm } <i>to advise</i>
Abl. mǒ nen' dō, <i>by advising</i>	mǒ' nī tū } <i>to advise</i>

[125. 126]

319. Second Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

mǒ' nē ōr, <i>I am advised</i>	mǒ' nē ār, <i>may I be advised</i>
mǒ nē' rīs, <i>thou art advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' rīs, <i>be thou advised</i>
mǒ nē' tūr, <i>he is advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' tūr, <i>let him be advised</i>
mǒ nē' mūr, <i>we are advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' mūr, <i>let us be advised</i>
mǒ nē' mī nī, <i>you are advised</i>	mǒ nē ā' mī nī, <i>be ye advised</i>
mǒ nen' tūr, <i>they are advised</i>	mǒ nē an' tūr, <i>let them be adv'd</i>

Imperfect.

mǒ nē' bār, <i>I was advised</i>	mǒ nē' rēr, <i>I should be advised</i>
mǒ nē bā' rīs, <i>thou wast advised</i>	mǒ nē rē' rīs, <i>thou wouldst b. a.</i>
mǒ nē bā' tūr, <i>he was advised</i>	mǒ nē rē' tūr, <i>he would b. a.</i>
mǒ nē bā' mūr, <i>we were advised</i>	mǒ nē rē' mūr, <i>we should b. a.</i>
mǒ nē bā' mī nī, <i>you were adv'd</i>	mǒ nē rē' mī nī, <i>you would b. a.</i>
mǒ nē ban' tūr, <i>they were adv'd</i>	mǒ nē ren' tūr, <i>they would b. a.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future.

mó nē' bōr, *I shall be advised*
 mó nē' bē rīs, *thou wilt be adv'd*
 mó nē' bī tūr, *he will be advised*
 mó nē' bī mūr, *we shall be adv'd*
 mó nē bī' mī nī, *you will be adv'd*
 mó nē bun' tūr, *they will be a.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

Perfect.

I have been or was advised

I may have been advised

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { sūm
 { ěs
 { est
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { sū' mūs
 { e' stīs
 { sunt

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { sīm
 { sīs
 { sīt
 mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { sī' mūs
 { sī' tīs
 { sint

Pluperfect.

I had been advised

I should have been advised

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { ě' rām
 { ě' rās
 { ě' rāt

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { es' sēm
 { es' sēs
 { es' sēt

mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { ě rā' mūs
 { ě rā' tīs
 { ě' rant

mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { es sē' mūs
 { es sē' tīs
 { es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have been advised

(wanting)

mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm { ě' rō
 { ě' rīs
 { ě' rīt

mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā { ě' rī mūs
 { ě' rī tīs
 { ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. mó nē' rē, *be thou advised*

mó nē' mī nī, *be ye advised*

Fut. mó nē' tōr, *thou shalt be a.*

mó nē' tōr, *he shall be adv.*

mó nen' tōr, *they shall be adv.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	mō nē' rī, to be advised	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	mō' nī tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sē	} to have been advised
“ Acc.	mō' nī tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur. Nom.	mō' nī tī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
“ Acc.	mō' nī tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē	
Fut.	mō' nī tūm ī' rī, to be about to be advised	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	mō' nī tūs, mō' nī tā, mō' nī tūm, advised
Gerundive.	mō nen' dūs, mō nen' dā, mō nen' dūm, to be advised, deserving to be advised

Examples for Practice:

hābēō, -ērē, to have, maintain	dēbēō, -ērē, to owe
ādhibēō, -ērē, to employ, apply	exercēō, -ērē, to exercise
pārēō, -ērē, to obey	nōcēō, -ērē, to hurt, do harm
tācēō, -ērē, to be silent	terrēō, -ērē, to frighten
plācēō, -ērē, to please	vālēō, -ērē, to avail, be well
praebeō, -ērē, to afford, give	cōercēō, -ērē, to restrain

[127. 128.]

320. Third Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
lēgō, -ērē, to read	lēgī	lectūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

lē' gō, I read	lē' gām, may I read
lē' gīs, thou readest	lē' gās, read thou
lē' gīt, he reads	lē' gāt, let him read
lē' gī mūs, we read	lē' gā' mūs, let us read
lē' gī tīs, you read	lē' gā' tīs, read ye
lē' gunt, they read	lē' gant, let them read

Imperfect.

lē' gē' bām, I was reading	lē' gē' rēm, I should read
lē' gē' bās, thou wast reading	lē' gē' rēs, thou wouldst read
lē' gē' bāt, he was reading	lē' gē' rēt, he would read
lē' gē' bā' mūs, we were reading	lē' gē' rē' mūs, we should read
lē' gē' bā' tīs, you were reading	lē' gē' rē' tīs, you would read
lē' gē' bant, they were reading	lē' gē' rent, they would read

INDICATIVE.

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

lē' gām, *I shall read*
lē' gēs, *thou wilt read*
lē' gēt, *he will read*
lē' gē' mūs, *we shall read*
lē' gē' tīs, *you will read*
lē' gent, *they will read*

lec tū' rūš,	{	sīm	} <i>be about</i> <i>to read</i>
-ā, -ūm		sīs	
	sīt		
lec tū' rī,	{	sī' mūs	
-ae, -ā		sī' tīs	
	sint		

Perfect.

lē' gī, *I (have) read*
lē' gi' stī, *thou hast read*
lē' gīt, *he has read*
lē' gī mūs, *we have read*
lē' gi' stīs, *you have read*
lē' gē' runt, *they have read*

lē' gē rīm, *I may have read*
lē' gē rīs, *thou mayest have read*
lē' gē rīt, *he may have read*
lē' gē rī mūs, *we may have read*
lē' gē rī tīs, *you may have read*
lē' gē rint, *they may have read*

Pluperfect.

lē' gē rām, *I had read*
lē' gē rās, *thou hadst read*
lē' gē rāt, *he had read*
lē' gē rā' mūs, *we had read*
lē' gē rā' tīs, *you had read*
lē' gē rant, *they had read*

lē' gis' sēm *I should have read*
lē' gis' sēs, *thou wouldst have read*
lē' gis' sēt, *he would have read*
lē' gis sē' mūs, *we should have r.*
lē' gis sē' tīs, *you would have r.*
lē' gis' sent, *they would have read*

Future Perfect.

lē' gē rō, *I shall have read* (wanting)
lē' gē rīs, *thou wilt have read*
lē' gē rīt, *he will have read*
lē' gē rī mūs, *we shall have read*
lē' gē rī tīs, *you will have read*
lē' gē rint, *they will have read*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing.	lē' gē, <i>read thou</i>	Plur.	lē' gī tē, <i>read ye</i>
Fut.	“ lē' gī tō, <i>thou shalt read</i>	“	lē' gī tō' tē, <i>ye shall read</i>
	“ lē' gī tō, <i>he shall read</i>	“	lē' gun' tō, <i>they shall read</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	lē' gē rē, <i>to read</i>		
Perf.	lē' gis' sē, <i>to have read</i>		
Fut. Sing.	Nom.	lec tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm	} <i>to be about to read</i>
“	Acc.	lec tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	
Plur.	Nom.	lec tū' rī, -ae, -ā	
“	Acc.	lec tū' rōs, -ās, -ā	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. lě' gens, lě gen' tīs, *reading*

Fut. lec tū' rūs, lec tū' ră, lec tū' rūm, *about to read*

GERUND.

Gen. lě gen' dī, *of reading*

Dat. lě gen' dō, *for reading*

Acc. lě gen' dūm, *reading*

Abl. lě gen' dō, *by reading*

SUPINE.

lec' tūm } *to read*
lec' tū }

[133. 134.]

321. Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

lě' gōr, *I am read*

lě' gē rīs, *thou art read*

lě' gī tūr, *he is read*

lě' gī mūr, *we are read*

lě' gī' mī nī, *you are read*

lě' gun' tūr, *they are read*

lě' gār, *may I be read*

lě' gā' rīs, *be thou read*

lě' gā' tūr, *let him be read*

lě' gā' mūr, *let us be read*

lě' gā' mī nī, *be ye read*

lě' gan' tūr, *let them be read*

Imperfect.

lě' gē' bār, *I was read*

lě' gē' bā' rīs, *thou wast read*

lě' gē' bā' tūr, *he was read*

lě' gē' bā' mūr, *we were read*

lě' gē' bā' mī nī, *you were read*

lě' gē' ban' tūr, *they were read*

lě' gē' rēr, *I should be read*

lě' gē' rē' rīs, *thou wouldst be read*

lě' gē' rē' tūr, *he would be read*

lě' gē' rē' mūr, *we should be read*

lě' gē' rē' mī nī, *you would be read*

lě' gē' ren' tūr, *they would be read*

Future.

lě' gār, *I shall be read*

lě' gē' rīs, *thou wilt be read*

lě' gē' tūr, *he will be read*

lě' gē' mūr, *we shall be read*

lě' gē' mī nī, *you will be read*

lě' gen' tūr, *they will be read*

(wanting)

Perfect.

I was or have been read

I may have been read

lec' tūs, -ă, -ūm { sūm
 ēs
 est

lec' tūs, -ă, -ūm { sīm
 sīs
 sīt

lec' tī, -ae, -ă { sū' mūs
 es' tīs
 sunt

lec' tī, -ae, -ă { sī' mūs
 sī' tīs
 sint

INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I had been read

I should have been read

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm {
 { ě' rām
 { ě' rās
 { ě' rāt

 lec' tī, -ae, -ā {
 { ě rā' mūs
 { ě rā' tīs
 { ě' rant

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm {
 { es' sēm
 { es' sēs
 { es' sēt

 lec' tī, -ae, -ā {
 { es sē' mūs
 { es sē' tīs
 { es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have been read

lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm {
 { ě' rō
 { ě' rīs
 { ě' rīt

 lec' tī, -ae, -ā {
 { ě' rī mūs
 { ě' rī tīs
 { ě' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. lě' gě rě, *be thou read*

lě gī' mī nī, *be ye read*

Fut. lě' gī tōr, *thou shalt be read*

lě' gī tōr, *he shall be read*

lě gun' tōr, *they shall be read*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. lě' gī, *to be read*

Perf. Sing. Nom. lec' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sě

“ Acc. lec' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě

Plur. Nom. lec' tī, -ae, -ā es' sě

“ Acc. lec' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sě

Fut. lec' tūm ī' rī, *to be about to be read*

} *to have been read*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. lec' tūs, lec' tā, lec' tūm, *read*

Gerundive. lě gen' dūs, lě gen' dā, lě gen' dūm, *to be read, de-*
serving to be read

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

ēmō, -ērě, *to buy*

scribō, -ērě, *to write*

āgō, -ērě, *to drive*

ācūō, -ērě, *to whet*

Perfect.

ēmī

scripsī

ēgī

ācūī

Supine.

emptūm

scriptūm

actūm

ācūtūm

322. Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
audīō, -īrē, to hear

Perfect.
audīvī

Supine.
audītūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ō, *I hear*
au' dīs, *thou hearest*
au' dīt, *he hears*
au dī' mūs, *we hear*
au dī' tīs, *you hear*
au' dī unt, *they hear*

au' dī ām, *may I hear*
au' dī ās, *hear thou*
au' dī āt, *let him hear*
au dī ā' mūs, *let us hear*
au dī ā' tīs, *hear ye*
au' dī ant, *let them hear*

Imperfect.

au dī ē' bām, <i>I was hearing</i>	au dī' rēm, <i>I should hear</i>
au dī ē' bās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>	au dī' rēs, <i>thou wouldst hear</i>
au dī ē' bāt, <i>he was hearing</i>	au dī' rēt, <i>he would hear</i>
au dī ē bā' mūs, <i>we were hearing</i>	au dī rē' mūs, <i>we should hear</i>
au dī ē bā' tīs, <i>you were hearing</i>	au dī rē' tīs, <i>you would hear</i>
au dī ē' bant, <i>they were hearing</i>	au dī' rent, <i>they would hear</i>

Future.

au' dī ām, <i>I shall hear</i>	au dī tū' rūs,	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sīm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \\ \text{sī' mūs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{be about} \\ \text{to hear} \end{array}$
au' dī ēs, <i>thou wilt hear</i>	-ā, -ūm	
au' dī ēt, <i>he will hear</i>		
au dī ē' mūs, <i>we shall hear</i>	au dī tū' rī,	
au dī ē' tīs, <i>you will hear</i>	-ae, -ā	
au' dī ent, <i>they will hear</i>		

Perfect.

au dī' vī, <i>I (have) heard</i>	au dī' vē rīm, <i>I may have heard</i>
au dī vi' stī, <i>thou hast heard</i>	au dī' vē rīs, <i>thou mayest have h.</i>
au dī' vīt, <i>he has heard</i>	au dī' vē rīt, <i>he may have heard</i>
au dī' vī mūs, <i>we have heard</i>	au dī vē rī mūs, <i>we may have h.</i>
au dī vi' stīs, <i>you have heard</i>	au dī vē rī tīs, <i>you may have h.</i>
au dī vē' runt, <i>they have heard</i>	au dī' vē rint, <i>they may have h.</i>

Pluperfect.

au dī' vē rām, <i>I had heard</i>	au dī vis' sēm, <i>I should have h.</i>
au dī' vē rās, <i>thou hadst heard</i>	au dī vis' sēs, <i>thou wouldst h. h.</i>
au dī' vē rāt, <i>he had heard</i>	au dī vis' sēt, <i>he would have h.</i>
au dī vē rā' mūs, <i>we had heard</i>	au dī vis sē' mūs, <i>we should h. h.</i>
au dī vē rā' tīs, <i>you had heard</i>	au dī vis sē' tīs, <i>you would h. h.</i>
au dī' vē rant, <i>they had heard</i>	au dī vis' sent, <i>they would h. h.</i>

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

au dī' vē rō, *I shall have heard*
 au dī' vē rīs, *thou wilt have heard*
 au dī' vē rīt, *he will have heard*
 au dī vē rī mūs, *we shall have h.*
 au dī vē rī tīs, *you will have h.*
 au dī' vē rint, *they will have h.*

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. au' dī, *hear thou* au dī' tē, *hear ye*
 Fut. au dī' tō, *thou shalt hear* au dī tō' tē, *ye shall hear*
 au dī' tō, *he shall hear* au dī un' tō, *they shall hear*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. au dī' rē, *to hear*
 Perf. au dī vis' sē, *to have heard*
 Fut. Sing. Nom. au dī tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē
 " Acc. au dī tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
 Plur. Nom. au dī tū' rī, -ae, -ā es' sē
 " Acc. au dī tū' rōš, -ās, -ā es' sē

} *to be about to hear*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. au' dī ens, au dī en' tīs, *hearing*
 Future. au dī tū' rūš, au dī tū' rā, au dī-tū' rūm, *about to hear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. au dī en' dī, *of hearing*
 Dat. au dī en' dō, *for hearing*
 Acc. au dī en' dūm, *hearing*
 Abl. au dī en' dō, *by hearing*

au dī' tūm }
 au dī' tū } *to hear*

[155. 156.]

323. Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

au' dī ōr, *I am heard* au' dī ār, *may I be heard*
 au dī' rīs, *thou art heard* au dī ā' rīs, *be thou heard*
 au dī' tūr, *he is heard* au dī ā' tūr, *let him be heard*
 au dī' mūr, *we are heard* au dī ā' mūr, *let us be heard*
 au dī' mī nī, *you are heard* au dī ā' mī nī, *be ye heard*
 au dī un' tūr, *they are heard* au dī an' tūr, *let them be heard*

	Singular.	IMPERATIVE.	Plural.
Pres.	au dī' rě, <i>be thou heard</i>		au dī' mī nī, <i>be ye heard</i>
Fut.	au dī' tōr, <i>thou shalt be h.</i>		
	au dī' tōr, <i>he shall be heard</i>		au dī un' tōr, <i>they shall be heard</i>

	INFINITIVE.		
Pres.	au dī' rī, <i>to be heard</i>		
Perf. Sing.	Nom. au dī' tūs, -ā, -ūm es' sě	} <i>to have been heard</i>	
"	Acc. au dī' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě		
Plur. Nom.	au dī' tī, -ae, -ā es' sě		
"	Acc. au dī' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sě		
Fut.	au dī' tūm ī' rī, <i>to be about to be heard</i>		

	PARTICIPLES.		
Perfect.	au dī' tūs, au dī' tā, au dī' tūm, <i>heard</i>		
Gerundive.	au dī en' dūs, au dī en' dā, au dī en' dūm, <i>to be heard,</i>		
	<i>deserving to be heard</i>		

Examples for Practice:

dormiō, -īrě, <i>to sleep</i>	vestiō, -īrě, <i>to clothe</i>
custodiō, -īrě, <i>to guard</i>	lēniō, -īrě, <i>to appease</i>
ērūdiō, -īrě, <i>to instruct</i>	nūtriō, -īrě, <i>to nourish</i>
impēdiō, -īrě, <i>to hinder</i>	pūniō, -īrě, <i>to punish</i>
condiō, -īrě, <i>to season</i>	finiō, -īrě, <i>to finish</i>

[157. 158.]

Deponent Verbs.

324. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice with an active signification, as: hortōr, hortātūs sūm, hortārī, *to exhort*, the Perfect hortātūs sūm representing at the same time the Supine hortātūm.

325. Deponent Verbs have Four Participles:

- the Present Participle, as: hortans, *exhorting*
- the Perfect Participle, as: hortātūs, *having exhorted*
- the Fut. Part. Act., as: hortātūrūs, *being about to exhort*
- the Fut. Part. Pass., as: hortandūs, *to be exhorted.*

326. The Future Infinitive is always to be given in the active form, thus: hortātūrūs essē, *to be about to exhort* (not hortātūm īrī).

327. Deponent of the First Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
hortōr, -ārī, to exhort

Perfect.
hortātūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

Present.

I exhort
hor' tōr
hor tā' rīs
hor tā' tūr
hor tā' mūr
hor tā' mī nī
hor tan' tūr

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may exhort
hor' tēr
hor tē' rīs
hor tē' tūr
hor tē' mūr
hor tē' mī nī
hor ten' tūr

Imperfect.

I was exhorting
hor tā' bār
hor tā bā' rīs
hor tā bā' tūr
hor tā bā' mūr
hor tā bā' mī nī
hor tā ban' tūr

I should exhort
hor tā' rēr
hor tā rē' rīs
hor tā rē' tūr
hor tā rē' mūr
hor tā rē' mī nī
hor tā ren' tūr

Future.

I shall exhort
hor tā' bōr
hor tā' bē rīs
hor tā' bī tūr
hor tā' bī mūr
hor tā bī' mī nī
hor tā bun' tūr

I may be about to exhort
hor tā tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm { sīm
sīs
sīt
hor tā tū' rī, -ae, -ā { sī' mūs
sī' tīs
sint

Perfect.

I (have) exhorted
hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm { sūm
ēs
est
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā { sū' mūs
e' stīs
sunt

I may have exhorted
hor tā' tūs, -ā, -ūm { sīm
sīs
sīt
hor tā' tī, -ae, -ā { sī' mūs
sī' tīs
sint

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

I had exhorted

I should have exhorted

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm {
 ě' rām
 ě' rās
 ě' rāt

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm {
 es' sēm
 es' sēs
 es' sēt

hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ {
 ě' rā' mūs
 ě' rā' tīs
 ě' rant

hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ {
 es' sē' mūs
 es' sē' tīs
 es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have exhorted

hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm {
 ě' rō
 ě' rīs
 ě' rīt

 ě' rī mūs
 ě' rī tīs
 ě' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. hor tā' rě, *exhort thou*

hor tā' mī nī, *exhort ye*

Fut. hor tā' tōr, *thou shalt exhort*

hor tā' tōr, *he shall exhort*

hor tan' tōr, *they shall exhort*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. hor tā' rī, *to exhort*

Perf. Sing. Nom. hor tā' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě

“ Acc. hor tā' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě

Plur. Nom. hor tā' tī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě

“ Acc. hor tā' tōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě

} *to have exhorted*

Fut. Sing. Nom. hor tā' tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ūm es' sě

“ Acc. hor tā' tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sě

Plur. Nom. hor tā' tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ es' sě

“ Acc. hor tā' tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ es' sě

} *to be about to
 exhort*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. hor' tans, hor tan' tīs, *exhorting*

Perfect. hor tā' tūs, hor tā' tā, hor tā' tūm, *having exhorted*

Fut. Act. hor tā' tū' rūs, hor tā' tū' rā, hor tā' tū' rūm, *about to
 exhort*

Gerundive. hor tan' dūs, hor tan' dā, hor tan' dūm, *to be exhorted*

GERUND.

Gen. hor tan' dī, of exhorting
 Dat. hor tan' dō, for exhorting
 Acc. hor tan' dūm, exhorting
 Abl. hor tan' dō, by exhorting

SUPINE.

hor tā' tūm }
 hor tā' tū } to exhort

Examples for Practice:

piscōr, -ārī, to fish	arbītrōr, -ārī, to regard
īmītōr, -ārī, to imitate	cōnōr, -ārī, to try
rēcōrdōr, -ārī, to remember	cōmītōr, -ārī, to accompany
proeliōr, -ārī, to fight	vāgōr, -ārī, to roam
laetōr, -ārī, to rejoice (at)	mīrōr, -ārī, to admire
vēnōr, -ārī, to hunt	mīnōr, -ārī, to threaten

[161. 162.]

328. Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

vērēōr, -ērī, to fear

INDICATIVE.

I fear

vě' rē ōr
 vě' rē' rīs
 vě' rē' tūr
 vě' rē' mūr
 vě' rē' mī nī
 vě' ren' tūr

I was fearing

vě' rē' bār
 vě' rē' bā' rīs
 vě' rē' bā' tūr
 vě' rē' bā' mūr
 vě' rē' bā' mī nī
 vě' rē' ban' tūr

I shall fear

vě' rē' bōr
 vě' rē' bē rīs
 vě' rē' bī tūr
 vě' rē' bī mūr
 vě' rē' bī' mī nī
 vě' rē' bun' tūr

Perfect.

vērītūs sūm

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I may fear

vě' rē ār
 vě' rē ā' rīs
 vě' rē ā' tūr
 vě' rē ā' mūr
 vě' rē ā' mī nī
 vě' rē an' tūr

Imperfect.

I should fear

vě' rē' rēr
 vě' rē' rē' rīs
 vě' rē' rē' tūr
 vě' rē' rē' mūr
 vě' rē' rē' mī nī
 vě' rē' ren' tūr

Future.

I may be about to fear

vě' rī tū' rūš,	{ sīm sīs sīt
-ā, -ūm	
vě' rī tū' rī,	
-ae, -ā	

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I (have) feared

I may have feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ sŭm ěs est	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ sīm sīs sīt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ sŭ' mŭs e' stīs sunt	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ sī' mŭs sī' tīs sint

Pluperfect.

I had feared

I should have feared

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ ě' rām ě' rās ě' rāt	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ es' sēm es' sēs es' sēt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě rā' mŭs ě rā' tīs ě' rant	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ es sē' mŭs es sē' tīs es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have feared

(wanting)

vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	{ ě' rō ě' rīs ě' rīt
vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	{ ě' rī mŭs ě' rī tīs ě' runt

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. vě rē' rē, fear thou

vě rē' mī nī, fear ye

Fut. vě rē' tōr, thou shalt fear

vě rē' tōr, he shall fear

vě ren' tōr, they shall fear

INFINITIVE.

Pres. vě rē' rī, to fear

Perf. Sing.	Nom.	vě' rī tūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	es' sē	} to have feared
"	Acc.	vě' rī tŭm, -ǎm, -ŭm	es' sē	
Plur.	Nom.	vě' rī tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sē	
"	Acc.	vě' rī tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sē	

Fut. Sing.	Nom.	vě rī tū' rūs, -ǎ, -ŭm	es' sē	} to be about to fear
"	Acc.	vě rī tū' rūm, -ǎm, -ŭm	es' sē	
Plur.	Nom.	vě rī tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sē	
"	Acc.	vě rī tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sē	

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	vě' rens, vě ren' tīs, <i>fearing</i>
Perfect.	vě' rī tūs, vě' rī tā, vě' rī tūm, <i>having feared</i>
Fut. Act.	vě' rī tū' rūš, vě' rī tū' rā, vě' rī tū' rūm, <i>about to fear</i>
Gerundive.	vě ren' dūs, vě ren' dā, vě ren' dūm, <i>to be feared</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	vě ren' dī, <i>of fearing</i>	
Dat.	vě ren' dō, <i>for fearing</i>	
Acc.	vě ren' dūm, <i>fearing</i>	vě' rī tūm } <i>to fear</i>
Abl.	vě ren' dō, <i>by fearing</i>	vě' rī tū }

Examples for Practice:

licēōr, -ērī, <i>to bid</i>	tūēōr, -ērī, <i>to look to</i>
pollicēōr, -ērī, <i>to promise</i>	intūēōr, -ērī, <i>to look at</i>
mērēōr, -ērī, <i>to deserve</i>	rēvērēōr, -ērī, <i>to respect</i>

[163. 164.]

329. Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
sēquōr, -ī, *to follow*

Perfect.
sēcūtūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

sě' quōr, *I follow*
sě' quē rīs
sě' quī tūr
sě' quī mūr
sě' quī' mī nī
sě' quun' tūr

sě' quār, *I may follow*
sě' quā' rīs
sě' quā' tūr
sě' quā' mūr
sě' quā' mī nī
sě' quan' tūr

Imperfect.

sě' quē bār, *I was following*
sě' quē bā' rīs
sě' quē bā' tūr
sě' quē bā' mūr
sě' quē bā' mī nī
sě' quē ban' tūr

sě' quē rēr, *I should follow*
sě' quē rē' rīs
sě' quē rē' tūr
sě' quē rē' mūr
sě' quē rē' mī nī
sě' quē ren' tūr

Future.

I shall follow
sě' quār
sě' quē' rīs
sě' quē' tūr
sě' quē' mūr
sě' quē' mī nī
sě' quen' tūr

I may be about to follow
sě' cū tū' rūš, { sīm
-ā, -ūm { sīs
sīt
sě' cū tū' rī, { sī' mūs
-ae, -ā { sī' tīs
sint

INDICATIVE.

I (have) followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	sūm
	ēs
	est
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	sū' mūs
	e' stīs
	sunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I may have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	sīm
	sīs
	sīt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	sī' mūs
	sī' tīs
	sint

Pluperfect.

I had followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	ě' rām
	ě' rās
	ě' rāt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	ě rā' mūs
	ě rā' tīs
	ě' rant

I should have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sēm
	es' sēs
	es' sēt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es sē' mūs
	es sē' tīs
	es' sent

Future Perfect.

I shall have followed

sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	ě' rō
	ě' rīs
	ě' rīt
sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	ě' rī mūs
	ě' rī tīs
	ě' runt

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE:

Singular.

Pres. sě' quě rě, follow thou
Fut. sě' quī tōr, thou shalt follow
sě' quī tōr, he shall follow

Plural.

sě quī' mī nī, follow ye
sě quun' tōr, they shall follow

INFINITIVE.

Pres. sě' quī, to follow

Perf. Sing. Nom	sě cū' tūs, -ǎ, -ūm	es' sě	} to have followed
" Acc.	sě cū' tūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	sě cū' tī, -ae, -ǎ	es' sě	
" Acc.	sě cū' tōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě	

Fut. Sing. Nom.	sě cū tū' rūs -ǎ, -ūm	es' sě	} to be about to follow
" Acc.	sě cū tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm	es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	sě cū tū' rī, -ae, -ǎ	es' se	
" Acc.	sě cū tū' rōs, -ās, -ǎ	es' sě	

PARTICIPLES.

Present. sě' quens, sě quen' tīs, *following*
Perfect. sě cū' tūs, sě cū' tǎ, sě cū' tūm, *having followed*
Fut. Act. sě cū tū' rūš, sě cū tū' rǎ, sě cū tū' rūm, *about to follow*
Gerundive. sě quen' dūs, sě quen' dǎ, sě quen' dūm, *to be followed*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. sě quen' dī, *of following*
 Dat. sě quen' dō, *for following*
 Acc. sě quen' dūm, *following*
 Abl. sě quen' dō, *by following*

sě cū' tūm }
 sě cū' tū } *to follow*

Examples for Practice:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.
 lōquōr, -ī, *to speak*
 frūōr, -ī, *to enjoy*
 fungōr, -ī, *to discharge*

Perfect.
 lōcūtūs sūm
 fructūs sūm
 functūs sūm

[165. 166.]

330. Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

blandiōr, -īrī

INDICATIVE.

blan' dī ōr, *I flatter*
 blan dī' rīs
 blan dī' tūr
 blan dī' mūr
 blan dī' mī nī
 blan dī un' tūr

Perfect.

blandītūs sūm

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

blan' dī ār, *I may flatter*
 blan dī ā' rīs
 blan dī ā' tūr
 blan dī ā' mūr
 blan dī ā' mī nī
 blan dī an' tūr

Imperfect.

blan dī ē' bār, *I was flattering*
 blan dī ē' bā' rīs
 blan dī ē' bā' tūr
 blan dī ē' bā' mūr
 blan dī ē' bā' mī nī
 blan dī ē' ban' tūr

blan dī' rēr, *I should flatter*
 blan dī rē' rīs
 blan dī rē' tūr
 blan dī rē' mūr
 blan dī rē' mī nī
 blan dī ren' tūr

Future.

blan' dī ār, *I shall flatter*
 blan dī ē' rīs
 blan dī ē' tūr
 blan dī ē' mūr
 blan dī ē' mī nī
 blan dī en' tūr

blan dī tū' rūš, { sīm
 -ā, -ūm { sīs
 { sīt
 blan dī tū' rī, { sī' mūs
 -ae, -ā { sī' tīs
 { sint

} *be about to flatter*

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I (have) flattered

I may have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sŭm} \\ \text{ēs} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	blan dī' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sŭm} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sīt} \end{array} \right.$
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ă	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sŭ' mŭs} \\ \text{e' stīs} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$	blan dī' tī, -ae, -ă	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sī' mŭs} \\ \text{sī' tīs} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$

Pluperfect.

I had flattered

I should have flattered

blan dī' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ě' rām} \\ \text{ě' rās} \\ \text{ě' rāt} \end{array} \right.$	blan dī' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{es' sēm} \\ \text{es' sēs} \\ \text{es' sēt} \end{array} \right.$
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ă	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ě rā' mŭs} \\ \text{ě rā' tīs} \\ \text{ě' rant} \end{array} \right.$	blan dī' tī, -ae, -ă	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{es sē' mŭs} \\ \text{es sē' tīs} \\ \text{es' sent} \end{array} \right.$

Future Perfect.

I shall have flattered

(wanting)

blan dī' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ě' rō} \\ \text{ě' rīs} \\ \text{ě' rīt} \end{array} \right.$
blan dī' tī, -ae, -ă	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ě' rī mŭs} \\ \text{ě' rī tīs} \\ \text{ě' runt} \end{array} \right.$

IMPERATIVE

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. blan dī' rē, flatter thou	blan dī' mī nī, flatter ye
Fut. blan dī' tōr, thou shalt flatter	
blan dī' tōr, he shall flatter	blan dī un' tōr, they shall flatter

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	blan dī' rī, to flatter	
Perf. Sing. Nom.	blan dī' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	es' sē
" Acc.	blan dī' tŭm, -ăm, -ŭm	es' sē
Plur. Nom.	blan dī' tī, -ae, -ă	es' sē
" Acc.	blan dī' tōs, -ās, -ă	es' sē
		} to have flattered
Fut. Sing. Nom.	blan dī tū' rūs, -ă, -ŭm	es' sē
" Acc.	blan dī tū' rūm, -ăm, -ŭm	es' sē
Plur. Nom.	blan dī tū' rī, -ae, -ă	es' sē
" Acc.	blan dī tū' rōs, -ās, -ă	es' sē
		} to be about to flatter

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	blan' dī ens, blan dī en' tīs, <i>flattering</i>
Perfect.	blan dī' tūs, blan dī' tǎ, blan dī' tūm, <i>having flattered</i>
Fut. Act.	blan dī tū' rūs, blan dī tū' rǎ, blan dī tū' rūm, <i>about to flatter</i>
Gerundive.	blan dī en' dūs, blan dī en' dǎ, blan dī en' dūm, <i>to be flattered</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	blan dī en' dī, <i>of flattering</i>	
Dat.	blan dī en' dō, <i>for flattering</i>	
Acc.	blan dī en' dūm, <i>flattering</i>	blan dī' tūm } <i>to flatter</i>
Abl.	blan dī en' dō, <i>by flattering</i>	blan dī' tū }

Examples for Practice:

largiōr, -īrī, <i>to bestow</i>	partiōr, -īrī, <i>to share, divide</i>
mentiōr, -īrī, <i>to lie</i>	pōtiōr, -īrī, <i>to possess one's self</i>
mōliōr, -īrī, <i>to strive</i>	sortiōr, -īrī, <i>to draw lots</i>

[167. 168.]

Appendix to the Third Conjugation.

Verbs in iō.

331. Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert **i** before the ending of the Present, as: cǎpĕrĕ, *to take*; cǎpiō, *I take*. This **i** appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another **i** or **ĕ**, except in the third person of the future active: cǎpiĕt, *he will take*.

Active Voice.

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
cǎpiō, -ĕrĕ, <i>to take</i>	cĕpī	captūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

<i>I take</i>	<i>I may take</i>
cǎ' pī ō	cǎ' pī ām
cǎ' pīs	cǎ' pī ās
cǎ' pīt	cǎ' pī āt
cǎ' pī mūs	cǎ pī ā' mūs
cǎ' pī tīs	cǎ pī ā' tīs
cǎ' pī unt	cǎ' pī aut

INDICATIVE.

I was taking

că pî ē' bām
că pî ē' bās
că pî ē' bāt
că pî ē bā' mūs
că pî ē bā' tīs
că pî ē' bant

I shall take

că' pî ām
că' pî ēs
că' pî ēt
că pî ē' mūs
că pî ē' tīs
că' pî ent

I have taken or I took
cē' pî (like lēgī)

I had taken
cē' pē rām (like lēgērām)

I shall have taken
cē' pē rō (like lēgērō)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

I might take

că' pē rēm
că' pē rēs
că' pē rēt
că pē rē' mūs
că pē rē' tīs
că' pē rent

Future.

I may be about to take

cap tū' rūś, { sīm
-ă, -ūm { sīs
sīt
cap tū' rī, { sī' mūs
-ae, -ă { sī' tīs
sint

Perfect.

I may have taken
cē' pē rīm (like lēgērīm)

Pluperfect.

I might have taken
cē pis' sēm (like lēgissēm)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Pres. că' pē, take thou
Fut. că' pî tō, thou shalt take
că' pî tō, he shall take

Plural.

că' pî tē, take ye
că pî tō' tē, ye shall take
că pî un' tō, they shall take

INFINITIVE.

Pres. că' pē rē, to take
Perf. cē pis' sē, to have taken
Fut. Sing. Nom. cap tū' rūś, -ă, -ūm es' sē
" Acc. cap tū' rūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē
Plur. Nom. cap tū' rī, -ae, -ă es' sē
" Acc. cap tū' rōś, -ās, -ă es' sē

} to be about to take

PARTICIPLES.

Present. că' pīens, -tīs, taking
Future. cap tū' rūś, -ă, -ūm, about to take

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	că pî en' dî, <i>of taking</i>
Dat.	că pî en' dō, <i>for taking</i>
Acc.	că pî en' dŭm, <i>taking</i>
Abl.	că pî en' dō, <i>by taking</i>

cap' tŭm }
cap' tŭ } *to take*

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I am taken

că' pî őr
că' pē rîs
că' pî tŭr
că' pî mŭr
că pî' mî nî
că pî un' tŭr

I may be taken

că' pî ăr
că pî ā' rîs
că pî ā' tŭr
că pî ā' mŭr
că pî ā' mî nî
că pî an' tŭr

Imperfect.

I was taken

că pî ē' bār
că pî ē bā' rîs
că pî ē bā' tŭr
că pî ē bā' mŭr
că pî ē bā' mî nî
că pî ē ban' tŭr

I might be taken

că' pē rēr
că pē rē' rîs
că pē rē' tŭr
că pē rē' mŭr
că pē rē' mî nî
că pē ren' tŭr

Future.

I shall be taken

că' pî ăr
că pî ē' rîs
că pî ē' tŭr
că pî ē' mŭr
că pî ē' mî nî
că pî en' tŭr

(wanting)

Perfect.

I was or have been taken

cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm sŭm, &c.

I may have been taken

cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm sŭm, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had been taken

cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm őr rām, &c.

I might have been taken

cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm es' sēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have been taken

cap' tŭs, -ă, -ŭm őr rō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Pres.	că' pě rě, <i>be thou taken</i>	că pĩ' mĩ nĩ, <i>be ye taken</i>
Fut.	că' pĩ tőr, <i>thou shalt be taken</i> că' pĩ tőr, <i>he shall be taken</i>	că pĩ un' tőr, <i>they shall be taken</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	că' pĩ, <i>to be taken</i>	
Perf. Sing.	Nom. cap' tũs, -ă, -ũm es' sě	} <i>to have been taken</i>
"	Acc. cap' tũm, -ăm, -ũm es' sě	
Plur. Nom.	cap' tĩ, -ae, -ă es' sě	
"	Acc. cap' tős, -ăs, -ă es' sě	
Fut.	cap' tũm ĩ' rĩ, <i>to be about to be taken.</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	cap' tũs, -ă, -ũm, <i>taken</i>
Gerundive.	că pĩ en' dũs, că pĩ en' dă, că pĩ en' dũm, <i>to be taken</i>

332. Verbs of the **Third Conjugation** ending in **ĩō, ĩör**, are the following:

Active Verbs.

căpĩō, -ěrě, <i>to take</i>	jăcĩō, -ěrě, <i>to throw</i>
cũpĩō, -ěrě, <i>to desire</i>	păřĩō, -ěrě, <i>to bring forth</i>
făcĩō, -ěrě, <i>to make</i>	quătĩō, -ěrě, <i>to shake</i>
fődĩō, -ěrě, <i>to dig</i>	răpĩō, -ěrě, <i>to seize</i>
fũgĩō, -ěrě, <i>to flee</i>	săpĩō, -ěrě, <i>to be wise</i>

and Compounds of the obsolete

[-lăcĩō, *I entice*]

[-spēcĩō, *I see*]

Deponent Verbs.

grădĩör, -ĩ, *to go*
mörĩör, -ĩ, *to die*

pătĩör, -ĩ, *to suffer*

[137. 138.]

For their Principal Parts see **368**.

Special Forms in Conjugation.

333. The following **Special Forms** are found in many verbs:

Perfects in **ăvĩ, ěvĩ, ĩvĩ**, and the tenses derived from them, drop the **v** before **s** or **r**, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **ĩvĩ**, which do not admit the contraction of **i-e** before **r**. In like manner **nōvĩ, I know**, and its compounds are contracted.

	āvī		ēvī	
	Perfect.			
IND.	āmāvistī	āmāstī	dēlēvistī	dēlēstī
	āmāvistīs	āmāstīs	dēlēvistīs	dēlēstīs
	āmāvērunt	āmārunt	dēlēvērunt	dēlērunt
SUBJ.	āmāvērīm	āmārīm, &c.	dēlēvērīm	dēlērīm, &c.
INF.	āmāvissē	āmāssē	dēlēvissē	dēlēssē

	Pluperfect.			
IND.	āmāvērām	āmārām, &c.	dēlēvērām	dēlērām, &c.
SUBJ.	āmāvissēm	āmāssēm, &c.	dēlēvissēm	dēlēssēm, &c.

	Future Perfect.			
IND.	āmāvērō	āmārō, &c.	dēlēvērō	dēlērō, &c.

	īvī		ōvī	
	Perfect.			
IND.	_____		_____	
	audīvistī	audīstī	nōvistī	nōstī
	_____		_____	
	audīvistīs	audīstīs	nōvistīs	nōstīs
	audīvērunt	audīērunt	nōvērunt	nōrunt
SUBJ.	audīvērīm	audīērīm, &c.	nōvērīm	nōrīm, &c.
INF.	audīvissē	audīssē	nōvissē	nōssē

	Pluperfect.			
IND.	audīvērām	audīērām, &c.	nōvērām	nōrām, &c.
SUBJ.	audīvissēm	audīssēm, &c.	nōvissēm	nōssēm, &c.

	Future Perfect.			
IND.	audīvērō	audīērō, &c.	nōvērō	—

Mark that the Future Perfect of nōvī is nōvērō uncontracted.

334. In the Perfect Ind. Act. (3rd pers. plur.) ērē for ērunt is often found, thus:

āmāvērē for āmāvērunt, *they (have) loved*
 mōnūērē “ mōnūērunt, *they (have) advised*
 lēgērē “ lēgērunt, *they (have) read*
 audīvērē “ audīvērunt, *they (have) heard*

335. In the second person of the **Passive** we often find **rě** for **rīs**, thus:

āmērě for āmērīs, *thou mayest be loved*
 āmābārě “ āmābārīs, *thou wast loved*
 āmārērě “ āmārērīs, *thou mightest be loved*
 āmābērě “ āmābērīs, *thou wilt be loved*

This ending, however, is rarely used in the Present Indicative, but almost exclusively in the Future.

336. The **Imperatives** of dīcērě, *to say*; dūcērě, *to lead*; făcērě, *to make*, and ferrě, *to bear*, are: dīc, dūc, făc, fěr, respectively. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of făciō which change **ă** into **ī**, as: perfīcě, *achieve thou* (see **368.**).

337. The **Gerund** and **Gerundive** of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of endī, endūs, may end in undī and undūs, especially after **ī**, as:

căpīundūs, *to be taken*; rěpētundūs, *to be reclaimed*.

338. For the **Imperative** of scīō, *I know*, the future form scītō is always used in the singular, and scītōtě in the plural.

[169. 170.]

Formation of the Principal Parts.

339. In forming the principal parts of any verb, we take for a starting point its stem, which is either a **Vowel-stem** or a **Consonant-stem**, according as it ends either in a vowel or a consonant.

340. The **First Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ā**, as: āmā-rě, **Stem: āmā.**

341. The **Second Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ē**, as: mōnē-rě, **Stem: mōnē.**

342. The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ī**, as: audī-rě, **Stem: audī.**

343. The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, as: lěg-ěrě, **Stem: lěg**; or in **u (v)**, as: stăt-ŭ-ěrě, **Stem: stătŭ.** Stems in **u** follow the Consonant-conjugation.

344. As a rule, **Vowel-stems** undergo no change except in some cases the contracting of the final

vowel with the termination, as: *āmō* contracted from *āmā-ō*; they form the Perfect and Supine by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, to the stem, thus:

	Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
I.	āmā-rě , <i>to love</i>	āmā-vī	āmā-tūm
II.	dēlē-rě , <i>to destroy</i>	dēlē-vī	dēlē-tūm
IV.	audī-rě , <i>to hear</i>	audī-vī	audī-tūm

345. Consonant-stems are liable to various changes which will be considered below under Third Conjugation.

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

346. As already explained, the **First Conjugation** contains all the vowel-stems in **ā**, and forms the **Perfect** and **Supine** by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, to the stem. Or, in other words, in the First Conjugation the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ō -ārě	-āvī	-ātūm
āmō āmārě , <i>to love</i>	āmāvī	āmātūm

Those **Verbs** of the **First Conjugation** which form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently are the following:

347. Perfect in **ūī**, Supine in **ītūm** (**tūm**).

crēpō , -ārě , <i>to creak</i>	crēpūī	crēpītūm
incrēpō , -ārě , <i>to scold</i>	incrēpūī	incrēpītūm
discrēpō , -ārě , <i>to disagree</i>	discrēpūī	<i>wanting</i>
cūbō , -ārě , <i>to lie down</i>	cūbūī	cūbītūm
incūbō , -ārě , <i>to lie upon</i>	incūbūī	incūbītūm
accūbō , -ārě , <i>to lie near</i>	accūbūī	accūbītūm

Some Compounds insert **m**, and are of the **Third Conjugation**.

dōmō , -ārě , <i>to tame</i>	dōmūī	dōmītūm
sōnō , -ārě , <i>to sound</i>	sōnūī	sōnītūm , sōnātūrūs
rēsōnō , -ārě , <i>to resound</i>	rēsōnāvī	<i>wanting</i>
tōnō , -ārě , <i>to thunder</i>	tōnūī	tōnītūm
vētō , -ārě , <i>to forbid</i>	vētūī	vētītūm
frīcō , -ārě , <i>to rub</i>	frīcūī	frīcātūm , frictūm
mīcō , -ārě , <i>to shine</i>	mīcūī	<i>wanting</i>
ēmīcō , -ārě , <i>to shine forth</i>	ēmīcūī	ēmīcātūm
dimīcō , -ārě , <i>to fight</i>	dimīcāvī	dimīcātūm

[plicō, *I fold*] *

applicō, -ārě, to apply	{ applicāvī applicūī	applicātūm applicītūm
explicō, -ārě, to unfold	{ explicāvī explicūī	explicātūm explicītūm
implicō, -ārě, to involve	{ implicāvī implicūī	implicātūm implicītūm

Compounds in -plicō from nouns in -plex are regular, as: *multiplīcō, -ārě, to multiply*, from *multiplēx*.

pōtō, -ārě, to drink	pōtāvī	pōtūm
sēcō, -ārě, to cut	sēcūī	sectūm, sēcātūrūs
dēsēcō, -ārě, to cut down	dēsēcūī	dēsectūm
ēnēcō, -ārě, to slay	{ ēnēcāvī ēnēcūī	ēnēcātūm ēnectūm

348. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm

with lengthened stem-vowel.

jūvō, -ārě	jūvī	jūtūm
adjūvō, -ārě	adjūvī	adjūtūm
Fut. Participles: jūvātūrūs, but adjūtūrūs or adjūvātūrūs		
lāvō, -ārě, to wash	lāvī	lāvātūm (lautūm, lōtūm)

349. With Reduplicated Perfect.

Some Verbs of the *First, Second and Third Conjugations* repeat in the *Perfect* the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it, or with *ě*. Compound Verbs omit the reduplication, but Compounds of *dō, I give*; *stō, I stand*; *discō, I learn*; *poscō, I demand*, and some of those of *currō, I run*, retain it.

dō, -ārě, to give	dēdī	dātūm
circumdō, -ārě, to surround	circumdēdī	circumdātūm
pessumdō, -ārě, to ruin	pessumdēdī	pessumdātūm
sātsisdō, -ārě, to give bail	sātsisdēdī	sātsisdātūm
vēnumdō, -ārě, to sell	vēnumdēdī	vēnumdātūm

a is everywhere short, except in *dās, thou givest*; *dā, give thou*.

Like *dō*, are conjugated the Compounds with words of *two* syllables, as: *circumdō, I surround*. The Compounds with words of *one* syllable pass over into the *3d Conjugation*.

* Obsolete forms are inclosed within brackets [].

stō, stārē, to stand	stētī	stātūm
antistō, -ārē, to excel	antistētī	wanting
circumstō, -ārē, to stand around	circumstētī	wanting
constō, -ārē, to consist	constītī	wanting
praestō, -ārē, to afford	praestītī	wanting
distō, -ārē, to be distant	wanting	wanting
exstō, -ārē, to exist	wanting	wanting

Like **antistō**, all Compounds of **stārē** with prepositions of *two* syllables have **stētī** in the **Perfect**, but no **Supine**. Those compounded with prepositions of *one* syllable have **stītī** in the **Perfect**, and likewise no **Supine**. **distō** and **exstō** have neither **Perfect** nor **Supine**. [123. 124.]

350. More than half of all **Deponents** in the language are of the **First Conjugation**, and all of these are regular (see **327**).

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

351. The **Second Conjugation**, as we have seen, includes all verbs whose stem ends in **ē**. In these the **Perfect** and **Supine** regularly add **vī**, **tūm** to the stem, thus:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
dēlē-rē, to destroy	dēlē-vī	dēlē-tūm

352. However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the stem-vowel **ē** in the **Perfect**, **vī** becomes **ūī**, and in the **Supine** **ī** is inserted before **tūm**; thus:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-ēō -ērē	-ūī	-ītūm
mōnēō mōnērē, to advise	mōnūī	mōnītūm

This is considered the **Regular** formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

353. Many verbs with a regular **Perfect** in **ūī** want the **Supine**. Such are:

arcēō, -ērē, to keep off	horrēō, -ērē, to shudder
ārēō, -ērē, to be dry	languēō, -ērē, to be weary
callēō, -ērē, to be versed	lātēō, -ērē, to be hid
candēō, -ērē, to shine	liquēō, -ērē, to be fluid
ēgēō, -ērē	mādēō, -ērē, to be wet
indīgēō, -ērē } to be in want	nītēō, -ērē, to glitter
ēmīnēō, -ērē, to be prominent	ōlēō, -ērē, to smell
flōrēō, -ērē, to blossom	pallēō, -ērē, to look pale

pătēō, -ērē, *to stand open*
 rigēō, -ērē, *to be stiff*
 rūbēō, -ērē, *to be red*
 silēō, -ērē, *to be silent*
 sorbēō, -ērē, *to sip*
 sordēō, -ērē, *to be dirty*
 splendēō, -ērē, *to gleam*

vīrēō, -ērē, *to be green*

stūdēō, -ērē, *to busy one's self*
 stūpēō, -ērē, *to be amazed*
 succensēō, -ērē, *to be angry*
 tīmēō, -ērē, *to fear*
 torpēō, -ērē, *to be numb*
 tūmēō, -ērē, *to swell*
 vīgēō, -ērē, *to be vigorous*

354. Some verbs, derived mostly from Adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine:

albēō, -ērē, *to be white*
 āvēō, -ērē, *to long for*
 calvēō, -ērē, *to be bald*
 hūmēō, -ērē, *to be moist*
 immīnēō, -ērē, *to threaten*
 livēō, -ērē, *to be pale*
 cānēō, -ērē, *to be gray*

flāvēō, -ērē, *to be golden yellow*
 hēbēō, -ērē, *to be blunt*
 pollēō, -ērē, *to be powerful*
 maerēō, -ērē, *to grieve*
 rēnīdēō, -ērē, *to shine*
 scātēō, -ērē, *to gush*
 squālēō, -ērē, *to be filthy*

[125. 126.]

355. A great many Verbs of the Second Conjugation deviate from the regular formation mentioned in 352.

356. Perfect in ēvī, Supine in ētūm (ītūm, tūm):

dēlēō, -ērē, *to destroy*
 flēō, -ērē, *to weep*
 nēō, -ērē, *to spin*
 [plēō, *I fill*]
 complēō, -ērē }
 implēō, -ērē } *to fill (up)*
 rēplēō, -ērē }
 [ōlēō, *I grow*]
 obsōlēō, -ērē, *to go out of use*
 ābōlēō, -ērē, *to abolish*
 ādōlēō, -ērē, *to grow up*

dēlēvī dēlētūm
 flēvī flētūm
 nēvī nētūm

 complēvī complētūm
 implēvī implētūm
 rēplēvī rēplētūm

 obsōlēvī obsōlētūm
 ābōlēvī ābōlītūm
 ādōlēvī ādultūm

357. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm:

cāvēō, -ērē, *to be on one's guard*
 fāvēō, -ērē, *to favor*
 fōvēō, -ērē, *to cherish*
 mōvēō, -ērē, *to move, trouble*
 vōvēō, -ērē }
 dēvōvēō, -ērē } *to vow, devote*

cāvī cautūm
 fāvī fautūm
 fōvī fōtūm
 mōvī mōtūm
 vōvī vōtūm
 dēvōvī dēvōtūm

pávěō, -ērě, to quake for fear	pāvī	wanting
fervěō, -ērě, to glow	{ fervī } { ferbūī }	wanting
cōnīvěō, -ērě, to shut the eyes	{ cōnīvī } { cōnixī }	wanting

358. Dropping the ī of the Supine:

dōcěō, -ērě, to teach	dōcūī	doctūm
těněō, -ērě, to hold	těnūī	(tentūm)
obtīněō, -ērě, to occupy	obtīnūī	obtentūm
attīněō, -ērě, to belong	attīnūī	wanting
pertīněō, -ērě, to pertain	pertīnūī	wanting
abstīněō, -ērě, to abstain	abstīnūī	wanting
contīněō, -ērě, to hold together	contīnūī	wanting
miscěō, -ērě, to mix, mingle	miscūī	{ mixtūm } { mistūm }
torrěō, -ērě, to roast	torrūī	tostūm
censěō, -ērě, to value, think	censūī	censūm
rēcensěō, -ērě, to review	rēcensūī	{ rēcensūm } { rēcensītūm }
percensěō, -ērě, to survey	percensūī	wanting

359. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

augěō, -ērě, to increase	auxī	auctūm
indulgěō, -ērě, to indulge	indulsī	indultūm
torquěō, -ērě, to torture	torsī	tortūm
lūcěō, -ērě, to shine	luxī	wanting
lāgěō, -ērě, to mourn	luxī	wanting
frīgěō, -ērě, to be cold	frixī	wanting

[129. 130.]

360. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:

arděō, -ērě, to burn	arsī	arsūm
haerěō, -ērě, to hang	haesī	haesūm
ādhāerěō, -ērě, to stick	ādhaesī	ādhaesūm
cōhāerěō, -ērě, to stick	cōhaesī	cōhaesūm
jūběō, -ērě, to order	jussī	jussūm
māněō, -ērě, to stay, remain	mansī	mansūm
rēmāněō, -ērě, to remain	rēmansī	rēmansūm
mulcěō, -ērě, to soothe	mulsi	mulsūm
permulcěō, -ērě, to appease	permulsi	permulsūm
mulgěō, -ērě, to milk	mulsi	mulsūm

ridēō, -ērē, to laugh	risī	risūm
arridēō, -ērē, to smile upon	arrisī	arrisūm
dēridēō, -ērē, to laugh at	dērisī	dērisūm
suādēō, -ērē, to advise	suāsī	suāsūm
dissuādēō, -ērē, to dissuade	dissuāsī	dissuāsūm
persuādēō, -ērē, to persuade	persuāsī	persuāsūm
tergēō, -ērē } to wipe	tersī	tersūm
tergō, -ērē }		
abstergēō, -ērē, to wipe off	abstersī	abstersūm

Compounds only take the *Second Conjugation*.

algēō, -ērē, to be cold	alsī	wanting
fulgēō, -ērē, to shine	fulsī	wanting
turgēō, -ērē, to swell	tursī	wanting
urgēō, -ērē, to urge	ursī	wanting

361. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm:

prandēō, -ērē, to breakfast	prandī	pransūm
Participle pransūs, in an active sense, <i>having breakfasted</i>		
sēdēō, -ērē, to sit	sēdī	sessūm
circumsēdēō, -ērē, to sit around	circumsēdī	circumsessūm
sūpersēdēō, -ērē, to forbear	sūpersēdī	sūpersessūm
assīdēō, -ērē, to sit by	assēdī	assessūm
insīdēō, -ērē, to sit upon	insēdī	insessūm
obsīdēō, -ērē, to besiege	obsēdī	obsessūm
possīdēō, -ērē, to possess	possēdī	possessūm
dissīdēō, -ērē, to disagree	dissēdī	wanting
praesīdēō, -ērē, to preside	praesēdī	wanting
rēsīdēō, -ērē, to remain behind	rēsēdī	wanting
vidēō, -ērē, to see	vidī	vīsūm
invidēō, -ērē, to envy	invidī	invisūm
prōvidēō, -ērē, to provide	prōvidī	prōvisūm
strīdēō, -ērē, to whiz, creak	strīdī	wanting

With Reduplication:

mordēō, -ērē, to bite	mōmordī	morsūm
pendēō, -ērē, to hang	pēpendī	pensūm
dēpendēō, -ērē, to hang down	wanting	wanting
impēdēō, -ērē, to hang over	wanting	wanting
spondēō, -ērē, to pledge	spōpondī	sponsūm
respondēō, -ērē, to answer	respondī	responsūm
despondēō, -ērē, to promise	despondī	desponsūm
tondēō, -ērē, to shear	tōtondī	tonsūm

Reduplication, or the repetition of the initial consonant with the following vowel, is generally dropped in Compounds, as: *re-spondī*.

362. Mark the solitary verb:

<i>cīēō, -ērē</i>	} <i>to rouse</i>	<i>cīvī</i>	<i>cītūm</i>	} 4th Conjugation.
<i>cīō, -īrē</i>		<i>cīvī</i>	<i>cītūm</i>	
<i>accīō, -īrē, to call in</i>		<i>accīvī</i>	<i>accītūm</i>	
<i>concīō, -īrē, to call together</i>		<i>concīvī</i>	<i>concītūm</i>	

363. A few verbs of the Second Conjugation form the tenses of completed action like the Passive; they are called **Semi-Deponents** (see 277):

<i>audēō, -ērē, to dare</i>	<i>ausūs sūm, I dared</i>
<i>gaudēō, -ērē, to rejoice</i>	<i>gāvīsūs sūm, I rejoiced</i>
<i>sōlēō, -ērē, to be wont</i>	<i>sōlītūs sūm, I was wont</i>

[131. 132.]

364. Deponent Verbs.

Pres. Ind. & Inf.	Perfect.
<i>fātēōr, -ērī, to confess</i>	<i>fassūs sūm</i>
<i>confītēōr, -ērī, to confess</i>	<i>confessūs sūm</i>
<i>diffītēōr, -ērī, to disavow</i>	<i>diffessūs sūm</i>
<i>mēdēōr, -ērī, to cure</i>	<i>wanting</i>
<i>mīsērēōr, -ērī, to have pity</i>	<i>mīsērītūs, mīsērtūs sūm</i>
<i>rēōr, -ērī, to think</i>	<i>rātūs sūm</i>

[163. 164.]

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

365. The **Third Conjugation** includes all verbs with stems ending in **u (v)**, or one of the consonants. The **Regular Forms** of the Third Conjugation are seen in the following:

Stem.	Perfect.	Supine.
<i>ācū-ērē, to sharpen</i>	<i>ācū-ī</i>	<i>ācū-tūm</i>
<i>ēd-ērē, to eat</i>	<i>ēd-ī</i>	<i>ē-sūm</i>
<i>carp-ērē, to pluck</i>	<i>carp-sī</i>	<i>carp-tūm</i>

Stems in u take **ī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*. Consonant-stems take in the *Perfect* partly **ī**, partly **sī**; and in the *Supine* partly **tūm**, partly **sūm**.

A few verbs in **ūō** belong to the *First Conjugation*, as: *fluctū-ō, -ārē, to wave*.

STEMS in u (v).

366. Perfect in ī, Supine in tūm:

ăcūō, -ērē, to sharpen	ăcūī	ăcūtūm
Perf. Part. wanting; ăcūtūs, sharp, is adjective only.		
argūō, -ērē, to accuse	argūī	(argūtūm)
cōargūō, -ērē, to convict	cōargūī	wanting
rēdargūō, -ērē, to refute	rēdargūī	wanting
imbūō, -ērē, to dip, dye	imbūī	imbūtūm
indūō, -ērē, to put on	indūī	indūtūm
exūō, -ērē, to put off	exūī	exūtūm
lūō, -ērē, to atone for	lūī	(lūtūm)
lūō, -ērē, to wash	lūī	lūtūm
ablūō, -ērē, to wash (off)	ablūī	ablūtūm
mīnūō, -ērē	mīnūī	mīnūtūm
immīnūō, -ērē	immīnūī	immīnūtūm
[nūō, I nod]		
abnūō, -ērē, to dissent	abnūī	wanting
adnūō, -ērē, to nod assent	adnūī	wanting
rūō, -ērē, to rush forth	rūī	rūtūm
corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground	corrūī	wanting
dirūō, -ērē, to destroy	dirūī	dirūtūm
ērūō, -ērē, to dig out	ērūī	ērūtūm
obrūō, -ērē, to cover	obrūī	obrūtūm
spūō, -ērē, to spit	spūī	spūtūm
stātūō, -ērē, to set, place	stātūī	stātūtūm
restītūō, -ērē, to restore	restītūī	restītūtūm
sūō, -ērē, to sew	sūī	sūtūm
tribūō, -ērē, to give, confer on	tribūī	tribūtūm
contribūō, -ērē, to contribute	contribūī	contribūtūm
distribūō, -ērē, to distribute	distribūī	distribūtūm
solvō, -ērē, to loose	solvī	sōlūtūm
absolvō, -ērē, to acquit	absolvī	absōlūtūm
volvō, -ērē, to roll, turn	volvī	vōlūtūm
[grūō or rūō ?]		
ingrūō, -ērē, to rush	ingrūī	wanting
congrūō, -ērē, to agree	congrūī	wanting
mētūō, -ērē, to fear	mētūī	wanting
plūō, -ērē, to rain	plūī	wanting
sternūō, -ērē, to sneeze	sternūī	wanting

367. The following stems in *u*, *v* form their *Perfect* and *Supine* differently:

vivō, -ērē, <i>to live</i>	vixī	victūm
strūō, -ērē, <i>to build</i>	struxī	structūm
constrūō, -ērē, <i>to construct</i>	construxī	constructūm
instrūō, -ērē, <i>to instruct</i>	instruxī	instructūm
flūō, -ērē, <i>to flow</i>	fluxī	fluxūm
rēflūō, -ērē, <i>to flow back</i>	rēfluxī	rēfluxūm

[135. 136.]

VERBS in īō.

368. Some verbs of the **Third Conjugation** insert *ī* before the ending of the Present, as: cāpērē; *to take*; cāpīō, *I take*. This *ī* appears likewise in all the other forms derived from the Present and Infinitive, but not before another *ī* or *ē*, except in the third person of the future active: capīēt, *he will take* (see 331).

cāpīō, -ērē, <i>to take</i>	cēpī	captūm
accipīō, -ērē, <i>to receive</i>	accēpī	acceptūm
dēcipīō, -ērē, <i>to deceive</i>	dēcēpī	dēceptūm
incipīō, -ērē, <i>to begin</i>	incēpī	inceptūm
fācīō, -ērē, <i>to do, make</i>	fēcī	factūm
pātēfācīō, -ērē, <i>to open</i>	pātēfēcī	pātēfactūm
conficīō, -ērē, <i>to make</i>	confēcī	confectūm
interficīō, -ērē, <i>to kill</i>	interfēcī	interfectūm
perficīō, -ērē, <i>to finish</i>	perfēcī	perfectūm

The verb **fācērē**, *to do, make*, deserves special notice:

It has for its **Passive** fīō, factūs sūm, fīērī, *to be made, become* (see 411). Its **Imperative** is fāc, *do*.

The same rule applies to those Compounds of fācīō, which retain *ā*, as: pātēfācīō, *I open*; **Pass.** pātēfīō, *I am opened*; **Imperat.** pātēfāc, *open*. The Compounds of fācīō with **Prepositions** change *ā* to *ī*, and are inflected regularly, as: interficīō, *I kill*; **Pass.** interficīōr; **Imperat.** interficē.

jācīō, -ērē, <i>to throw, cast</i>	jēcī	jactūm
objicīō, -ērē, <i>to throw to</i>	objēcī	objectūm
subjicīō, -ērē, <i>to subject</i>	subjēcī	subjectūm
[lācīō, <i>I entice</i>]		
allīcīō, -ērē } <i>to allure,</i>	allexī	(allectūm)
pellīcīō, -ērē } <i>entice</i>	pellexī	pellectūm
ēlīcīō, -ērē, <i>to entice out</i>	ēlicūī	ēlicītūm

[spēcīō, *I see*]

aspicīō, -ērē, *to look*

despicīō, -ērē, *to despise*

respicīō, -ērē, *to consider*

cūpīō, -ērē, *to wish, desire*

fōdīō, -ērē, *to dig*

confōdīō, -ērē, *to pick out*

effōdīō, -ērē, *to dig out*

fūgīō, -ērē, *to flee or fly*

pārīō, -ērē, *to bring forth*

quātīō, -ērē, *to shake*

concūtīō, -ērē, *to shake*

rāpīō, -ērē, *to snatch away*

arrīpīō, -ērē, *to seize*

sāpīō, -ērē, *to be wise*

dēsīpīō, -ērē, *to be foolish*

aspexi

despexi,

respexi

cūpīvi

fōdī

confōdī

effōdī

fūgī

pēperi

Fut. Part.

wanting

concussi

rāpūi

arrīpūi

sāpīvi, sāpūi

wanting

aspectum

despectum

respectum

cūpītum

fossūm

confossūm

effossūm

fūgītum

partum

pārītūrū

quassūm

concussūm

raptum

arreptum

wanting

wanting

[137. 138.]

STEMS in d, t.

369. As a rule, stems in **d**, **t** have **sī** in the Perfect, **sūm** in the Supine. Before the **s** of the Perfect and Supine, **d** and **t** are dropped or become by assimilation **ss**.

370. The repetition of the initial consonant with the vowel following it or with **ē** (**Reduplication**) is especially common in the formation of the Perfect of the 3d Conjugation; as:

pendō, *I weigh*, pēpendī; cādō, *I fall*, cēcīdī.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in **ī**.

Compound verbs omit the reduplication, but the Compounds of dō, *I give*; stō, *I stand*; discō, *I learn*; poscō, *I demand*, and some of those of currō, *I run*, retain it.

371. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm.

claudō, -ērē, *to shut, close*

conclūdō, -ērē, *to shut up*

dīvidō, -ērē, *to divide, separate*

laedō, -ērē, *to violate, hurt*

allīdō, -ērē, *to dash against*

collīdō, -ērē, *to dash together*

ēlīdō, -ērē, *to strike out*

clausī

conclūsī

dīvīsī

laesī

allisī

collīsī

ēlīsī

clausūm

conclūsūm

dīvīsūm

laesūm

allisūm

collīsūm

ēlīsūm

lūdō, -ērē, <i>to play</i>	lūsī	lūsūm
illūdō, -ērē, <i>to mock</i>	illūsī	illūsūm
plaudō, -ērē, <i>to applaud</i>	plausī	plausūm
applaudō, -ērē, <i>to applaud</i>	applausī	applausūm
explōdō, -ērē, <i>to hiss off</i>	explōsī	explōsūm
rādō, -ērē, <i>to scrape</i>	rāsī	rāsūm
rōdō, -ērē, <i>to gnaw</i>	rōsī	rōsūm
trūdō, -ērē, <i>to thrust</i>	trūsī	trūsūm
vādō, -ērē, <i>to go</i>	wanting	wanting
evādō, -ērē, <i>to turn out</i>	ēvāsī	ēvāsūm

With Reduplication:

cādō, -ērē, <i>to fall</i>	cēcīdī	cāsūm
occīdō, -ērē, <i>to set</i>	occīdī	occāsūm
incīdō, -ērē, <i>to fall into</i>	incīdī	wanting

Other Compounds of cādō want the **Supine**.

caedō, -ērē, <i>to fell</i>	cēcīdī	caesūm
dēcīdō, -ērē, <i>to cut down</i>	dēcīdī	dēcīsūm
excīdō, -ērē, <i>to hew out</i>	excīdī	excīsūm
incīdō, -ērē, <i>to engrave</i>	incīdī	incīsūm
occīdō, -ērē, <i>to kill</i>	occīdī	occīsūm
pendō, -ērē, <i>to weigh</i>	pēpendī	pensūm
suspendō, -ērē, <i>to hang</i>	suspendī	suspensūm
tendō, -ērē, <i>to spread</i>	tētendī	tensūm & tentūm
attendō, -ērē, <i>to attend to</i>	attendī	attentūm
contendō, -ērē, <i>to exert</i>	contendī	contentūm
extendō, -ērē, <i>to stretch out</i>	extendī	extensūm & extentūm
ostendō, -ērē, <i>to show</i>	ostendī	ostensūm
tundō, -ērē, <i>to thump</i>	tūtūdī	tūsūm & tunsūm
contundō, -ērē, <i>to break down</i>	contūdī	contūsūm
obtundō, -ērē, <i>to stun</i>	obtūdī	obtūsūm

372. Compounds of **clārē** with monosyllabic words pass over into the **Third Conjugation**:

crēdō, -ērē, <i>to believe</i>	crēdīdī	crēdītūm
vendō, -ērē, <i>to sell</i>	vendīdī	vendītūm
condō, -ērē, <i>to build</i>	condīdī	condītūm

abscondō, -ērē, <i>to hide</i>	abscondī	abscondītūm
ēdō, -ērē, <i>to give out</i>	ēdīdī	ēdītūm
perdō, -ērē, <i>to ruin</i>	perdīdī	perditūm
reddō, -ērē, <i>to give back</i>	reddīdī	reddītūm
trādō, -ērē, <i>to deliver</i>	trādīdī	trādītūm

[139. 140.]

373. Perfect in ī, Supine in sūm.

The Stem of many verbs of this class appears in the *Present* strengthened by **n**, as: fundō, Stem fūd. Stems in **nd** take ī in the *Perfect*.

[candō, <i>I burn</i>]		
accendō, -ērē, <i>to kindle</i>	accendī	accensūm
cūdō, -ērē, <i>to forge</i>	cūdī	cūsūm
ēdō, -ērē, <i>to eat</i>	ēdī	ēsūm
[fendō, <i>I fend</i>]		
dēfendō, -ērē, <i>to defend</i>	dēfendī	dēfensūm
offendō, -ērē, <i>to offend</i>	offendī	offensūm
mandō, -ērē, <i>to chew</i>	mandī	mansūm
prēhendō, -ērē, <i>to seize</i>	prēhendī	prēhensūm
scandō, -ērē, <i>to climb</i>	scandī	scansūm
ascendō, -ērē, <i>to ascend</i>	ascendī	ascensūm
fundō, -ērē, <i>to pour</i>	fūdī	fūsūm
circumfundō, -ērē, <i>to surround</i>	circumfūdī	circumfūsūm
diffundō, -ērē, <i>to pour forth</i>	diffūdī	diffūsūm
effundō, -ērē, <i>to pour out</i>	effūdī	effūsūm
vertō, -ērē, <i>to turn</i>	vertī	versūm
ēvertō, -ērē, <i>to overthrow</i>	ēvertī	ēversūm
stertō, -ērē, <i>to snore</i>	stertūī	wanting

The only **Semi-Deponent Verb** of the Third Conjugation belongs to this class:

fīdō, -ērē	} <i>to trust, confide</i>	fīsūs sūm
confīdō, -ērē		confīsūs sūm

374. Various Irregularities:

cēdō, -ērē, <i>to yield</i>	cessī	cessūm
accēdō, -ērē, <i>to approach</i>	accessī	accessūm
fīndō, -ērē, <i>to split, cleave</i>	fīdī	fissūm

scindō, -ērē, <i>to cut</i>	scīdī	scissūm
discindō, -ērē, <i>to split</i>	discīdī	discissūm
excindō, -ērē, <i>to destroy</i>	excīdī	excisūm
abscindō, -ērē, <i>to tear off</i>	abscīdī	abscisūm
excindō takes Perfect and Supine from caedō, abscindō the Supine .		

mētō, -ērē, <i>to reap</i>	messūī	messūm
mittō, -ērē, <i>to send</i>	mīsī	missūm
āmittō, -ērē, <i>to lose</i>	āmīsī	āmissūm
admittō, -ērē, <i>to admit</i>	admīsī	admissūm
committō, -ērē, <i>to commit</i>	commīsī	commissūm
permittō, -ērē, <i>to permit</i>	permīsī	permissūm
prōmittō, -ērē, <i>to promise</i>	prōmīsī	prōmissūm
pandō, -ērē, <i>to spread</i>	pandī	passūm
pētō, -ērē, <i>to seek</i>	pētīvī, pētīī	pētītūm
repētō, -ērē, <i>to repeat</i>	repētīvī	repētītūm
sīdō, -ērē, <i>to sit down</i>	sēdī	wanting
assīdō, -ērē, <i>to sit down</i>	assēdī	assessūm
consīdō, -ērē, <i>to settle</i>	consēdī	consessūm
sistō, -ērē, <i>to stop</i>	stītī	stātūm
obsistō, -ērē, <i>to oppose</i>	obstītī	obstītūm

Other Compounds want **Supine**:

absistō, -ērē, <i>to cease</i>	abstītī	wanting
adsistō, -ērē, <i>to stand by</i>	adstītī	wanting
existō, -ērē, <i>to come forth</i>	exstītī	wanting

[141. 142.]

STEMS in **b**, **p**.

375. Stems in **b**, **p** take **sī** in the *Perfect*, and **tūm** in the *Supine*; at the same time **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**, as: nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm. The stem of many verbs appears in the *Present* strengthened by **m**, as: rumpō, rūpī.

glūbō, -ērē, <i>to peel</i>	(glupsī)	gluptūm
dēglūbō, -ērē, <i>to skin</i>	(dēglupsī)	dēgluptūm
nūbō, -ērē, <i>to marry</i>	nupsī	nuptūm
scribō, -ērē, <i>to write</i>	scripsī	scriptūm
conscribō, -ērē, <i>to frame</i>	conscripsī	conscriptūm
describō, -ērē, <i>to describe</i>	descripsī	descriptūm
praescribō, -ērē, <i>to prescribe</i>	praescripsī	praescriptūm
carpō, -ērē, <i>to pluck</i>	carpsī	carptūm
dēcarpō, -ērē, <i>to pluck</i>	dēcarpsī	dēcarptūm
discerpō, -ērē, <i>to tear asunder</i>	discerpsī	discerptūm

rēpō, -ērē, *to creep, crawl*
 irrēpō, -ērē, *to creep into*
 scalpō, -ērē, *to carve*
 sculpō, -ērē, *to chisel*
 serpō, -ērē, *to creep*

repsī
 irrepsī
 scalpsī
 sculpsī
 serpsī

reptūm
 irreptūm
 scalptūm
 sculptūm
 (serptūm)

376.

Irregular:

accumbō, -ērē, *to recline at table*
 bibō, -ērē, *to drink*
 rumpō, -ērē, *to break*
 corrumpō, -ērē, *to corrupt*
 ērumpō, -ērē, *to break out*
 perrumpō, -ērē, *to break through*
 strēpō, -ērē, *to make a noise*
 lambō, -ērē, *to lick*
 scābō, -ērē, *to scratch*

accūbūī
 bibī
 rūpī
 corrūpī
 ērūpī
 perrūpī
 strēpūī
 lambī
 scābī

accūbītūm
 bibītūm
 ruptūm
 corruptūm
 ēruptūm
 perruptūm
 strēpītūm
 (lambītūm)
 wanting

[143. 144.]

STEMS in c, g, q, h, ct.

377.

c, g, q, and h with s become x
 g, h, and q before t become c.

dūc-ō — duxī = ducī
 rēg-ō — rexī = regī
 cōqu-ō — coxī = coqsī
 trāh-ō — traxī = trahsī

rēgō — rectūm = regtūm
 trāhō — tractūm = trahītūm
 coquō — coctūm = coqtūm

378.

Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm:

cingō, -ērē, *to gird*
 [fligō, -ērē, *to strike*
 affligō, -ērē, *to dash*
 configō, -ērē, *to fight*
 prōfligō, -ārē, *to strike down*
 jungō, -ērē, *to join*
 adjungō, -ērē, *to join (to)*
 plangō, -ērē, *to beat, lament*
 rēgō, -ērē, *to rule, govern*
 corrīgō, -ērē, *to correct*
 dirīgō, -ērē, *to direct*
 (surrīgō) surgō, -ērē, *to rise*
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ērē, *to go on*
 sūgō, -ērē, *to suck*
 tēgō, -ērē, *to cover*
 dētēgō, -ērē, *to discover*
 prōtēgō, -ērē, *to protect*

cinxī
 flixī
 afflixī
 conflixī
 prōfligāvi
 junxī
 adjunxī
 planxī
 rexī
 correxī
 direxī
 surrexī
 perrexī
 suxī
 texī
 dētexī
 prōtexī

cinctūm
 flictūm]
 afflictūm
 conflictūm
 prōfligātūm
 junctūm
 adjunctūm
 planctūm
 rectūm
 correctūm
 directūm
 surrectūm
 perrectūm
 suctūm
 tectūm
 dētectūm
 prōtectūm

tingō (tingūō), -ērē, to stain	tinxī	tinctūm
ungō (ungūō), -ērē, to anoint	unxī	unctūm
[stingūō, I put out]		
exstingūō, -ērē, to put out	exstinxī	exstinctūm
distingūō, -ērē, to distinguish	distinxī	distinctūm
trāhō, -ērē, to draw	traxī	tractūm
contrāhō, -ērē, to contract	contraxī	contractūm
vēhō, -ērē, to carry	vexī	vectūm
dīcō, -ērē, to say, tell	dixī	dictūm
praedicō, -ērē, to predict	praedixī	praedictūm
indīcō, -ērē, to declare	indixī	indictūm
dūcō, -ērē, to lead	duxī	ductūm
ēdūcō, -ērē, to lead forth	ēduxī	ēductūm
The Imperatives of dīcērē, to say, dūcērē, to lead, are: dīc, dūc; compounds follow the simple verbs: ēdūc, praedic.		
coquō, -ērē, to cook, bake	coxī	coctūm

379. The Supine is irregular:

fiŋō, -ērē, to fashion	finxī	fictūm
pingō, -ērē, to paint	pinxī	pictūm
stringō, -ērē, to bind	strinxī	strictūm
fīgō, -ērē, to fix	fixī	fixūm

380. Present strengthened by t:

flectō, -ērē, to bend	flexī	flexūm
nectō, -ērē, to tie	nexī-nexūī	nexūm
pectō, -ērē, to comb	pexī	pexūm
plectō, -ērē, to beat (only Passive)	wanting	wanting

381. The Supine is wanting:

angō, -ērē, to torment, vex	anxī	—
ningō, -ērē, to snow	ninxī	—
clangō, -ērē, to clang	wanting	—

382. With Reduplication:

parcō, -ērē, to spare	pēpercī	parsūm
pungō, -ērē, to pierce, sting	pūpūgī	punctūm
tangō, -ērē, to touch	tētīgī	tactūm
attingō, -ērē, to touch	attīgī	attactūm
pangō, -ērē, to strike, drive	panxī	panctūm
pangō, -ērē, to bargain	pēpīgī	pactūm
compingō, -ērē, to drive tight	compēgī	compactūm

383. With lengthened Stem-vowel.

Many Consonant-stems with short stem-syllable take **ī** in the Perfect, before which the stem-vowel is lengthened, and **ā** becomes **ē**.

āgō , - ērē , to drive, do	ēgī	actūm
pērāgō , - ērē , to accomplish	pērēgī	pēractūm
ābigō , - ērē , to drive away	ābēgī	ābactūm
sūbigō , - ērē , to subdue	sūbēgī	sūbactūm
cōgō , - ērē , to force (cō-āgō)	cōēgī	cōactūm
dēgō , - ērē , to spend (dē-āgō)	dēgī	wanting
ambigō , - ērē , to contend	wanting	wanting
frangō , - ērē , to break	frēgī	fractūm
confringō , - ērē , to break in two	confrēgī	confractūm
effringō , - ērē , to break open	effrēgī	effractūm
lēgō , - ērē , to read	lēgī	lectūm
allēgō , - ērē , to choose	allēgī	allectūm
perlēgō , - ērē , to read through	perlēgī	perlectūm
rēlēgō , - ērē , to read over	rēlēgī	rēlectūm
colligō , - ērē , to collect	collēgī	collectūm
dēligō , - ērē , to choose	dēlēgī	dēlectūm
ēligō , - ērē , to elect	ēlēgī	ēlectūm
diligō , - ērē , to love	dīlexī	dīlectūm
intellēgō , - ērē , to understand	intellexī	intellectūm
neglēgō , - ērē , to neglect	neglexī	neglectūm
icō , - ērē , to strike	icī	ictūm
vincō , - ērē , to conquer	vīcī	victūm
linquō , - ērē , to leave	līquī	wanting
rēlinquō , - ērē , to leave (behind)	rēlīquī	rēlictūm

384. Perfect in sī, Supine in sūm:

mergō , - ērē , to dip in, plunge	mersī	mersūm
spargō , - ērē , to scatter	sparsī	sparsūm
conspargō , - ērē , to sprinkle	conspersī	conspersūm
tergō , - ērē , to wipe	tersī	tersūm
vergō , - ērē , to verge	wanting	wanting

[145. 146.]

STEMS in l, m, n, r.

385. Perfect in sī, Supine in tūm.

m is sometimes strengthened with **p**, as : **sūmō**, **sumpsī**.

cōmō , - ērē , to adorn	compsī	comptūm
dēmō , - ērē , to take away	dempsī	demptūm

prōmō, -ērē, <i>to take out</i>	prompsī	promptum
sūmō, -ērē, <i>to take</i>	sumpsī	sumptum
absūmō, -ērē, <i>to use up</i>	absumpsī	absumptum
consūmō, -ērē, <i>to consume</i>	consumpsī	consumptum
[temnō, <i>I despise</i>]		
contemnō, -ērē, <i>to despise</i>	contempsī	contemptum

386. According to the Analogy of the 2d Conjugation:

ālō, -ērē, <i>to nourish</i>	ālūī	{ altum ālītum
cōlō, -ērē, <i>to cultivate</i>	cōlūī	cultum
incōlō, -ērē, <i>to inhabit</i>	incōlūī	incultum
consūlō, -ērē, <i>to counsel</i>	consūlūī	consultum
mōlō, -ērē, <i>to grind</i>	mōlūī	molītum
occūlō, -ērē, <i>to conceal</i>	occūlūī	occultum
frēmō, -ērē, <i>to growl</i>	frēmūī	frēmītum
gēmō, -ērē, <i>to groan</i>	gēmūī	gēmītum
trēmō, -ērē, <i>to tremble</i>	trēmūī	wanting
vōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit</i>	vōmūī	vōmītum
ēvōmō, -ērē, <i>to vomit up</i>	ēvōmūī	ēvōmītum
gignō, -ērē, <i>to beget</i>	gēnūī	gēnītum
pōnō, -ērē, <i>to place</i>	pōsūī	pōsītum
antēpōnō, -ērē, <i>to prefer</i>	antēpōsūī	antēpōsītum
oppōnō, -ērē, <i>to oppose</i>	oppōsūī	oppōsītum
[cellō, <i>I impel</i>]		
percellō, -ērē, <i>to beat down</i>	percūlī	perculsum
antēcellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting
praecellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting
excellō, -ērē, }	wanting	wanting

387. With Reduplication:

cānō, -ērē, <i>to sing</i>	cēcīnī	cantum
concīnō, -ērē, <i>to sound together</i>	concīnūī	wanting
praecīnō, -ērē, <i>to sing to one</i>	praecīnūī	wanting
currō, -ērē, <i>to run</i>	cūcurrī	cursum
accurrō, -ērē, <i>to run to</i>	{ accūcurrī accurrī }	accursum
concurrō, -ērē, <i>to run together</i>	{ concūcurrī concurrī }	coneursum
occurrō, -ērē, <i>to meet</i>	occurrī	occursum

rēcurrō, -ērē, to run back	rēcurre	rēcursūm
succurrō, -ērē, to succor	succurre	succursūm
fallō, -ērē, to cheat	fēfelli	falsūm
rēfellō, -ērē, to refute	rēfelli	wanting
pellō, -ērē, to drive (away)	pēpūli	pulsūm
dēpellō, -ērē, to dispel	dēpūli	dēpulsūm
rēpellō, -ērē, to repel	rēpūli	rēpulsūm

[147. 148.]

388.

Perfect in vī:

cernō, -ērē, to see, discern	(crēvī)	(crētūm)
dēcernō, -ērē, to determine	dēcrevī	dēcretūm
discernō, -ērē, to distinguish	discrevī	discretūm
linō, -ērē, to smear	lēvī (līvī)	litūm
allinō, -ērē, to besmear	allēvī	allitūm
illinō, -ērē, to bedaub	illēvī	illitūm
sīnō, -ērē, to let	sīvī	sītūm
dēsīnō, -ērē, to leave off	dēsīvī, dēsī	dēsītūm
spernō, -ērē, to despise	sprēvī	spretūm
sternō, -ērē, to strew	strāvī	strātūm
prosternō, -ērē, to overthrow	prostrāvī	prostrātūm
sērō, -ērē, to sow	sēvī	sātūm
consērō, -ērē, to plant	consēvī	consītūm
insērō, -ērē, to plant in	insēvī	insītūm
sērō, -ērē, to join	sērūi	sertūm
dēsērō, -ērē, to forsake	dēsērūi	dēsertūm
dissērō, -ērē, to discourse	dissērūi	dissertūm
insērō, -ērē, to insert	insērūi	insertūm
tērō, -ērē, to rub, wear out	trīvī	trītūm
contērō, -ērē, to rub off	contrīvī	contrītūm
dētērō, -ērē, to wear away	dētrīvī	dētritūm

389.

Various Irregularities:

vellō, -ērē, to pluck, pull	vellī (vulsī)	vulsūm
āvellō, -ērē, to pull down	āvellī	āvulsūm
prēmō, -ērē, to press	pressī	pressūm
comprimō, -ērē, to press together	compressī	compressūm
exprimō, -ērē, to press out	expressī	expressūm
supprimō, -ērē, to keep back	suppressī	suppressūm
psallō, -ērē, to play on the cithern	psallī	wanting
ēmō, -ērē, to buy	ēmī	emptūm
cōēmō, -ērē, to buy together	cōēmī	cōemptūm

rēdīmō, -ērē, to buy back	rēdēmī	rēdemptūm
ādīmō, -ērē, to take away	ādēmī	ādemptūm
pērīmō, -ērē, to slay	pērēmī	pēremptūm
gērō, -ērē, to carry on	gessī	gestūm
congērō, -ērē, to bring together	congressī	congestūm
tūrō, -ērē, to burn	ussī	ustūm
combūrō, -ērē, to burn (wholly)	combussī	combustūm
verrō, -ērē, to sweep	verrī	versūm
quaerō, -ērē, to seek, desire	quaesivī	quaesitūm
acquirō, -ērē, to acquire	acquisivī	acquisitūm
anquirō, -ērē, to search after	anquisivī	anquisitūm
inquirō, -ērē, to inquire	inquisivī	inquisitūm
fērō, ferrē, to bear (403)	tūlī	lātūm
fūrō, -ērē, to rage	wanting	wanting
tollō, -ērē, to lift, take away	sustulī	sublātūm

[149. 150.]

STEMS in s, x (cs).

390. There is only one stem in *s* preceded by a *Vowel*, viz. *vīsō*; all the rest are in *s* preceded by a *Consonant*.

vīsō, -ērē, to visit	vīsī	wanting
depsō, -ērē, to knead	depsūī	depstūm
pinsō, -ērē, to pound	{ pinsūī	pinsitūm
	{ pinsī	pistūm
texō, -ērē, to weave	texūī	textūm

According to the Analogy of the 4th Conjugation:

arcessō, -ērē, to summon	arcessivī	arcessitūm
cāpessō, -ērē, to lay hold of	cāpessivī	cāpessitūm
fācessō, -ērē, to accomplish	fācessivī	fācessitūm
lācessō, -ērē, to excite	lācessivī	lācessitūm
incessō, -ērē, to fall upon	incessivī (-ī)	wanting

STEMS in sc.

391. Stems strengthened by *sc* have generally an inchoative meaning, i. e., they denote the beginning of an action — **Inchoative or Inceptive Verbs**. When formed from verbs (by adding *sc* to Vowel-stems, and *isc* to Consonant-stems) they are called *Verbal Inceptives*; when from substantives and adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

Verbal Inceptives.

392. Verbal Inceptives take the **Perfect** and **Supine** of their *Primitives*, if such Perfect and Supine *actually* exist.

393. Many Verbs in *scō* are no longer used as *Inchoatives*, but in the sense of their *Primitives* which have been disused:

crescō, -ērē, to grow	crēvī	crētūm
noscō, -ērē, to (learn to) know	nōvī	nōtūm
agnoscō, -ērē, to acknowledge	agnōvī	agnītūm
cognoscō, -ērē, to know	cognōvī	cognītūm
pascō, -ērē, to graze	pāvī	pastūm
quiescō, -ērē	quiēvī	quīetūm
rēquiescō, -ērē } to rest	rēquiēvī	rēquīetūm
suescō, -ērē, to become used	suēvī	suētūm
assuescō, -ērē } to be accus-	assuēvī	assuētūm
consuescō, -ērē } tomed	consuēvī	consuētūm
compescō, -ērē, to restrain	compescūī	wanting
discō, -ērē, to learn	dīdīcī	wanting
dēdiscō, -ērē, to unlearn	dēdīdīcī	wanting
ēdiscō, -ērē, to learn by heart	ēdīdīcī	wanting
poscō, -ērē, to demand	pōposcī	wanting
dēposcō, -ērē, to request	dēpōposcī	wanting
exposcō, -ērē, to request earnestly	expōposcī	wanting
rēposcō, -ērē, to demand back	wanting	wanting
gliscō, -ērē, to grow up	wanting	wanting

[151, 152]

394. But the great majority of Verbal Inceptives are from *Primitives* which actually exist.

With the Perfect and Supine of their *Primitives*:

ābōlescō, -ērē, to disappear	ābōlēvī	ābōlītūm
ābōlēō		
ādōlescō, -ērē, to grow up	ādōlēvī	ādultūm
ādōlēō		
obsōlescō, -ērē, to become obsolete	obsōlēvī	obsōlētūm
obsōlēō		
cōālescō, -ērē, to grow together	cōālūī	cōālītūm
ālō		
concūpiscō, -ērē, to covet	concūpīvī	concūpītūm
cūpīō		
convālescō, -ērē, to recover	convālūī	convālītūm
vālēō		
exardescō, -ērē, to take fire	exarsī	exarsūm
ardēō		
obdormiscō, -ērē, to fall asleep	obdormīvī	obdormītūm
dormīō		

rēviviscō, -ērē, <i>to revive</i>	rēvixī	rēvictūm
vīvō		
sciscō, -ērē, <i>to decree</i>	scīvī	scītūm
consciscō, -ērē, <i>to bring upon</i>	conscīvī	conscītūm
sciō		
condōlescō, -ērē, } <i>to feel pain</i>	condōlūī	condōlītūm
indōlescō, -ērē, }	indōlūī	indōlītūm
dōlēō		
invētēlescō, -ērē, <i>to grow old</i>	invētērāvī	invētērātūm
invētērō		

With the Perfect of their Primitives:

ācescō, -ērē, <i>to turn sour</i>	ācūī
ācēō	
ārescō, -ērē, <i>to become dry</i>	ārūī
ārēō	
cālescō, -ērē, <i>to become warm</i>	cālūī
cālēō	
contīescō, -ērē, <i>to become still</i>	contīcūī
tācēō	
dēlītescō, -ērē, <i>to hide away</i>	dēlītūī
lātēō	
effervescō, -ērē, <i>to boil up</i>	effervūī & efferbūī
fervēō	
efflōrescō, -ērē, <i>to begin to bloom</i>	efflōrūī
flōrēō	
extīnescō, -ērē, <i>to fear</i>	extīmūī
tīmēō	
ērūbescō, -ērē, <i>to turn red</i>	ērūbūī
rūbēō	
horrescō, -ērē, <i>to stand on end</i>	horrūī
horrēō	
illūescō, -ērē, <i>to grow light</i>	illuxī
lūcēō	
intūnescō, -ērē, <i>to swell</i>	intūmūī
tūmēō	
pallescō, -ērē, <i>to turn pale</i>	pallūī
pallēō	
pūtrescō, -ērē, <i>to rot</i>	pūtrūī
pūtrēō	
sēnescō, -ērē, <i>to grow old</i>	sēnūī
sēnēō	

rēsīpiscō, -ērē, to come to one's	rēsīpūī
sāpīō	[senses]
ingēmiscō, -ērē, to groan	ingēmūī
gēmō	
contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble	contrēmūī
trēmō	

Wanting Perfect and Supine.

hiscō, -ērē, to yawn	flāvescō, -ērē, to become yellow
hīō	flāvēō
augescō, -ērē, to augment	hēbescō, -ērē, to grow dull
augēō	hēbēō

Denominative Inceptives.

395. Most Denominative Inceptives want both **Perfect** and **Supine**; some have the **Perfect** in **ūī**.

Wanting Perfect and Supine.

aegrescō, -ērē, to fall sick	plūmescō, -ērē, to get feathers
aegēr, sick	plūmā, a feather
dītescō, -ērē, to grow rich	pūēascō, -ērē, to become a
dīvēs, rich	pūēr, a child [child]
dulcescō, -ērē, to become sweet	jūvenescō, -ērē, to grow young
dulcīs, sweet	jūvenīs, young
grandescō, -ērē, to grow large	grāvescō, -ērē, to grow heavy
grandīs, large	grāvīs, heavy
mītescō, -ērē, to become mild	intēgrascō, -ērē, to begin anew
mītīs, mild	intēgēr, fresh
pinguescō, -ērē, to grow fat	tēnērescō, -ērē, to grow tender
pinguīs, fat	tēnēr, tender

With the Perfect in ūī.

crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent (crēbēr, frequent)	crēbrūī
dūrescō, -ērē, to grow hard (dūrūs, hard)	dūrūī
ēvānescō, -ērē, to vanish (vānūs, empty)	ēvānūī
innōtescō, -ērē, to become known (nōtūs, known)	innōtūī
mācrescō, -ērē, to grow meager (mācēr, meager)	mācrūī
mātūrescō, -ērē, to ripen (mātūrūs, ripe)	mātūrūī
nīgrescō, -ērē, to become black (nīgēr, black)	nīgrūī
obmūtescō, -ērē, to become dumb (mūtūs, dumb)	obmūtūī
rēcŕūdescō, -ērē, to break open afresh (crūdūs, fresh)	rēcŕūdūī
vīlescō, -ērē, to become vile (vīlīs, vile)	vīlūī

[153. 154.]

396.

Deponent Verbs.

frūōr, -ī, *to enjoy*
 perfrūōr, -ī, *to enjoy fully*
 fungōr, -ī, *to discharge*
 defungōr, -ī, *to discharge*
 grādīōr, -ī, *to step*
 aggrēdīōr, -ī, *to attack*
 lābōr, -ī, *to glide, roll on*
 dilābōr, -ī, *to fall asunder*
 lōquōr, -ī, *to speak*
 allōquōr, -ī, *to address*
 mōrīōr, -ī, *to die*
 nītōr, -ī, *to stay one's self on*
 pātīōr, -ī, *to suffer*
 perpētīōr, -ī, *to endure*
 [plectōr]
 amplectōr, -ī, *to embrace*
 quērōr, -ī, *to complain*
 sēquōr, -ī, *to follow*
 assēquōr, -ī, *to pursue*
 ūtōr, -ī, *to use*
 ābūtōr, -ī, *to use, abuse*
 rēvertōr, -ī, *to turn back*

frūītūs & fructūs sūm
 perfructūs sūm
 functūs sūm
 defunctūs sūm
 gressūs sūm
 aggressūs sūm
 lapsūs sūm
 dilapsūs sūm
 lōcūtūs sūm
 allōcūtūs sūm
 mortuūs sūm—F. Part. mōrītūrūs
 nīsūs & nixūs sūm
 passūs sūm
 perpassūs sūm
 amplexūs sūm
 questūs sūm
 sēcūtūs sūm
 assēcūtūs sūm
 ūsūs sūm
 ābūsūs sūm
 rēvertī, active — Part. rēversūs

With stems in sc.

[āpiscōr, -ī, *to reach after*
 ādīpiscōr, -ī, *to obtain*
 dēfētiscōr, -ī, *to be worn out*
 expergiscōr, -ī, *to awake*
 īrascōr, -ī, *to grow angry*
 [mīniscōr, *I recollect*]
 commīniscōr, -ī, *to devise*
 rēmīniscōr, -ī, *to remember*
 nanciscōr, -ī, *to get*
 nascōr, -ī, *to be born*
 obliviscōr, -ī, *to forget*
 pāciscōr, -ī, *to strike a bargain*
 pascōr, -ī, *to feed*
 prōfīciscōr, -ī, *to set out, start*
 ulciscōr, -ī, *to avenge*
 vescōr, -ī, *to feed upon, eat*

aptūs sūm]
 ādeptūs sūm
 dēfessūs sūm
 expectētūs sūm
 (īrātūs sūm) — īrātūs, *angry*
 commentūs sūm
 wanting
 nactūs & nantūs sūm
 nātūs sūm—Fut. Part. nascītūrūs
 oblitūs sūm
 pactūs sūm
 pastūs sūm
 prōfectūs sūm
 ultūs sūm
 wanting

VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

397. The **Fourth Conjugation** includes all verbs with vowel-stems in **ī**. Their **Perfect** and **Supine** are formed by adding respectively **vī**, **tūm**, according to the rule already given (**344**). Or, in other words, in the **Fourth Conjugation** the **Regular Forms** of the **Principal Parts** are these:

Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
-īō -īrē	-īvī	-ītūm
audīō audīrē, <i>to hear</i>	audīvī	audītūm

398. The following **Verbs** of the **Fourth Conjugation** vary from the usual mode of formation:

farcīō, -īrē, <i>to stuff</i>	farsī	fartūm
rēfercīō, -īrē, <i>to cram</i>	rēfersī	rēfertūm
fulcīō, -īrē, <i>to support</i>	fulsī	fultūm
haurīō, -īrē, <i>to draw</i>	hausī	haustūm
exaurīō, -īrē, <i>to exhaust</i>	exhausī	exhaustūm
saepīō, -īrē, <i>to hedge in</i>	saepsī	saeptūm
sālīō, -īrē, <i>to leap</i>	sālūī	saltūm
dissīlīō, -īrē, <i>to burst asunder</i>	dissīlūī	wanting
sancīō, -īrē, <i>to sanction</i>	sanxī	sanctūm, sancītūm
sarcīō, -īrē, <i>to mend</i>	sarsī	sartūm
sentīō, -īrē, <i>to feel, perceive</i>	sensī	sensūm
sēpēlīō, -īrē, <i>to bury</i>	sēpēlīvī	sēpultūm
vēnīō, -īrē, <i>to come</i>	vēnī	ventūm
invēnīō, -īrē, <i>to find out</i>	invēnī	inventūm
vincīō, -īrē	vinxī	vinctūm
dēvincīō, -īrē } <i>to bind</i>	dēvinxī	dēvinctūm
āmicīō, -īrē, <i>to clothe</i>	wanting	āmictūm
pārīō, -ērē, <i>to bring forth</i> (3d Conjugation)		
āpērīō, -īrē, <i>to open</i>	āpērūī	āpértūm
rēpērīō, -īrē, <i>to find</i>	rēpērūī	rēpertūm

Wanting Perfect and Supine:

fērīō, -īrē, <i>to strike, beat</i>	and Desideratives
fērōcīō, -īrē, <i>to be unruly</i>	in ūrīō, as:
sūperbīō, -īrē, <i>to be proud</i>	ēsūrīō, -īrē, <i>to want to eat</i>

[159. 160.]

399.

Deponent Verbs.

assentīōr, -īrī, <i>to assent</i>	assensūs sūm
mētīōr, -īrī, <i>to measure</i>	mensūs sūm

ordīōr, -īrī, *to begin*
 expērīōr, -īrī, *to try, exercise*
 oppērīōr, -īrī, *to await*
 ōrīōr, -īrī, *to rise, appear*

orsūs sūm
 expertūs sūm
 oppertūs sūm
 ortūs sūm

Pres. Ind. { ōrīōr ōrērīs ōrītūr } 3d Conjugation.
 { ōrīmūr ōrīmīnī ōrīuntūr }

Imperf. Subj. ōrīrēr or ōrērēr Gerundive. ōrīundūs, -ā, -ūm

Fut. Part. orītūrūs, -ā, -ūm

ādōrīōr, -īrī, *to attack*

ādortūs sūm

The Compounds of ōrīōr follow the conjugation of the simple verb, except ādōrīrī, *to rise up at, attack*, which follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout. [167. 168.]

Irregular Conjugation.

400. A few verbs are **irregular** in the Conjugation of the **Present** and the forms derived from it. These are:

sūm, I am, and its Compounds.

The conjugation of sūm has already been given (**303**); its Compounds are conjugated in the same way except possē, *to be able*.

401. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf. Perfect. Supine.
 possum possē, *to be able* pōtūī —

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

pos' sūm, *I can*
 pō' tēs, *thou canst*
 pō' test, *he can*
 pos' sū mūs, *we can*
 pō te' stīs, *you can*
 pos' sunt, *they can*

pos' sīm, *I may be able*
 pos' sīs, *thou mayest be able*
 pos' sit, *he may be able*
 pos sī' mūs, *we may be able*
 pos sī' tīs, *you may be able*
 pos' sint, *they may be able*

Imperfect.

pō' tē rām, *I could, was able*
 pō' tē rās, *thou couldst*
 pō' tē rāt, *he could*
 pō tē rā' mūs, *we could*
 pō tē rā' tīs, *you could*
 pō' tē rant, *they could*

pos' sēm, *I might be able*
 pos' sēs, *thou mightest be able*
 pos' sēt, *he might be able*
 pos sē' mūs, *we might be able*
 pos sē' tīs, *you might be able*
 pos' sent, *they might be able*

INDICATIVE.

põ' tẽ rō, *I shall be able*
 põ' tẽ rīs, *thou wilt be able*
 põ' tẽ rīt, *he will be able*
 põ tẽ' rī mūs, *we shall be able*
 põ tẽ' rī tīs, *you will be able*
 põ' tẽ runt, *they will be able*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

(wanting)

Perfect.

põ' tũ ī, <i>I have been able</i>	põ tũ' ě rīm, <i>I may have been able</i>
põ tũ i' stī	põ tũ' ě rīs
põ' tũ it	põ tũ' ě rīt
põ tũ' ī mūs	põ tũ ě rī mūs
põ tũ i' stīs	põ tũ ě rī tīs
põ tũ ě' runt	põ tũ' ě rint

Pluperfect.

põ tũ' ě rām, <i>I had been able</i>	põ tũ is' sēm, <i>I might have been able</i>
põ tũ' ě rās	põ tũ is' sēs
põ tũ' ě rāt	põ tũ is' sēt
põ tũ ě rā' mūs	põ tũ is sē' mūs
põ tũ ě rā' tīs	põ tũ is sē' tīs
põ tũ' ě rant	põ tũ is' sent

Future Perfect.

põ tũ' ě rō, <i>I shall have been able</i>	(wanting)
põ tũ' ě rīs	
põ tũ' ě rīt	
põ tũ ě rī mūs	
põ tũ ě rī tīs	
põ tũ' ě rint	

INFINITIVE.

Present. pos' sě, <i>to be able</i>	Perfect. põ tũ is' sě, <i>to have been able</i>
-------------------------------------	---

402. The verb sũm is joined with the adjective põtīs, *able*, making the compound (pot-sũm) possũm, *I can, am able*. This is conjugated like sũm, but observe:

that the **t** of põt is assimilated before **s**, thus: possũm instead of potsũm;

that the **f** is dropped in fũĩ, fũěřām, etc., thus: põtũĩ for potfũĩ;

that põtessě and põtessēm are contracted into possě, possēm.

Participle, Imperative, and Gerund are wanting; põtens, *mighty*, is simply an adjective. [115. 116.]

403.	Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
	fērō ferrē, <i>to bear</i>	tūlī	lātūm

Active.

INDICATIVE.

fē'rō, *I bear*
fers
fert
fē' rī mūs
fer' tīs
fē' runt

Present.

fē' rām, *I may bear*
fē' rās
fē' rāt
fē rā' mūs
fē rā' tīs
fē' rant

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

fē rē' bām, <i>I was bearing</i>	fer' rēm, <i>I should bear</i>
fē rē' bās	fer' rēs
fē rē' bāt	fer' rēt
fē rē bā' mūs	fer rē' mūs
fē rē bā' tīs	fer rē' tīs
fē rē' bant	fer' rent

Future.

fē' rām, <i>I shall bear</i>	lā tū'rūs,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} sīm \\ sīs \\ sīt \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{may be} \\ \text{about} \\ \text{to bear} \end{array}$
fē' rēs	-ā, -ūm		
fē' rēt			
fē rē' mūs	lā tū' rī,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} sī' mūs \\ sī' tīs \\ sint \end{array} \right\}$	
fē rē' tīs	-ae, -ā		
fē' rent			

Perfect.

tū' lī, <i>I bore or have borne</i>	tū' lē rīm, <i>I may have borne</i>
tū li' stī	tū' lē rīs
tū' līt	tū' lē rīt
tū' lī mūs	tū lē rī mūs
tū li' stīs	tū lē rī tīs
tū lē' runt	tū' lē rint

Pluperfect.

tū' lē rām, <i>I had borne</i>	tū lis' sēm, <i>I should have borne</i>
tū' lē rās	tū lis' sēs
tū' lē rāt	tū lis' sēt
tū lē rā' mūs	tū lis sē' mūs
tū lē rā' tīs	tū lis sē' tīs
tū' lē rant	tū lis' sent

INDICATIVE.

tũ' lě **rō**, *I shall have borne*
 tũ' lě **rīs**
 tũ' lě **rīt**
 tũ lě **rī mūs**
 tũ lě **rī tīs**
 tũ' lě **rint**

Future Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing.	fěr, <i>bear thou</i>	Plur.	fer' tě , <i>bear ye</i>
Fut. "	fer' tō , <i>thou shalt bear</i>	"	fer tō' tě , <i>ye shall bear</i>
"	fer' tō , <i>he shall bear</i>	"	fě run' tō , <i>they shall bear</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' **rě**, *to bear*
 Perf. tũ lis' **sě**, *to have borne*
 Fut. lā tũ' **rūs**, **-ā**, **-ūm** es' **sě**, &c., *to be about to bear*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. fě' **rens**, fě **ren' tīs**, *bearing*
 Fut. lā tũ' **rūs**, lā tũ' **rā**, lā tũ' **rūm**, *about to bear*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	fě ren' dī , <i>of bearing</i>	
Dat.	fě ren' dō , <i>for bearing</i>	
Acc.	fě ren' dūm , <i>bearing</i>	lā' tūm }
Abl.	fě ren' dō , <i>by bearing</i>	lā' tū } <i>to bear</i>

Passive.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fě' rōr , <i>I am borne</i>	fě' rār , <i>I may be borne</i>
fer' rīs	fě rā' rīs
fer' tūr	fě rā' tūr
fě' rī mūr	fě rā' mūr
fě rī' mī nī	fě rā' mīnī
fě run' tūr	fě ran' tūr

Imperfect.

fě rē' bār , <i>I was borne</i>	fer' rēr , <i>I might be borne</i>
fě rē bā' rīs	fer rē' rīs
fě rē bā' tūr	fer rē' tūr
fě rē bā' mūr	fer rē' mūr
fě rē bā' mī nī	fer rē' mī nī
fě rē ban' tūr	fer ren' tūr

INDICATIVE.

fě' răr, *I shall be borne*
 fě rĕ' rīs
 fě rĕ' tūr
 fě rĕ' mūr
 fě rĕ' mī nī
 fě ren' tūr

Future.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

(wanting)

Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm sŭm, *I was or have been borne*
 SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm sīm, *I may have been borne*

Pluperfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm ěrām, *I had been borne*
 SUBJ. lā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm essēm, *I might have been borne*

Future Perfect.

INDIC. lā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm ěrō, *I shall have been borne*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. fer' rĕ, *be thou borne* fě rī' mī nī, *be ye borne*
 Fut. fer' tōr, *thou shalt be borne*
 fer' tōr, *he shall be borne* fě run' tōr, *they shall be borne*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fer' rī, *to be borne*
 Perf. lā' tūs, -ă, -ŭm es' sě, &c., *to have been borne*
 Fut. lā' tŭm ī' rī, *to be about to be borne*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. lā' tūs, lā' tā, lā' tŭm, *borne*
 Gerundive. fě ren' dŭs, fě ren' dă, fě ren' dŭm, *to be borne*

Care should be taken not to confound the two verbs:
 ferrĕ, *to bear*, and fěrīrĕ, *to beat*.

404. Compounds of fěrō are conjugated like the simple verb:

adfērō	adferrĕ, <i>to afford</i>	attŭlī	adlātŭm
aufērō	auferrĕ, <i>to carry away</i>	abstŭlī	ablātŭm
confērō	conferrĕ, <i>to bring together</i>	contŭlī	collātŭm
diffērō	differrĕ, <i>to defer</i>	distŭlī	dilātŭm
effērō	efferrĕ, <i>to carry out</i>	extŭlī	elātŭm
infērō	infernĕ, <i>to carry into</i>	intŭlī	illātŭm
præfērō	præferrĕ, <i>to prefer</i>	praetŭlī	praelātŭm
rĕfērō	rĕferrĕ, <i>to bring back</i>	rĕtŭlī, rettŭlī	relātŭm

[173. 174.]

405. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

võlõ	vellẽ, to be willing
nõlõ	nollẽ, to be unwilling
mālõ	mallẽ, to be more willing

Perfect.

võlũĩ	—
nõlũĩ	—
mālũĩ	—

INDICATIVE.

Present.

I am willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lõ	nõ' lõ	mālõ
vĩs	nõn vĩa	mā' vĩa
vult	nõn vult	mā' vult
võ' lũ mũs	nõ' lũ mũs	mā' lũ mũs
vul' tĩa	nõn vul' tĩa	mā vul' tĩa
võ' lunt	nõ' lunt	mā' lunt

Imperfect.

I was willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lẽ' bãm	nõ lẽ' bãm	mā lẽ' bãm
võ lẽ' bās	nõ lẽ' bās	mā lẽ' bās
võ lẽ' băt	nõ lẽ' băt	mā lẽ' băt
võ lẽ bā' mũs	nõ lẽ bā' mũs	mā lẽ bā' mũs
võ lẽ bā' tĩa	nõ lẽ bā' tĩa	mā lẽ bā' tĩa
võ lẽ' bant	nõ lẽ' bant	mā lẽ' bant

Future.

I shall be willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lãm	nõ' lãm	mā' lãm
võ' lēs	nõ' lēs	mā' lēs
võ' lět	nõ' lět	mā' lět
võ lẽ' mũs	nõ lẽ' mũs	mā lẽ' mũs
võ lẽ' tĩa	nõ lẽ' tĩa	mā lẽ' tĩa
võ' lent	nõ' lent	mā' lent

Perfect.

I was or have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ' lũ ĩ	nõ' lũ ĩ	mā' lũ ĩ
võ lũ i' stĩ	nõ lũ i' stĩ	mā lũ i' stĩ
võ' lũ ĩt	nõ' lũ ĩt	mā' lũ ĩt
võ lũ' ĩ mũs	nõ lũ' ĩ mũs	mā lũ' ĩ mũs
võ lũ i' stĩa	nõ lũ i' stĩa	mā lũ i' stĩa
võ lũ ĩ' runt	nõ lũ ĩ' runt	mā lũ ĩ' runt

INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

I had been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ' ẽ rãm	nõ lữ' ẽ rãm	mã lữ' ẽ rãm
võ lữ' ẽ rās	nõ lữ' ẽ rās	mã lữ' ẽ rās
võ lữ' ẽ răt	nõ lữ' ẽ răt	mã lữ' ẽ răt
võ lữ ẽ rã' mūs	nõ lữ ẽ rã' mūs	mã lữ ẽ rã' mūs
võ lữ ẽ rã' tīs	nõ lữ ẽ rã' tīs	mã lữ ẽ rã' tīs
võ lữ' ẽ rant	nõ lữ' ẽ rant	mã lữ' ẽ rant

Future Perfect.

I shall have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ' ẽ rō	nõ lữ' ẽ rō	mã lữ' ẽ rō
võ lữ' ẽ rīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rīs	mã lữ' ẽ rīs
võ lữ' ẽ rīt	nõ lữ' ẽ rīt	mã lữ' ẽ rīt
võ lữ ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lữ ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lữ ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lữ ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lữ ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lữ ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lữ' ẽ rint	nõ lữ' ẽ rint	mã lữ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I may be willing, unwilling, more willing

vẽ' lĩm	nõ' lĩm	mã' lĩm
vẽ' līs	nõ' līs	mã' līs
vẽ' līt	nõ' līt	mã' līt
vẽ lĩ' mūs	nõ lĩ' mūs	mã lĩ' mūs
vẽ lĩ' tīs	nõ lĩ' tīs	mã lĩ' tīs
vẽ' lint	nõ' lint	mã' lint

Imperfect.

I should be willing, unwilling, more willing

vel' lẽm	nol' lẽm	mal' lẽm
vel' lēs	nol' lēs	mal' lēs
vel' lết	nol' lết	mal' lết
vel lẽ' mūs	nol lẽ' mūs	mal lẽ' mūs
vel lẽ' tīs	nol lẽ' tīs	mal lẽ' tīs
vel' lent	nol' lent	mal' lent

Perfect.

I may have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lữ' ẽ rĩm	nõ lữ' ẽ rĩm	mã lữ' ẽ rĩm
võ lữ' ẽ rīs	nõ lữ' ẽ rīs	mã lữ' ẽ rīs
võ lữ' ẽ rīt	nõ lữ' ẽ rīt	mã lữ' ẽ rīt
võ lữ ẽ rĩ mūs	nõ lữ ẽ rĩ mūs	mã lữ ẽ rĩ mūs
võ lữ ẽ rĩ tīs	nõ lữ ẽ rĩ tīs	mã lữ ẽ rĩ tīs
võ lữ' ẽ rint	nõ lữ' ẽ rint	mã lữ' ẽ rint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pluperfect.

I should have been willing, unwilling, more willing

võ lū is' sēm	nō lū is' sēm	mā lū is' sēm
võ lū is' sēs	nō lū is' sēs	mā lū is' sēs
võ lū is' sēt	nō lū is' sēt	mā lū is' sēt
võ lū is sē' mūs	nō lū is sē' mūs	mā lū is sē' mūs
võ lū is sē' tīs	nō lū is sē' tīs	mā lū is sē' tīs
võ lū is' sent	nō lū is' sent	mā lū is' sent

IMPERATIVE.

be unwilling, &c.

wanting	Pres. S.	nō' lī	Pl.	nō lī' tē	wanting
	Fut. “	nō lī' tō	“	nō lī tō' tē	
		nō lī' tō		nō lun' tō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	vel' lē, nol' lē, mal' lē, <i>to be willing, &c.</i>
Perf.	võ lū is' sē, nō lū is' sē, mā lū is' sē, <i>to have been willing, &c.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	võ' lens, <i>willing</i>	nō' lens, <i>unwilling</i>	wanting
-------	--------------------------	----------------------------	---------

GERUND.

Gen.	võ len' dī	nō len' dī	wanting
Dat.	võ len' dō		[175. 176.]

406.	Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.
	ěō, irě, <i>to go</i>	īvī	ītūm

INDICATIVE.

ě' ō, *I go*
 īs
 īt
 ī' mūs
 ī' tīs
 ě' unt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

ě' ām, *I may go*
 ě' ās
 ě' āt
 ě' ā' mūs
 ě' ā' tīs
 ě' ant

Imperfect.

ī' bām, *I was going*
 ī' bās
 ī' bāt
 ī bā' mūs
 ī bā' tīs
 ī' bant

ī' rēm, *I should go*
 ī' rēs
 ī' rēt
 ī' rē' mūs
 ī rē' tīs
 ī' rent

INDICATIVE.

I shall go

ī' bō
ī' bīs
ī' bīt
ī' bī mūs
ī' bī tīs
ī' bunt

I went or have gone

ī' vī (ī' ī)
ī' vī' stī (ī' ī' stī)
ī' vīt (ī' īt)
ī' vī mūs (ī' ī mūs)
ī' vī' stīs (ī' ī' stīs)
ī' vē' runt (ī' ē' runt)

I had gone

ī' vē rām (ī' ē rām)
ī' vē rās, (ī' ē rās)
ī' vē rāt, (ī' ē rāt)
ī' vē rā' mūs (ī' ē rā' mūs)
ī' vē rā' tīs (ī' ē rā' tīs)
ī' vē rant (ī' ē rant)

I shall have gone

ī' vē rō (ī' ē rō)
ī' vē rīs (ī' ē rīs)
ī' vē rīt, (ī' ē rīt)
ī' vē rī mūs (ī' ē rī mūs)
ī' vē rī tīs (ī' ē rī tīs)
ī' vē rint (ī' ē rint)

Singular.

Pres. ī, go
Fut. ī' tō, thou shalt go
ī' tō, he shall go

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Future.

I may be about to go

ī' tū' rūš, { sīm
-ā, -ūm { sīs
sīt
ī' tū' rī, { sī' mūs
-ae, -ā { sī' tīs
sint

Perfect.

I may have gone

ī' vē rīm (ī' ē rīm)
ī' vē rīs (ī' ē rīs)
ī' vē rīt (ī' ē rīt)
ī' vē rī mūs (ī' ē rī mūs)
ī' vē rī tīs (ī' ē rī tīs)
ī' vē rint (ī' ē rint)

Pluperfect.

I should have gone

ī' vis' sēm (īs' sēm)
ī' vis' sēs (īs' sēs)
ī' vis' sēt (īs' sēt)
ī' vis' sē' mūs (īs' sē' mūs)
ī' vis' sē' tīs (īs' sē' tīs)
ī' vis' sent (īs' sent)

Future Perfect.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Plural.

ī' tē, go ye
ī' tō' tē, ye shall go
ē un' tō, they shall go

INFINITIVE.

Pres. ī' rē, to go
Perf. ī' vis' sē (īs' sē), to have gone
Fut. ī' tū' rūš, -ā, -ūm es' sē, &c., to be about to go

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. *ī' ens*, Gen. *ě un' tīs*, *going*

Fut. *ī tū' rūš*, *-ǎ*, *-ǔm*, *being about to go*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. *ě un' dī*, *of going*

Dat. *ě un' dō*, *for going*

Acc. *ě un' dūm*, *going*

Abl. *ě un' dō*, *by going*

ī' tūm } to go
ī' tū }

[177. 178]

407. The Compounds of *ěō* are conjugated in the same way. But usually they drop the *v* of the Perfect as: *rēdīī* for *rēdīvī*, &c., and contract the *i i* of the Perfect Infinitive and of the Pluperfect Subjunctive into *ī*, as: *rēdīssē* for *rēdī(v)issē*, &c., e. g.:

ābēō, *-īrē*, *to go away*

praetērēō, *-īrē*, *to pass by*

inēō, *-īrē*, *to go into, begin*

rēdēō, *-īrē*, *to return*

intērēō, *-īrē*, *to perish*

sūbēō, *-īrē*, *to come or go under*

ōbēō, *-īrē*, *to meet*

transēō, *-īrē*, *to pass over*

408. The Compounds *vēnēō*, *I am for sale*, and *pērēō*, *I perish*, serve as **Passives** to *vendō*, *I sell*, and *perdō*, *I ruin*. The Compound *ambīō*, *I go about, seek*, is regular of the Fourth Conjugation.

409. *quēō* *quīrē*, *to be able* *quīvī* *quītūm*

nēquēō *nēquīrē*, *not to be able* *nēquīvī* *nēquītūm*

are conjugated like *īrē*, *to go* (**406**); they are, however, usual only in the Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

410. Pres. Ind. & Pres. Inf.

Perfect.

Supine.

ēdō, *-ērē*, *to eat*

edī

ēsūm

(regular of the 3d conjugation, **373**) has also some contracted forms, similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *essē*, *to be*, but always with *e* long before *s*, viz.:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ēdis *ēs*, *thou eatest*

ēdērēm *ēssēm*, *I should eat*

ēdit *ēst*, *he eats*

ēdērēs *ēssēs*, *thou wouldst eat*

ēdērēt *ēssēt*, *he would eat*

ēditis *ēstis*, *you eat*

ēdērēmūs *ēssēmūs*, *we should eat*

ēdērētis *ēssētis*, *you would eat*

ēdērent *ēssent*, *they would eat*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

Pres. *ēdē* *ēs*, *eat thou*

ēditē *ēstē*, *eat ye*

Fut. *ēditō* *ēstō*, *thou shalt eat*

ēditōtē *ēstōtē*, *ye shall eat*

ēditō *ēstō*, *he shall eat*

INFINITIVE.

ēdērē ēssē, *to eat*

PASSIVE. ēdītūr ēstūr, *is eaten*—ēdērētūr ēssētūr, *should be eaten*

411. Pres. Ind & Pres. Inf. Perfect.
fīō, fīērī, *to become* factūs sūm

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

fī' ō, *I become*

fī' ām, *I may become*

fīs

fī' ās

fīt

fī' āt

fī' mūs

fī ā' mūs

fī' tīs

fī ā' tīs

fī' unt

fī' ant

Imperfect.

fī ē' bām, *I became*

fī' ē rēm, *I should become*

fī ē' bās

fī' ē rēs

fī ē' bāt

fī' ē rēt

fī ē bā' mūs

fī ē rē' mūs

fī ē bā' tīs

fī ē rē' tīs

fī ē' bant

fī' ē rent

Future.

fī' ām, *I shall become*

(wanting)

fī' ēs

fī' ēt

fī ē' mūs

fī ē' tīs

fī' ent

Perfect.

I became or have become

I may have become

factūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, &c.

factūs, -ā, -ūm sūm, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had become

I should have become

factūs, -ā, -ūm ērām, &c.

factūs, -ā, -ūm essēm, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have become

factūs, -ā, -ūm ērō, &c.

(wanting)

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. fī, *become thou*

Plur. fī' tē, *become ye*

INFINITIVE.

Pres.		fī' ē rī, <i>to become</i>	
Perf. Sing.	Nom.	factūs, -ā, -ūm essē	} <i>to have become</i>
"	Acc.	fac' tūm, -ām, -ūm es' sē	
Plur.	Nom.	fac' tī, -ae, -ā es' sē	
"	Acc.	fac' tōs, -ās, -ā es' sē	
Fut.		factūm irī, <i>to be about to become</i>	

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. factūs, -ā, -ūm, become; Gerundive. faciendūs, -ā, -ūm, to be made

412. The verb *fiō* is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future according to the Fourth Conjugation, but takes an *ě* in the Infinitive and Subjunctive Imperfect, viz.: *fiēri*, *fiērēm*. In these forms the *ī* is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel. It is originally an intransitive verb meaning *to become, to happen*, but is also treated as *Passive* to *fācīō*, *I make*. Examples are :

nihil fit, *nothing happens*
 consul fit, *he is made consul*
 dives factus est, *he has become rich*
 nihil factum est, *nothing has happened*

413. The Compounds of făcõ with Prepositions change ă into ȳ, and form the Passive regularly, as:

interfīciō, *I kill* interfīciōr, *I am killed*

But when compounded with words other than prepositions, făcō retains its ă, and uses fiō as its Passive, as:

mansuēfāciō, <i>I tame</i>	mansuēfiō, <i>I become tame</i>
liquēfāciō, <i>I make liquid</i>	liquēfiō, <i>I melt</i>

The accent remains the same as in the simple verbs, thus:
mansuēfā'cīs, *thou tamest.* [179. 180]

Defective Verbs.

414. Defective Verbs want certain parts.

415. *coepī, I have begun* *mēmīnī, I remember* *ōdī, I hate* are in use only in the **Perfect** and the tenses derived from it. *To coepī, I have begun*, *incīpīō, I begin*, serves as a Present. *mēmīnī, I remember*, and *ōdī, I hate*, are present in sense; hence in the Pluperfect and Future Perfect they have the sense of the Imperfect and Future. *nōvī, I know* (Perf. of *noscō, I learn to know*), and *consuevī, I am wont* (Perf. of *consuescō, I accustom myself*), are also present in sense.

INDICATIVE.

Perf.	<i>I have begun</i>	<i>I remember</i>	<i>I hate</i>
	coe' pī	mě' mī nī	ō' dī
	coe pi' stī	mě mī ni' stī	ō di' stī
	coe' pīt	mě' mī nīt	ō' dīt
	coe' pī mūs	mě mī' nī mūs	ō' dī mūs
	coe pi' stīs	mě mī ni' stīs	ō di' stīs
	coe pē' runt	mě mī nē' runt	ō dē' runt
Pluperf.	coe' pē rām, &c.	mě mī' nē rām, &c.	ō' dē rām, &c.
Fut. Perf.	coe' pē rō, &c.	mě mī' nē rō, &c.	ō' dē rō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perf.	coe' pē rīm, &c.	mě mī' nē rīm, &c.	ō' dē rīm, &c.
Pluperf.	coe pis' sēm, &c.	mě mī nis' sēm, &c.	ō dis' sēm, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

(wanting)	mě men' tō	(wanting)
	mě men' tō' tē	

INFINITIVE.

Perf.	coe pis' sē	mě mī nis' sē	ō dis' sē
Fut.	coop tū' rūš es' sē	(wanting)	ō sū' rūš es' sē

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	coop' tūs, -ă, -ŭm	(wanting)	(ō' sūs, -ă, -ŭm)
Fut.	coop tū' rūš, -ă, -ŭm	(wanting)	ō sū' rūš, -ă, -ŭm

PASSIVE. coop' tūs, -ă, -ŭm sŭm, *I have begun* (used with the
Pass. Infinit.)
ō' sūs, -ă, -ŭm sŭm, *I hate*

416. ājō, *I say, say yes, affirm* — inquām, *I say, quoth I* —
fārī, *to speak*

PRES. IND.	ā' jō	PRES. SUBJ.	—	IMP. IND.	ā jē' bām
	ā' īs		ā' jās		ā jē' bās
	ā' ĩt		ā' jāt		ā jē' bāt
	—		—		ā jē bā' mūs
	—		—		ā jē bā' tīs
	ā' junt		ā' jant		ā jē' bant

PERF. IND. — — — — — ā' ĩt — — — — —

PARTICIPLE. ā' jens, *affirmative*

PRES. IND.	in' quām in' quīs in' quīt in' quī mūs in' quī tīs in' quī unt	PRES. SUBJ.	— in' quī ās in' quī āt — in' quī ā' tīs in' quī ant
IMP. IND.	in' quī ē' bām in' quī ē' bās in' quī ē' bāt in' quī ē bā' mūs in' quī ē bā' tīs in' quī ē' bant	FUT. IND.	— in' quī ēs in' quī ēt
PERF. IND.	— in' qui' stī in' quīt — in' qui' stīs	IMPERAT.	in' quē in' quī tē in' quī tō

inquām, say, is used only in direct quotations, as the English *quoth*.

Besides the **Infinitive** fārī, *to speak*, mark:

Pres. fātūr, <i>he speaks</i>	Imperat. fārē, <i>speak thou</i>
Fut. fābōr, <i>I shall speak</i>	Gerund. fandī, <i>of speaking</i>
fābītūr, <i>he will speak</i>	fandō, <i>for speaking</i>
Perf. fātūs sūm, <i>I have spoken, &c.</i>	Supine. fātū, <i>to speak</i>
Participle. (fantīs, fantī) infans, <i>speechless</i>	
Gerundive. fandūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>to be spoken of</i>	

417.	ā' vē	sal' vē	sal vē' bīs, <i>hail thou!</i>	vā' lē	} fare- well
	ā vē' tē	sal vē' tē	<i>hail ye!</i>	vā lē' tē	
	ā' gē	ā' gi tē	<i>come</i>	ā' pā gē, <i>be gone</i>	
	cē' dō	cet' tē	<i>give</i>		

418. To these may be added:

quae' sō, <i>I beseech</i>	fō' rēm, <i>I should be</i>
quae' sū mūs, <i>we beseech</i>	fō' rēs, <i>thou shouldst be</i>
	fō' rēt, <i>he should be</i>
	fō' rent, <i>they should be</i>
	fō' rē, <i>to be about to be</i>

Impersonal Verbs.

419. Many Verbs appear only in the *third person singular* and in the *Infinitive* to express an action or condition without reference to any actor. These are called **Impersonal Verbs**.

420. The following Verbs signifying *personal conditions* are **absolutely impersonal**:

Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.
děcět, <i>it becomes</i>	děcērě	děcūit
dědēcět, <i>it is unbecoming</i>	dědēcērě	dědēcūit
libět, <i>it pleases</i>	libērě	libūit or libītūm est
licět, <i>it is lawful, allowed</i>	licērě	licūit or licītūm est
liquět, <i>it is clear</i>	liquērě	licūit
mīsērět, <i>it excites pity</i>	mīsērērě	{ mīsērītūm } { mīsertūm } est
oportět, <i>it is needful</i>	oportērě	oportūit
pīgět, <i>it grieves</i>	pīgērě	pīgūit or pīgītūm est
paenītět, <i>it causes sorrow</i>	paenītērě	paenītūit
pūdět, <i>it shames</i>	pūdērě	pūdūit or pūdītūm est
taedět, <i>it wearies</i>	taedērě	pertaesūm est

421. The Impersonals děcět, dědēcět, libět, licět can have a subject, but only a neuter pronoun or adjective.

libět, licět and liquět govern the **Dative**, as mīhī licět, *it is lawful for me*; mīhī libět, *it pleases me*. All the other verbs mentioned in **420** govern the **Accusative**, the persons being expressed as follows:

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.	Present.
paenītět mē, <i>I repent</i>	paenītěāt mē, <i>I may repent</i>
paenītět tē	paenītěāt tē
paenītět ěūm	paenītěāt ěūm
paenītět nōs	paenītěāt nōs
paenītět vōs	paenītěāt vōs
paenītět ěōs	paenītěāt ěōs
Imperfect.	Imperfect.
<i>I was repenting</i>	<i>I should repent</i>
paenītěbāt mē, &c.	paenītērět mē, &c.

I shall repent
paenītěbīt mē, &c.

Future.

(wanting)

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

I (have) repented
paenītūt mē, &c.

I may have repented
paenītūērīt mē, &c.

Pluperfect.

I had repented
paenītūērāt mē, &c.

I should have repented
paenītūissēt mē, &c.

Future Perfect.

I shall have repented
paenītūērīt mē, &c.

(wanting)

422. Verbs describing *phenomena of nature* are almost invariably impersonal in virtue of their meaning:

plūit, *it rains*

ningit, *it snows*

grandināt, *it hails*

tōnāt, *it thunders*

fulgūrāt

fulmīnāt

lūcescīt, *it becomes light*

vespēascīt, *evening comes on*

} *it lightens*

423. Verbs *impersonally* used:

accīdīt

fit

ēvēnīt

contingīt

constāt, *it is evident, agreed*

expēdīt, *it is useful*

convēnīt, *it is fit*

dēlectāt, *it delights*

intērest, *it concerns, it matters*

jūvāt, *it delights*

pātēt, *it is plain*

plācēt, *it pleases*

praestāt, *it is better*

rēfert, *it concerns, it matters*

restāt, *it remains*

vācāt, *there is leisure*

The **Passive** of intransitive Verbs is often used *impersonally*, thus:

vīvītūr, *people live*

sic vīvītūr, *such is life*

pugnātūr, *there is fighting*

ītūr, *some one goes*

[183. 184.]

ADVERBS.

424. **Adverbs** are words qualifying verbs and adjectives, as also other adverbs. In respect to form, they are **Primitive**, i. e. such as cannot be traced to simpler forms, or **Derivative**.

425. The majority of **Derivative Adverbs** are formed from adjectives in the following manner: Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** (ending in ūs, and ĕr) form the adverb by changing the genitive ending ī into ē. Examples are:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
lentūs, <i>slow</i>	lentī	lentē, <i>slowly, leisurely</i>
rectūs, <i>right</i>	rectī	rectē, <i>rightly, correctly</i>
libēr, <i>free</i>	libērī	libērē, <i>freely</i>
pulchēr, <i>fine</i>	pulchrī	pulchrē, <i>finely</i>

bōnūs, *good*, makes bēnē, *well*; mālūs, *bad*, makes mālē, *badly*.

426. Adjectives of the **Third Declension** form their adverbs in **tēr**, changing the genitive ending **īs** into **ītēr**; but those in **ns** and **rs** change the genitive ending **īs** into **ēr**:

Nominative.	Genitive.	Adverb.
cělēr, <i>fast</i>	cělērīs	cělērītēr, <i>fast</i>
fēlix, <i>happy</i>	fēlicīs	fēlicītēr, <i>happily</i>
fortīs, <i>brave</i>	fortīs	fortītēr, <i>bravely</i>
libens, <i>willing</i>	libentīs	libentēr, <i>willingly</i>
pātiens, <i>patient</i>	pātientīs	pātientēr, <i>patiently</i>
diligens, <i>careful</i>	diligentīs	diligentēr, <i>carefully</i>
ēlēgans, <i>elegant</i>	ēlēgantīs	ēlēgantēr, <i>elegantly</i>
sollers, <i>skillful</i>	sollertīs	sollertēr, <i>skillfully</i>

[97. 98.]

427. Some Adverbs from Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declensions** have *both* forms, as:

firmūs, <i>strong</i>	firmē, firmītēr, <i>strongly</i>
hūmānūs, <i>human</i>	hūmānē, hūmānītēr, <i>humanly</i>
largūs, <i>large</i>	largē, largītēr, <i>largely</i>
ōpulentūs, <i>rich</i>	ōpulentēr only, <i>richly</i>
viōlentūs, <i>violent</i>	viōlentēr “, <i>violently</i>

428. A few Adverbs differ in meaning from their adjectives, as:

sānē, <i>certainly</i>	from sānūs, <i>sound</i>
valdē, <i>very</i>	from vālīdūs, <i>strong</i>

429. The **Neuter Accusative** of some Adjectives of the 3d declension is used as an adverb, as:

fācilē, <i>easily</i>	impūnē, <i>with impunity</i>
difficilē, <i>with difficulty</i>	rēcens, <i>recently</i>

430. Certain **Cases** of **Adjectives**, **Nouns** and **Pronouns** are often used as Adverbs:

rārō, <i>rarely</i>	continūō, <i>forthwith</i>
tūtō, <i>safely</i>	falsō, <i>falsely</i>
cītō, <i>quickly, soon</i>	fortūītō, <i>by chance</i>
consultō, <i>purposely</i>	grātūītō, <i>gratuitously</i>

sēcrētō, *secretly*
 sērō, *late*
 vērō, *in truth*
 vērē, *truly*
 hāc, *this way*
 spontē, *of one's own accord*
 grātis, *gratis*
 cētērūm, *for the rest*
 nīmīs, nīmīūm, *too much*
 prīmūm, *first*
 tantūm, *only*

mānifestō, *clearly*
 mērītō, *deservedly*
 immērītō, *undeservedly*
 nēcessāriō, *necessarily*
 perpētūō, *perpetually*
 sūbītō, *suddenly*
 certō, *in fact*
 certē, *assuredly*
 crēbrō, *frequently*
 quō, *whither*
 fortē, *by chance*

noctū, *by night*

431. Some **Phrases** or **Clauses** have grown into **Adverbs**, as:

autēā, *before*
 intērēā, *meanwhile*
 proptērēā, *therefore*
 hōdīē (= hōc dīē), *to-day*
 magnōpērē, *particularly*
 obvīām, *towards*

quōdammodō, *in a certain man-*
 quōtannīs, *every year* [ner
 videlicēt = vidērē licēt } *viz.*
 scilicēt = scirē licēt }
 nūdiūs tertīūs = nunc dīēs ter-
 tiūs, *the day before yesterday*

432. **Adverbs** in **īm** are formed from **Supines**, as:

certātīm, *emulously*
 nōmīnātīm, *expressly*
 prīvātīm, *in private*
 stātīm, *steadily*

sensīm, *little by little*
 carptīm, *by pieces*
 cursīm, *speedily*
 passīm, *here and there*

raptīm, *hastily*

433. Similar **Adverbs** (in **ātīm**, **ītīm**) are formed from **Nouns**, as:

grādātīm, *step by step*
 tribūtīm, *by tribes*

vīcissīm, *by turns*
 vīritīm, *man by man*

434. A number of **Adverbs** come from **Nouns** by changing the **Genitive**-ending into **ītūs**:

antīquītūs, *of old*
 divīnītūs, *divinely*
 caelītūs, *from heaven*

rādīcītūs, *by the roots*
 fundītūs, *from the foundation*
 pēnītūs, *thoroughly*

435. In respect to **Meaning**. **Adverbs** may be divided into several classes:

- Adverbs of Place and Motion,**
- Adverbs of Time and Succession,**
- Adverbs of Manner and Quality.**

436. Adverbs of Place are those which answer to the question *where?* **ūbī?** *whither?* **quō?** *whence?* **undě?**

ūbī <i>where?</i>	ālīcūbī, <i>somewhere</i>	obviām, <i>toward</i>
ībī, <i>there</i>	ūbīquě, <i>everywhere</i>	ālībī, <i>elsewhere</i>
hīc, <i>here</i>	quā? <i>by what way?</i>	fōrīs, <i>outside</i>
illīc, <i>there</i>	nusquām, <i>nowhere</i>	prōcūl, <i>far</i>
quō, <i>whither?</i>	hūc, <i>hither</i>	retrō, <i>backward</i>
ěō, <i>thither</i>	illūc, <i>thither</i>	fōrās, <i>out</i>
undě, <i>whence</i>	istinc, <i>thence</i>	undīquě, <i>from all</i>
indě, <i>thence</i>	illinc, <i>then</i>	<i>sides</i>
hinc, <i>hence</i>		děsūpěr, <i>from above</i>

The following are also used as **Prepositions**:

circā, <i>around, about</i>	intrā, <i>inside</i>	pōně, pōst, <i>behind</i>
contrā, <i>opposite</i>	suprā, <i>above</i>	prōpě, <i>near</i>
extrā, <i>outside</i>	infrā, <i>below</i>	cōrām, <i>personally</i>

437. Adverbs of Time are those which answer to the question *when?* **quandō?** *how long?* **quamdīū?** *how often?* **quōtīens?**

quandō? <i>when?</i>	hěrī, <i>yesterday</i>
ālīquandō, <i>once</i>	nūdiūs tertīūs, <i>the day before</i>
interdūm, <i>sometimes</i>	<i>yesterday</i>
intěrīm, <i>meanwhile</i>	postrīdīě, <i>the day after</i>
intěrěā, <i>in the meantime</i>	crās, <i>to-morrow</i>
illīcō, <i>on the spot</i>	pěrendīě, <i>the day after to-mor-</i>
sīmūl, <i>at the same time</i>	unquām, <i>ever</i> [row
jām, <i>already</i>	nunquām, <i>never</i>
tandēm, <i>at last</i>	sempěr, <i>always</i>
dēmūm, <i>not until</i>	plērumquě, <i>commonly</i>
ālīās, <i>at other times</i>	propědīēm, <i>one of these days</i>
nunc, <i>now</i>	posthāc, <i>hereafter</i>
hōdīě, <i>to-day</i>	postěā, <i>afterwards</i>
mōdō, <i>just now</i>	mox, <i>soon</i>
nūpěr, <i>lately</i>	māně, <i>early in the morning</i>
prīdēm, <i>long since</i>	īnterdīū, <i>by day</i>
quondām, <i>once</i>	vespěrī, <i>in the evening</i>
antěā, <i>before</i>	noctū, <i>by night</i>
tunc, <i>at that time</i>	děindě, <i>afterwards</i>
tūm, <i>then</i>	sūbindě, <i>presently</i>
prīdīě, <i>the day before</i>	děinceps, <i>in turn</i>
praetěrěā, <i>besides</i>	ābhīnc, <i>hereafter</i>

antě, *before*, also used as a **Preposition**.

quamdiŭ? *how long?*
 tamdiŭ, *so long*
 āliquamdiŭ, *some time*
 dñdŭm, *a short time ago*
 quōtiens? *how often?*
 tōtiens, *so often*
 āliquōtiens, *some times*
 itērŭm, *a second time*
 rursŭs, *again*
 dēnŭō, *anew*

usquē, *right on*
 pārumpēr } *for a short time*
 paulispēr }
 tantispēr, *so long*
 saepē, *often*
 quōtidīē, *every day*
 quōtannīs, *every year*
 sēmēl, *once*
 bīs, *twice, and all the other*
Numeral Adverbs, 241.

438. Adverbs of manner are those which answer to the question *how?* **quōmōdō?** To this class belong all **Adverbs** derived from **Adjectives**, **425**. Besides these regular Adverbs of manner mark the following:

quōmōdō } *how*
 quēmādmōdŭm }
 ūt, ūtī, *as*
 sīc } *so*
 itā }
 ādēō, *so, to that degree*
 quā, *how, how much*
 tā, *so, so much*
 ālīter } *otherwise*
 sēcŭs }
 sātīs, *enough*
 sātīŭs, *rather*
 valdē } *very*
 admōdŭm }
 quantōpērē, *how greatly*
 tantōpērē, *so greatly*
 nīmīs, nīmīŭm, *too much*
 praecipŭē, *especially*
 frustrā, *in vain*
 tēmērē, *at random*
 vix, *hardly*
 mōdō, *only*
 idēō }
 proptērē } *therefore*
 idcirco }
 itēm, *just so, also*
 porrō, *moreover, then*

fērē, fermē, *almost*
 saltēm, *at least*
 paenē, *nearly*
 fortassē, *perhaps*
 pālām, *publicly*
 rēpentē, *suddenly*
 nempē } *to wit*
 scīlicēt }
 paulātīm, *by degrees*
 pēnītŭs, *wholly*
 plānē, *quite*
 omnīnō, *at all*
 nae } *at any rate*
 ūtīquē }
 sānē, *certainly*
 nīmīrŭm, *to be sure*
 nōn } *no*
 haud }
 haudquāquām } *by no means*
 nēquāquām }
 nē-quīdēm, *not even*
 neutīquām, *not at all*
 immō, *on the contrary*
 cūr } *why*
 quārē }
 prōpē, *near*
 clām, *secretly* } *also prep.*

439. The following Adverbs are called **Correlatives**, because they answer to each other.

Interrogative.	Demonstrative.	Relative.
	I. <i>Of Place:</i>	
ŭbĩ? <i>where?</i>	ĩbĩ, <i>there</i>	ŭbĩ, <i>where</i>
quā? <i>which way?</i>	hāc, <i>this way</i>	quā, <i>which way</i>
undě? <i>whence?</i>	indě, <i>thence</i>	undě, <i>whence</i>
	hinc, <i>hence</i>	
	illinc, <i>thence</i>	
	istinc, <i>thence</i>	
quō? <i>whither?</i>	ěō, <i>thither</i>	quō, <i>whither</i>
	hūc, <i>hither</i>	
	illūc, <i>thither</i>	
	istūc, <i>thither</i>	
	II. <i>Of Time:</i>	
quandō? <i>when?</i>	tūm, <i>then</i>	cūm, <i>when</i>
	tunc, <i>at that time</i>	
quōtĩens? <i>how often?</i>	tōtĩens, <i>so often</i>	quōtĩens, <i>as often as</i>
	III. <i>Of Manner:</i>	
quōmōdō? <i>how?</i>	ĩtā, sīc, <i>so, thus</i>	ūt, ŭtĩ, <i>as</i>
quām? <i>how much?</i>	tām, <i>so much</i>	quām, <i>as</i>

[185. 186.]

Comparison of Adverbs.

440. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. Their comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing ŭs into ě.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
clārě, <i>brightly</i>	clārĩūs, <i>more brightly</i>	clārissimě, <i>most brightly</i>
fācilě, <i>easily</i>	fācilĩūs, <i>more easily</i>	fācillimě, <i>most easily</i>
dĩligentěr, <i>carefully</i>	dĩligentĩūs, <i>more carefully</i>	dĩligentissimě, <i>most carefully</i>
pātientěr, <i>patiently</i>	pātientĩūs, <i>more patiently</i>	pātientissimě, <i>most patiently</i>

441. The following are **Irregular**:

běně, <i>well</i>	měliūs, <i>better</i>	optimě, <i>best</i>
mālě, <i>badly</i>	pějūs, <i>worse</i>	pessimě, <i>worst</i>
multūm, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimūm, <i>most</i>
nōn multūm, <i>little</i>	minūs, <i>less</i>	minimě, <i>least</i>
magnōpěřě, <i>greatly</i>	māgis, <i>more</i>	maximě, <i>most</i>
dīū, <i>for a long time</i>	diūtīūs, <i>longer</i>	diūtissimě, <i>very long</i>
saepě, <i>often</i>	saepīūs, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimě, <i>oftenest</i>
prōpě, <i>near</i>	prōpiūs, <i>nearer</i>	proximě, <i>nearest</i>

442. The following are **Defective**:

—	dētēriūs, <i>worse</i>	dētērimě, <i>worst</i>
—	ōciūs, <i>more quickly</i>	ōcissimě, <i>most quickly</i>
—	pōtiūs, <i>rather</i>	pōtissimūm, <i>most of all</i>
—	priūs, <i>sooner</i>	primūm, primō, <i>first</i>
mēritō, <i>deservedly</i>	—	mēritissimō, <i>most deservedly</i>
nūpěr, <i>lately</i>	—	nūperrimě, <i>very lately</i>
sātīs, <i>enough</i>	sātiūs, <i>better</i>	—
sēcūs, <i>otherwise</i>	sēquiūs, <i>less</i>	—

[97. 98.]

PREPOSITIONS.

443. The Latin **Prepositions** are regularly used with some special case of a noun or pronoun, either the **Accusative** or **Ablative**.

444. The following are used with the **Accusative**:

ād, <i>to, at, toward</i>	ōb, <i>for, on account of</i>
adversūs, <i>adversum, against,</i> <i>toward</i>	pēnēs, <i>in the power of</i>
antě, <i>before</i>	pěr, <i>through, by, during</i>
āpūd, <i>at, with, near</i>	pōně, <i>behind</i>
circā, <i>circum, around</i>	post, <i>after, behind</i>
circitēr, <i>about, near</i>	praetēr, <i>past, beside, except</i>
cīs, cītrā, <i>on this side of</i>	prōpě, <i>near</i>
contrā, <i>against, opposite to</i>	proptēr, <i>on account of, close by</i>
ergā, <i>toward, unto</i>	sēcundūm, <i>after, next to, accord-</i> <i>ing to, along</i>
extrā, <i>without, beyond</i>	sūprā, <i>above</i>
infrā, <i>under, beneath</i>	trans, <i>across, over, beyond</i>
intēr, <i>between, among</i>	ultrā, <i>beyond, on the further</i> <i>side of, past</i>
intrā, <i>within</i>	versūs, <i>toward</i>
juxtā, <i>near, beside</i>	

[91. 92. 237. 238.]

445. The following are used with the **Ablative**:

ā	} <i>from, away from</i>	dē, <i>from, down from, of</i> = <i>about</i>
āb		ē, <i>ex, from, out of</i>
abs		prae, <i>for, before, in comparison with</i>
absquē, <i>without, but for</i>		prō, <i>for, instead of</i>
clām, <i>without the knowledge of</i>		sīnē, <i>without</i>
cōrām, <i>in presence of</i>		tēnūs, <i>as far as, up to</i>
cūm, <i>with</i>		

446. Prepositions with the **Accusative** and **Ablative**, but strictly with a difference of meaning:

īn, *into, in*; **sūb**, *under*; **subtēr**, *beneath*; **sūpēr**, *above*.

īn and **sūb**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion to*, when by the **Ablative** *rest in*, a place.

[93. 94. 95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

CONJUNCTIONS.

447. **Conjunctions** connect words and sentences. According to their use, they are divided into **Co-ordinating** and **Subordinating** Conjunctions.

Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

448. **Co-ordinating** Conjunctions are those that join together sentences of equal order or rank.

449.

Copulative.

ēt	} <i>and</i>	ētīām	} <i>also</i>
-quē		quōquē	
atquē		nēc	} <i>and not</i>
āc		nēquē	
ēt..ēt, <i>both..and</i>		nēquē..nēquē	} <i>neither..nor</i>
cūm..tūm, <i>both..and especially</i>		nēc..nēc	
mōdō..mōdō	} <i>now..now</i>	nēquē..-quē, <i>on the one hand</i>	
nunc..nunc		<i>not..and on the other</i>	
tūm..tūm, <i>then..then</i>		ēt..nēquē, <i>on the one hand..</i>	
tām..quām, <i>both..and</i>		<i>and on the other hand not</i>	
nōn solum..sed etīām	} <i>not only..but also</i>		
nōn mōdō ..sed etīām			
nōn tantūm..sed etīām			

450.

aut
vĕl
-vĕ
sivĕ } *or*

Disjunctive.

aut...aut
vĕl...vĕl } *either...or*
sivĕ...sivĕ, *whether...or*

451.

autĕm
sĕd
vĕrŭm
vĕrō
āt
attāmĕn, *but yet*

Adversative.

atquī, *but for all that*
tāmĕn, *nevertheless*
cĕtĕrŭm, *for the rest*
āt vĕrō, *but in truth*
vĕrŭm ĕnĭm vĕrō, *but in truth*
vĕrumtāmĕn, *but yet*

452.

nām, namquĕ, *for*

Causal.

ĕnĭm, ĕtĕnĭm, *for*

453.

itāquĕ
igītŭr } *therefore*
ergō }
ĕō
idĕō } *on that account*
ideircō }

Illative.

prōindĕ, *accordingly*
proptĕrĕā, *therefore*
quārĕ
quām ōb rĕm
quāproptĕr
quōcircā } *wherefore*

[99. 100. 189. 190. 295-300.]

Subordinating Conjunctions.

454. Subordinating Conjunctions are those which join a subordinate sentence to that on which it depends.

455.

Temporal.

postquām, *after that, after*
ūt, *as*
ŭbī, *when*
sĭmŭlāc
sĭmŭlatquĕ } *as soon as*
ūt prĭmŭm } *the first moment*
cŭm prĭmŭm } *that*

cŭm, *when*
dŭm
dōnĕc } *while, until*
quōāđ, *up to*
quamdĭŭ, *as long as*
antĕquām
prĭusquām } *before that, before*

[257. 258.]

456.

quĩǎ } *because*
quõd }
cũm, *as, since*

Causal.

quõnĩǎm }
quandõ } *since, in as*
quandõquĩdẽm } *much as*
sĩquĩdẽm } [259. 260.]

457.

sĩ, *if*
nĩsĩ, *unless*
sĩ nõn, *if not*
dummõdõ }
dũm } *if only, provided*
mõdõ }

Conditional.

sĩ mõdõ, *if only*
sĩn, *if not, but if*
quodsĩ, *but if*
dummõdõ nẽ }
dũm nẽ } *provided only not*
mõdõ nẽ } [261. 262.]

458.

etsĩ }
tǎmetsĩ } *although*
ẽtĩamsĩ }
quamquǎm }

Concessive.

lĩcẽt }
quamvĩs } *though, suppose,*
cũm } *whereas*
ũt }

459.

ũt, *that, in order that*
nẽ, *that not, lest*
nẽvẽ (nẽũ), *and (that) not*

Final.

quõ (= ut ẽdõ), *in order that*
quõmĩnũs, *that not*

460.

ũt, *so that*

Consecutive.

ũt nõn } *so that not*
quĩn } [253 - 256.]

461.

ũt }
sĩcũt } *as, like as*
vẽlũt }
quǎm }
ũt. . . ĩtǎ }
quẽmadmõdũm. . . ĩtǎ } *as. . . so*

Comparative.

tanquǎm }
quǎsĩ } *as if*
ũt sĩ }
ǎc sĩ }
prõĩndẽ ǎc sĩ }

462.

-nẽ }
nũm } *whether*
utrũm }
ǎn }

Interrogative.

nonnẽ, *whether not*
annõn } *or not*
necnẽ }

[109. 110.]

INTERJECTIONS.

463. An **Interjection** is not in the proper sense a part of speech, since it is not in grammatical construction with a sentence, but is *thrown in* as a direct intimation of feeling or of will.

464. The **Interjections** most commonly used are:

Of painful feeling or suffering:

hēi, hēu, *ah, alas!* ō, *oh!* vae, *alas, woe!*

Of surprise or astonishment:

ēccē, ēn, *behold!* hēm, *oho!* ō, *oh!*

Of calling attention:

hēus, *ho!* ō, *lo!* ōhē, *holloa!* prō, *hollo!*

WORD-FORMATION.

465. There are two modes of forming words, viz.:

Derivation, or the formation of words by derivative endings (suffixes), and **Composition**, or the combination of two words expressing distinct ideas so as to form one word expressing one idea.

466. With reference to *derivation*, words are distinguished as **primitive** or **stem-words**, and **derivative**; with reference to *composition*, as **simple** and **compound**. The derived and compounded words greatly outnumber the so-called stem-words.

DERIVATION.

467. All words which may be grouped into one family so as to associate their meaning are said to have a common ground-form or **Root**. Thus:

ăcũō, -ērē, *to whet*

ăcūtūs, -ă, -ũm, *sharp*

ăcūmēn, -īnīs, *acuteness*

ăcīēs, -ēī, *an edge*

ăcūs, -ūs, *a needle*

ăcēr, -rīs, -rē, *sharp*

ăcerbūs, -ă, -ũm, *sharp*

ăcidūs, -ă, -ũm, *sour*

may all be retraced to the ROOT AC.

468. The **Stem** must be distinguished from the **Root**. The stem is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Inflections*, as: *ăcŭ-ăřě*, to whet, **stem** *ăcŭ*.. Again, the **root** is that part of the word which remains after taking away the *Suffix*; thus the verb-stem *ăcŭ* belongs to the **root** *AC*.

469. As a rule, **Derivatives** are formed by means of **Suffixes**, or significant endings which are added to the stem-word to define or modify its meaning.

Derivation of Verbs.

470. Primitive Verbs. Most verbs of the Third Conjugation, the Irregular Verbs and a few vowel-stems, namely: *dăřě*, *stăřě*, *flêřě*, *năřě*, *nêřě*, *rêřî*, are to be regarded as **Primitives**.

Verbs derived from Verbs.

471. Frequentatives end in *ăřě* or *îtăřě*, and denote a *forcible or repeated action*; they are derived either from Supines in *sŭm* or *tŭm*, as:

<i>dicŭ</i> , I say	<i>dictŭm</i>	<i>dictăřě</i> , to dictate
<i>hăbêŭ</i> , I have	<i>hăbitŭm</i>	<i>hăbităřě</i> , to have frequently
<i>currŭ</i> , I run	<i>cursŭm</i>	<i>cursăřě</i> , to run about

or from the Present of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Conjugations, as:

<i>clămŭ</i> , I cry	<i>clămăřě</i>	<i>clămîtăřě</i> , to cry out aloud
<i>lătêŭ</i> , I am hid	<i>lătêřě</i>	<i>lătîtăřě</i> , to lie hid
<i>ăgŭ</i> , I do	<i>ăgêřě</i>	<i>ăgîtăřě</i> , to drive

472. Inceptives (Inchoatives) denote the *beginning* of an action. They are formed from vowel-stems (1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations) by adding *sc*, and from consonant-stems (3d Conjugation) by adding *isc*. The great majority of Inchoatives in *ascŭ* and *escŭ* come from Substantives and Adjectives, as:

<i>pŭêrascŭ</i> , - <i>êřě</i> , from <i>pŭêr</i> , to attain the age of boyhood
<i>silvescŭ</i> , - <i>êřě</i> , from <i>silvă</i> , to grow wild
<i>mîtescŭ</i> , - <i>êřě</i> , from <i>mîtis</i> , to become mild

473. Desideratives denote *desire* or *tendency*. They are formed by changing *ŭrŭs* of the Future Participle into *ŭrîŭ*, and are of the 4th Conjugation. Only a few are in common use:

<i>êsŭrîŭ</i> , - <i>îřě</i> , to be hungry, from <i>êdŭ</i> , <i>êsŭrŭs</i>
<i>môrîtŭrîŭ</i> , - <i>îřě</i> , to wish to die, from <i>môrîŭr</i> , <i>môrîtŭrŭs</i> .

474. Diminutives denoting a feeble or petty action end in *illārē*, and are of the First Conjugation, as:

cantillārē, to chirp

scribillārē, to scribble.

Verbs derived from Substantives and Adjectives.

475. Verbs from *Substantives* and *Adjectives* are commonly called **Denominatives**. They belong to the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations. Verbs from Substantives signify either *to supply with that which the Substantive denotes*, or *to use or apply it*. Verbs from Adjectives usually signify, either as intransitives, *to be in* or *to pass into the condition denoted by the Adjective*, or else, as transitives, *to reduce something to that state*; for examples see below.

476. Active Verbs of the First Conjugation (transitive):

signū – *signārē*, to mark

vulnū – *vulnērārē*, to wound

curvū – *curvārē*, to bend

nūdū – *nūdārē*, to strip

māculā – *māculārē*, to spot

sānū – *sānārē*, to heal

nōmen – *nōmīnārē*, to name

aptū – *aptārē*, to fit

vox – *vōcārē*, to call

libēr – *libērārē*, to free

477. Active Verbs of the Second Conjugation (intransitive):

flō – *flōrērē*, to bloom

albū – *albērē*, to be white

frons – *frondērē*, to be in leaf

calvū – *calvērē*, to be bald

lux – *lūcērē*, to shine

flāvū – *flāvērē*, to be yellow

478. Active Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation (either intransitive or transitive):

finī – *finīrē*, to finish

mollī – *mollīrē*, to soften

poenā – *pūnīrē*, to punish

stābilī – *stābillīrē*, to establish

vestī – *vestīrē*, to clothe

lēnī – *lēnīrē*, to assuage

sītī – *sītīrē*, to be thirsty

saevū – *saevīrē*, to rage

tussī – *tussīrē*, to cough

sūperbū – *sūperbīrē*, to be proud

servū – *servīrē*, to serve

fērox – *fērocīrē*, to be furious

479. Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation, signifying condition, employment:

dōmīnū – *dōmīnārī*, to be master

auceps – *aucūpārī*, to catch birds

fāmūlū – *fāmūlārī*, to serve

convīvā – *convīvārī*, to banquet

aemūlū – *aemūlārī*, to emulate

cōmēs – *cōmītārī*, to accompany

fūr – *fūrārī*, to steal

āquā – *āquārī*, to fetch water

Derivation of Substantives.

Substantives derived from Substantives.

480. Diminutives generally end in:

ŭlūs, ŭlā, ŭlūm; cŭlūs, cŭlā, cŭlūm,

and regularly take the gender-ending of their **Primitives**:

nīdūs, a nest

rīvūs, a brook

mensā, a table

saxūm, a rock

frātēr, a brother

passēr, a sparrow

arbōr, a tree

mūnūs, a gift

nīdŭlūs, a little nest

rīvŭlūs, a streamlet

mensŭlā, a little table

saxŭlūm, a little rock

frātercŭlūs, a little brother

passercŭlūs, a little sparrow

arbuscŭlā, a small tree

mūnuscŭlūm, a little gift

481. After a vowel, **ōlūs, ōlā, ōlūm** are used. Some nouns form Diminutives in **ellūs, ellā, ellūm**; rarely **illūs, illā, illūm**.

filīūs, a son

glādīūs, a sword

filīā, a daughter

ātrīūm, a hall

libēr, a book

tābŭlā, a table

lāpīs, a stone

signūm, a mark

filīōlūs, a little son

glādīōlūs, a small sword

filīōlā, a little daughter

ātrīōlūm, a small hall

libellūs, a little book

tābellā, a tablet

lāpillūs, a little stone

sīgillūm, a seal

482. The Suffix **ārīūm** designates the place where any thing is kept, as:

cōlumbārīūm, dove-cot

herbārīūm, herbarium

grānārīūm, a granary

pōmārīūm, an orchard

sēmīnārīūm, a seed-plot

from **cōlumbā**

“ **herbā**

“ **grānūm**

“ **pōmūm**

“ **sēmēn**

483. The Suffix **ētūm** used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they grow in abundance:

frūtīcētūm, a copse

myrtētūm, a myrtle grove

quercētūm, a forest of oaks

vīnētūm, a vineyard

from **frūtēx**

“ **myrtūs**

“ **quercūs**

“ **vīnūm**

484. The Suffix **ilē** annexed to names of animals designates their *stall* or *fold*:

bōvilē, <i>stall for cattle</i>	from bōs
ēquilē, <i>a stable for horses</i>	“ ēquūs
ōvilē, <i>a sheepfold</i>	“ ōvis
cāprilē, <i>a stall for goats</i>	“ cāpēr

485. The Suffix **inā** indicates especially the *state, condition, or occupation* of a person; sometimes also the *place* where an occupation is carried on:

mēdicinā, <i>the medical art</i>	from mēdicūs
sūtrīnā, <i>a shoemaker's shop</i>	“ sūtōr
tonstrīnā, <i>a barber's shop</i>	“ tonsōr

486. The Suffix **iūm** added to names of persons forms **Abstracts** signifying *character, rank, &c.*, and **Collectives**, as:

servitīūm, <i>servitude</i>	from servūs
sācerdōtīūm, <i>priesthood</i>	“ sācerdōs
mīnistērīūm, <i>ministry</i>	“ mīnistēr
exsilīūm, <i>banishment</i>	“ exsūl

487. **Patronymics**, denoting *parentage*, generally end in:

idēs, idēs, iādēs, ādēs (**Masculine**); **īs, ēīs, iās** (**Feminine**):

Priāmīdēs, <i>son of Priam</i>	from Priāmūs
Ātrīdēs, <i>son of Atreus</i>	“ Ātreus
Thestīādēs, <i>son of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs
Aenēādēs, <i>son of Aeneas</i>	“ Aenēās
Tantālīs, <i>daughter of Tantalus</i>	“ Tantālūs
Nērēīs, <i>daughter of Nereus</i>	“ Nēreus
Thestīās, <i>daughter of Thestius</i>	“ Thestīūs

Substantives derived from Adjectives.

488. From **Adjectives** are formed various **Abstract Nouns** with the Suffixes:

iā, (ī)tīā, ītīēs, (ī)tās, (ī)tūdō, mōnīā.

grātīā, <i>favor</i>	from grātūs
mālītīā, <i>badness</i>	“ mālūs
segnītīā, segnitīēs, <i>sloth</i>	“ segnīs
cēlērītās, <i>swiftness</i>	“ cēlēr
libertās, <i>liberty</i>	“ libēr
sōlītūdō, <i>solitude</i>	“ sōlūs
ācrīmōnīā, <i>sharpness</i>	“ ācēr

Substantives derived from Verbs.

489. Derivatives in **ör**, **üm** and **ělă** from verb-stems signify, in general, the *act or state expressed by the verb*:

ămör, <i>love</i>	from ămără
tīmör, <i>fear</i>	“ tīmērē
fūrör, <i>rage</i>	“ fūrērē
gaudiüm, <i>joy</i>	“ gaudērē
ödium, <i>hatred</i>	“ ödissē
quērělă, <i>a complaint</i>	“ quērī
cautělă, <i>a caution</i>	“ cävērē
tütělă, <i>protection</i>	“ tütārī

490. Derivatives in **tör** and **sör** from Supines denote the *personal agent*:

mönitör, <i>a monitor</i>	from möněō, -itüm
lectör, <i>a reader</i>	“ lěgō, lectüm
auditör, <i>a hearer</i>	“ audīō, -itüm
messör, <i>a reaper</i>	“ mětō, messüm
cursör, <i>a runner</i>	“ currō, cursüm

491. A few Derivatives in **tör** are formed in imitation of these, from Substantives, as:

viätör, *a traveler*, from viă; jănitör, *a doorkeeper*, from jănüă.

492. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*, but is less common than the masculine:

adjütör, adjütrix, <i>an assistant</i>	from adjüvărē
fautör, fautrix, <i>a promoter</i>	“ fävērē
praeceptör, praeceptrix, <i>a teacher</i>	“ praecipērē
victör, victrix, <i>a conqueror</i>	“ vincērē

493. The Suffixes **tīō**, **tūs** and **sūs** (gen. **ūs**), **tūră** and **sūră** form *abstract nouns* from Supines and denote the *act itself*:

actiō, <i>an action</i>	from ägō - actüm
inventiō, <i>an invention</i>	“ invēniō - inventüm
mōtūs, <i>a motion</i>	“ mōvēō - mōtüm
cursūs, <i>a running</i>	“ currō - cursüm
consensūs, consensīō, <i>agreement</i>	“ consentiō - consensüm
armătūră, <i>equipment</i>	“ armō - armătüm
conjectūră, <i>a conjecture</i>	“ conjiciō - conjectüm
pictūră, <i>a painting</i>	“ pingō - pictüm
censūră, <i>a judging</i>	“ censēō - censüm

Of these only a few become *Concrete nouns*:

accūsātiŏ, <i>a bill of indictment</i>	from accūsō – accūsātŭm
commentātiŏ, <i>a treatise</i>	“ commentŏr, – ātŭm
ŏrātiŏ, <i>a speech</i>	“ ŏrō – ŏrātŭm
possessiŏnēs, <i>an estate</i>	“ possidēō – possessŭm
vēnātiŏ, <i>game</i>	“ vērŏr – vērātŭm

494. Derivatives in **mĕn**, **mentŭm**, **ŭlŭm**, **bŭlŭm**, **cŭlŭm** denote an *instrument* for performing the act expressed by the verb or a *place* for its performance:

lĕvāmĕn, <i>alleviation</i>	from lĕvārĕ
agmĕn, <i>a train</i>	“ āgĕrĕ
flŭmĕn, <i>a river</i>	“ flŭĕrĕ
vŏlŭmĕn, <i>a roll</i>	“ volvĕrĕ
ālimentŭm, <i>nourishment</i>	“ ālĕrĕ
jācŭlŭm, <i>a javelin</i>	“ jācŭlārī
pābŭlŭm, <i>fodder</i>	“ pascĕrĕ
vĕnābŭlŭm, <i>a hunting spear</i>	“ vĕnārī
stābŭlŭm, <i>a stable</i>	“ stārĕ
cŭbicŭlŭm, <i>a bedroom</i>	“ cŭbārĕ

495. Derivatives in **crŭm** and **trŭm** denote *instrument* or *locality*:

fulcrŭm, <i>a prop</i>	from fulcĭrĕ
sĕpulcrŭm, <i>a grave</i>	“ sĕpĕlĭrĕ
ārātrŭm, <i>a plow</i>	“ ārārĕ
claustrŭm, <i>a bar</i>	“ claudĕrĕ
rostrŭm, <i>a beak</i>	“ rŏdĕrĕ
lāvacrŭm, <i>a bath</i>	“ lāvārĕ

Derivation of Adjectives.

Adjectives derived from Verbs.

496. The Suffixes **bundŭs** and **cundŭs** have the general meaning of the *Present Participle*; in many the meaning is somewhat strengthened.

mĭrābundŭs, <i>wondering</i>	from mĭrārī
vĕrĕcundŭs, <i>bashful</i>	“ vĕrĕrī
vĕnĕrābundŭs, <i>revering</i>	“ vĕnĕrārī
fŭrĭbundŭs, <i>raging</i>	“ fŭrĕrĕ
jŭcundŭs, <i>pleasing</i>	“ jŭvārĕ
vāgābundŭs, <i>vagrant</i>	“ vāgārī

497. The Suffix **īdūs** denotes the *quality* or *state* expressed by the verb:

turbīdūs, <i>troubled</i>	from turbārē	vālidūs, <i>strong</i>	from vālērē
cālidūs, <i>warm</i>	“ cālērē	rāpīdūs, <i>rapid</i>	“ rāpērē

498. The Suffixes **īlis** and **bīlis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense:

dōcīlis, <i>docile</i>	from dōcērē	āmābīlis, <i>amiable</i>	from āmārē
fācīlis, <i>easy to do</i>	“ fācērē	mōbīlis, <i>moveable</i>	“ mōvērē

499. The Suffixes **ax** and **ūlūs** denote *inclination*, generally a faulty one:

audax, <i>daring</i>	from audērē	crēdūlūs, <i>credulous</i>	from crēdērē
fallax, <i>fallacious</i>	“ fallērē	garrūlūs, <i>chattering</i>	“ garrīrē

Adjectives derived from Substantives.

FROM COMMON NOUNS.

500. The Suffix **ēūs** expresses the material of which any thing is made:

aurēūs, <i>golden</i>	from aurūm	ferrēūs, <i>iron</i>	from ferrūm
argentēūs, <i>silver</i>	“ argentūm	lignēūs, <i>wooden</i>	“ ligūm

501. The Suffixes: **īūs**, **īcūs**, **īcīūs**, **īlis**, **ālīs**, **ārīs**, **nūs**, **ivūs**, **ensīs**, **ārīūs** denote *belonging to*:

ōrātōrīūs, <i>of an orator</i>	from ōrātōr
bellīcūs, <i>warlike</i>	“ bellūm
lātēricīūs, <i>of brick</i>	“ lātēr
vīrīlis, <i>manly</i>	“ vīr
nāvālīs, <i>naval</i>	“ nāvīs
mīlītārīs, <i>military</i>	“ mīlēs
pāternūs, <i>paternal</i>	“ pātēr
aestīvūs, <i>belonging to summer</i>	“ aestās
fōrensīs, <i>belonging to the forum</i>	“ fōrūm
grēgārīūs, <i>belonging to a flock</i>	“ grex

502. The Suffixes **ōsūs** and **entūs** denote *fulness*:

pēricūlōsūs, <i>full of danger</i>	from pēricūlūm
fructūōsūs, <i>abounding in fruit</i>	“ fructūs
turbūlentūs, <i>full of trouble</i>	“ turbā
somnūlentūs, <i>sleepy</i>	“ somnūs

503. The Suffixes **ātūs**, **ītūs**, **ūtūs** denote *provided with*:

ālātūs, <i>winged</i>	from ālā	barbātūs, <i>bearded</i>	from barbā
pellītūs, <i>clad in skins</i>	“ pellīs	cornūtūs, <i>horned</i>	“ cornū

504. The Suffixes **ānūs** and **īnūs** denote *belonging to* or *coming from*:

urbānūs, <i>belonging to the city</i>	from urbs
montānūs, <i>belonging to the mountain</i>	“ mons
āšīnīnūs, <i>produced by the ass</i>	“ āšīnūs
ēquīnūs, <i>belonging to horses</i>	“ ēquūs

FROM PROPER NAMES:

505. Adjectives with the Suffixes **īānūs**, and more rarely **ānūs** and **īnūs** are formed from names of persons:

Caesāriānūs, <i>belonging to Caesar</i>	from Caesār
Sullānī, <i>Sulla's veterans</i>	“ Sullā
Verrīnūs, <i>belonging to Verres</i>	“ Verrēs

506. The Suffixes **ēūs** and **īcūs** are used with *Greek* names:

Pŷthāgōrēūs, <i>Pythagorean</i>	from Pŷthāgōrās
Sōcrātīcūs, <i>Socratic</i>	“ Sōcrātēs

507. **Patrial** or **Gentile Adjectives** (derived from the names of places or peoples) generally end in **ānūs**, **īnūs**, **ensīs**, **ās** (**Gen. ātīs**), and are also used substantively:

Rōmānūs, <i>a Roman</i>	from Rōmā
Āmērīnūs, <i>of Ameria</i>	“ Āmērīā
Cannensīs, <i>of Cannae</i>	“ Cannae
Arpīnās (-ātīs), <i>of Arpinum</i>	“ Arpīnūm

508. Greek names of places form **Patrials** in **īūs** and **aeūs**; as: Cōrīnthīūs, *of Corinth*, from Cōrīnthūs; Smyrnaeūs, *of Smyrna*, from Smyrnā.

509. From many names of *peoples*, Adjectives are formed in **īcūs** and sometimes **īūs**:

Gallīcūs, <i>Gallic</i>	from Gallūs	Thrācīūs, <i>Thracian</i>	from Thrāx
Persīcūs, <i>Persian</i>	“ Persā	Sŷrīūs, <i>Syrian</i>	“ Sŷrīā

Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

510. From Adjectives are formed **Diminutives** in **ūlūs**, **ōlūs**, **ellūs** and **cūlūs** in the same manner as from nouns. **cūlūs** is sometimes added to Comparatives:

parvūlūs, <i>very small</i>	from parvūs
aurēōlūs, <i>gilded</i>	“ aurēs
pulchellūs, <i>beautiful little</i>	“ pulchēr
paupercūlūs, <i>poorly</i>	“ paupēr
mājuscūlūs, <i>somewhat larger</i>	“ mājōr

Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

511. A few Adjectives are formed from *Adverbs*:

crastinūs, <i>of to-morrow</i>	from crās
dīūtīnūs, <i>lasting</i>	“ dīū
pristīnūs, <i>former</i>	“ priūs
mātūtīnūs, <i>belonging to the morning</i>	“ măně
rěpentīnūs, <i>sudden</i>	“ rěpentě
hesternūs, <i>of yesterday</i>	“ hěrī
hōdīernūs, <i>of to-day</i>	“ hōdīě
dīurnūs, <i>daily</i>	“ dīū
nocturnūs, <i>belonging to night</i>	“ noctū

COMPOSITION.

512. Every **Compound** may be regarded as consisting of two parts. The second part of the composition expresses the *principal idea* (**Principal term**) and the first a **Modification** thereof. The principal term may be a Verb, an Adjective, or a Substantive.

Compound Verbs.

513. The *second part* of a compound verb is *always a Verb*; also the *first part* may be a *Verb*, but this only takes place when the second part is *făciō* or *fīō*:

assuēfăcěrě, <i>to accustom</i>	from assuescěrě & făcěrě
călěfăcěrě, <i>to warm</i>	“ călěrě “ “
commōnēfăcěrě, <i>to remind</i>	“ commōněrě “ “
pătěfăcěrě, <i>to open</i>	“ pătěrě “ “

514. The *first part* of a compound verb may be a **Noun**, as:

ănimadvertěrě, <i>to notice</i>	from ănimūs & vertěrě
mănūmittěrě, <i>to set free</i>	“ mănūs “ mittěrě
ūsucăpěrě, <i>to acquire by use</i>	“ ūsūs “ căpěrě

515. The *first part* of a compound verb may be an **Adverb**:

běnēfăcěrě, <i>to do good</i>	from běně & făcěrě
mălědicěrě, <i>to curse</i>	“ mălě “ dīcěrě
běnēdicěrě, <i>to bless</i>	“ běně “ “
sătisfăcěrě, <i>to satisfy</i>	“ sătis “ făcěrě
sătăgěrě, <i>to have one's hands full</i>	“ sătis “ ăgěrě

516. The *majority* of Compound Verbs are made with separable or inseparable **Prepositions** having the value of an adverb, as:

ā, āb	<i>away</i>	āvōlārē, to fly away
ād	<i>to, towards</i>	adjicērē, to throw to
antē	<i>before</i>	antēpōnērē, to set before
circūm	<i>around</i>	circumdārē, to surround
cōm, cōn	<i>together</i>	collīgērē, to bring together
dē	<i>down</i>	dēcēdērē, to go down
ē, ex	<i>out</i>	expōnērē, to set out
īn	<i>in, into</i>	īnīrē, to go into
intēr	<i>between</i>	intēressē, to be between
ōb	<i>toward, against</i>	obstārē, to stand opposed
pēr	<i>through</i>	perlēgērē, to read through
post	<i>after, inferior</i>	postpōnērē, to put below
prae	<i>before</i>	praevidērē, to foresee
praetēr	<i>past, beyond</i>	praetērīrē, to pass by
prō	<i>before</i>	prōpōnērē, to place before
sūb	<i>under</i>	sūbīrē, to come under
subtēr	<i>underneath, secretly</i>	subtērfūgērē, to flee secretly
amb	<i>around</i>	ambīrē, to go around
dīs	<i>asunder, apart</i>	discēdērē, to depart
rē	<i>back, again</i>	rēficērē, to make again
sē	<i>apart</i>	sēcernērē, to separate

517. In composition with **Prepositions**, the vowels **ā** and **ē** of the simple verb are changed into **ī**, and the diphthong **ae** into **ī**; **au** generally becomes **ō** or **ū**; before two consonants **ā** becomes **ē**, but **e** is retained:

fācērē, to make	confīcērē, to accomplish
ēmērē, to buy	rēdīmērē, to redeem
quaerērē, to seek	conquīrērē, to search out
plaudērē, to clap	explōdērē, to hiss off
claudērē, to shut	conclūdērē, to close up
fācērē, to make	confectūs, accomplished
pellērē, to drive	compellērē, to force

For *Irregularities* compare the **Index of Verbs** (pag. 277) with reference from each to the paragraph where its conjugation is described.

518. **Prepositions** in Composition often undergo a change of their final consonant which is called **Assimilation**. The Rules of this assimilation may be seen in the following:

519.

ā, āb, abs.

a before **m** and **v**, and in **āfūi**: **āmīttērē**, **āvellērē**, **āfūi**, **āfūērām**;

ab before vowels and **j, h, b, d, l, n, r, s**:

ābīrē, **ābundārē**, **abbreviārē**, **abnūērē**, **ābhorrērē**, **abjūrārē**;

as before **p**: **asportārē**, **aspermārī**;

au before **f**: **aufūgērē**, **auferrē**;

abs before **c, t**: **abscēdērē**, **abstīnērē**, **abstrāhērē**.

520.

ād.

ad before vowels, **j, h, b, d, f, m, n, q, v**:

ādāmārē, **adferrē**, **adquīrērē**, **advōlārē**, **adjūvārē**, **adnuntiārē**;

ac before **c** (not so good before **q**): **accīrē**, **adquīrērē** (**acquirērē**);

ag & **ad** before **g**: **aggērērē** & **adgērērē**, **aggrēdī** & **adgrēdī**;

a & **ad** before **gn, sp, sc, st**:

agnoscērē, **adgnoscērē**; **aspīcērē**, **adspīcērē**; **āspirārē**;

ad & **al** before **l**: **adlēvārē**, **allēvārē**; **adlōquī**, **allōquī**;

ap before **p**: **appārērē**, **appellārē**, **appōnērē**, **applicārē**;

ad & **ar** before **r**: **adrīpērē** & **arrīpērē**; **adrīdērē** & **arrīdērē**;

ad & **as** before **s**: **adsignārē** & **assignārē**; **adsērērē** & **assērērē**;

at before **t**: **attendērē**, **attribūērē**, **attingērē**, **attrāhērē**.

521. antē becomes **anti** in: **antistārē**, **antīcīpārē**.

522. circūm may drop its final **m** before **ēō, īrē**:

circūmēō, **circūēō**, commonly **circūītūs**, **circūītō**.

523.

com (= cūm).

com before **b, p, m**: **combībērē**, **compārārē**, **committērē**;

con before **c, d, f, g, j, n, q, s, t, v**:

conclūdērē, **condērē**, **congrēdī**, **conjungērē**, **contīnērē**;

con & **col** before **l**: **conlābī** & **collābī**: **conlōcārē** & **collōcārē**;

cor before **r**: **corrīgērē**, **corrīpērē**, **corrōdērē**, **corrumpērē**;

co before vowels and **h** (except **cōmēdō**):

cōīrē, **cōhaerērē**, **cōgērē** (= **cōāgērē**), **cōēmērē**;

co before **gn**, and in a few words before **n**:

cognoscō, **cōnectō**, **cōnīvēō**, **cōnītōr**, **cōnūbīum**.

524.

ē, ex.

ex before vowels and **h, c, p, q, s, t**:

exīrē, **excīpērē**, **exhībērē**, **existērē**; *Exception* **ēpōtārē**;

e before **b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v**:

ēligērē, **ējicērē**, **ēvādērē**, **ērumpērē**, **ēbībērē**, **ēdicērē**;

ef before **f**: **efferrē**, **efficērē**, **effūgērē**, **effōdērē**;

525.

in.

in before vowels and **h, c, d, f, g** (but not before **gn**), **j, n, q, s, t, v**:
īnīrē, īnhībērē, ingērērē, inqūrērē, inficērē, invēhērē;
in, sometimes **il** before **l**; **in** & **ir** before **r**:
inlīdērē & illīdērē; inrumpērē & irrumpērē, irrūērē;
im before **m, b, p**: **immittērē, imbūērē, impōnērē, impērārē**;
i before **gn**: **ignōrārē, ignoscērē**.

526.

ob.

ob before vowels, **j, h, b, d, l, m, n, r, s, t, v**:
oboedīrē, objicērē, oblīvisci, obrēpērē, obstāre, obtingērē;
oc before **c**; **of** before **f**; **og** before **g**; **op** before **p**:
occurrērē, offerrē, oggērērē, oppōnērē, opprīmērē;
b is dropped in **ōmittērē, ōpērīrē, ostendērē (= obs-tendere)**.

527.

pēr.

per unchanged, except before **l**, as:
pellīgērē = perlēgērē; pellicērē = perlicērē.
 In derivatives of **jūrārē**, the **r** is dropped, as: **pējērārē = perjūrārē**.

528.

sūb.

sub before vowels, **h, j, b, d, l, n, s, t, v**:
sūbīgērē, subjungērē, subtrāhērē, subvertērē, subhastārē;
suc before **c**; **suf** before **f**; **sug** before **g**:
succēdērē, succumbērē, suffōcārē, sufficērē, suggērērē;
sum & sub before **m**; **sup** before **p**; **sur & sub** before **r**:
summittērē & submittērē; supponērē; surrīpērē & subrīpērē;
sus (= subs) occurs in:
suscīpērē, suscītārē, suspendērē, sustīnērē, sustentārē, sustūlī;
su before **sp**: **suspīcērē, suspīrārē, suspectārē**.

529.

trans.

trans before vowels and **b, c, f, g, p, r, t, v**:
transāgērē, transfūgērē, transpōnērē, transgrēdī, transvēhērē;
tran before **s**, and always before **sc**:
transīlīrē, transcrībērē, transcendērē, transērērē, transūērē;
trans and often **tra** before **j, d, l, m, n**:
trādērē, trājīcērē, transmittērē & trāmīttērē, trādūcērē;

Compound Substantives.

530. Compound Substantives are made up:

1. Of a *substantive* and a following *verbal stem*; the vowel connecting the two parts is *ī*, as:

agricolā, <i>a farmer</i>	from	āgēr	&	cōlērē
armīgēr, <i>an armor-bearer</i>	"	armā	"	gērērē
artīfex, <i>an artist</i>	"	ars	"	fācērē
parrīcidā, <i>a parricide</i>	"	pātēr	"	caedērē

2. Of two *substantives* or a *substantive* and an *adjective*:

solstītiūm, <i>solstice</i>	from	sōl	&	stātīō
rūpicāprā, <i>a wild goat</i>	"	rūpēs	"	cāprā
lēgislātōr, <i>a law-giver</i>	"	lex	"	lātōr
jūsūrandūm, <i>an oath</i>	"	jūs	"	jūrandūm
aequīnoctiūm, <i>equinox</i>	"	aequūs	"	nox

3. Of a *substantive* and a preceding *particle*, as:

incūrīā, <i>want of care</i>	from	īn	&	cūrā
prōverbiūm, <i>a proverb</i>	"	prō	"	verbūm
sūperficiēs, <i>a surface</i>	"	sūpēr	"	fāciēs
nēmō, <i>no one</i>	"	nē	"	hōmō

Compound Adjectives.

531. Compound Adjectives are made up:

1. Of two *nouns* (including under this term adjective and substantive), as:

ignīcōlōr, <i>fire-colored</i>	from	ignīs	&	cōlōr
mīserīcors, <i>tender-hearted</i>	"	mīser	"	cōr
magnānīmūs, <i>great-hearted</i>	"	magnūs	"	ānīmūs
ālīpēs, <i>wing-footed</i>	"	ālā	"	pēs

2. Of a *preposition* with a *substantive*. In this combination the prepositions *ā*, *dē*, *ex*, *īn*, *sē* have negative power:

concors, <i>harmonious</i>	from	con	&	cōr
āmēns	"	ā	"	mens
dēmēns	"	dē	"	mens
īners, <i>unskilled</i>	"	īn	"	ars
sēcūrūs, <i>free from care</i>	"	sē	"	cūrā

3. Of a *preposition* with an *adjective*. The prepositions used in this way are: *pēr*, *prae*, *very*; *sūb*, *somewhat*; *īn*, *not*:

perdifficīlīs, <i>very difficult</i>	from	pēr	&	difficīlīs
praepōtēns, <i>very powerful</i>	"	prae	"	pōtēns
subrustīcūs, <i>somewhat clownish</i>	"	sūb	"	rustīcūs
indignūs, <i>unworthy</i>	"	īn	"	dignūs

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

THE SENTENCE.

532. Syntax treats of the *Agreement, Government, and Disposition* of words in sentences. **Sentences** are of three kinds:

Assertions, or Statements, as: *consuetudo est altëra natura; custom is second nature.*

Questions, as: *quid est levius pluma? what is lighter than a feather?*

Commands (demands, wishes), as: *divide et impëra; divide and rule.*

533. The **Assertive Sentence**, as it is called, is the *main type* of all sentences, and the other two will be treated as variations of it.

Subject and Predicate.

534. Every simple sentence is composed of two parts: **Subject and Predicate.**

The **Subject** signifies that about which the assertion is made; the **Predicate** signifies that which is asserted of the Subject. In the sentence:

aurum splendet gold glitters

aurum is the subject; *splendet* the predicate.

535. The **Subject** of the sentence is in the **Nominative Case**, or so considered.

The **Subject** must be either a Noun, or some word or phrase standing for a noun, but it may be contained in the termination of the verb itself:

arbor floret	<i>the tree is blossoming</i>
hic laetatur, ille maeret	<i>this one rejoices, that one is sad</i>
errare humanum est	<i>to err is human</i>
veni, vidi, vici	<i>I came, I saw, I conquered.</i>

536. The **Predicate** must be either a Verb (**Verbal Predicate**), or an Adjective or what stands for an adjective with the verb *essē* (**Adjective Predicate**), or a Substantive with the verb *essē* (**Substantive Predicate**).

The **Verbal Predicate** agrees in **Person** and **Number** with its subject.

The **Adjective Predicate** (Adjective, Adjective Pronoun, Participle) agrees in **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case** with its subject.

The **Substantive Predicate** agrees in **Case** with its subject.

ego valēo, si vos valētis	<i>I am well if you are well</i>
arbor est procēra	<i>the tree is tall</i>
usus est tyrannus	<i>custom is a tyrant.</i>

537. When the predicate is a substantive with different terminations for the gender, such as:

pātrōnūs	pātrōnā	<i>a protector</i>
dōmīnūs	dōmīnā	<i>a master, mistress</i>
victōr	victrix	<i>a conqueror</i>
māgistēr	māgistrā	<i>a teacher</i>
rex	rēgīnā	<i>a king, queen</i>

it agrees with its subject also in number and gender.

usus est optimus magister	<i>experience is the best teacher</i>
vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est	<i>a country life is the teacher of frugality.</i>

538. When referring to a subject of the neuter gender, a predicate substantive with different terminations for the gender is always in the masculine gender.

tempus est vitae magister	<i>time is the teacher of life.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------

539. When the predicate substantive is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the subject.

bona conscientia est tutissima comes hominum	<i>a good conscience is the safest companion of men.</i>
--	--

540. Like *essē*, to be, several other verbs take two Nominatives, one of the Subject and the other of the Predicate. These are:

<i>fiērī</i> , to become, be made	<i>crēārī</i> , to be created
<i>ēvādērē</i> , to turn out	<i>cōrōnārī</i> , to be crowned
<i>exsistērē</i> , to become	<i>dīcī</i> , to be said, called
<i>mānērē</i> , to remain	<i>vōcārī</i> } to be called
<i>vidērī</i> , to seem	<i>appellārī</i> }
<i>appārērē</i> , to appear	<i>pūtārī</i> } to be thought, considered
<i>nascī</i> , to be born	<i>hābērī</i> }
<i>mōrī</i> , to die	<i>crēdī</i> , to be believed
<i>jūdicārī</i> , to be considered	<i>existimārī</i> , to be regarded
<i>rosa pulcherrīmus flos habētur</i>	<i>the rose is considered the most beautiful flower.</i>

541. The Predicate of two or more Subjects is put in the Plural Number.

<i>Romūlus et Remus urbem Romam condidērunt</i>	<i>Romulus and Remus founded the city of Rome.</i>
---	--

542. Two or more singular nouns taken conjointly as a single idea may have a singular verb. Sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest.

<i>ratio et oratio societātis humanae vincūlum est</i>	<i>reason and speech are the bond of human society</i>
<i>naves et praesidiū excessit</i>	<i>the fleet and garrison departed.</i>

543. A collective noun may take a plural verb, as: *pars urbes petiērunt finitimas*, a part made for the neighboring towns.

544. In regard to the Gender of an Adjective Predicate referring to two or more Subjects mark the following:

When the subjects are of the same gender, the adjective predicate is of that gender; as:

<i>mater et soror mortūae sunt</i>	<i>mother and sister are dead.</i>
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

When the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes the masculine gender if the subjects are things with life, and the neuter if they are things without life; as:

<i>pater et mater mortui sunt</i>	<i>father and mother are dead</i>
<i>divitiāe et honōres incerta sunt</i>	<i>riches and honors are uncertain.</i>

When things with life and things without life are combined, the predicate adjective takes either the gender of the things with life, or is neuter, as:

rex regiaeque classis profecti	<i>the king and the king's fleet</i>
sunt	<i>set out</i>
natura inimica sunt libera civitas	<i>a free state and a king are</i>
et rex	<i>natural enemies.</i>

545. When the Subjects are of **Different Persons**, the verb will be in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third.

In Latin the speaker generally mentions himself first.

ego et tu vicissitudinem fortunae	<i>you and I have experienced the</i>
experti sumus	<i>vicissitude of fortune.</i>

[201. 202.]

Attribute and Apposition.

546. The most usual **Attribute** of a Substantive is an **Adjective** (including under this term the Adjective Pronouns and Participles); it agrees with its Substantive in **Number, Gender, and Case**.

	Gender.	Number.
<i>a white flower</i>	flōs albūs	flōrēs albī
<i>a dark cloud</i>	nūbēs ōpācā	nūbēs ōpācae
<i>a golden vessel</i>	vās aurēūm	vāsā aurēā

Case.

Gen. flōrīs albī	<i>of a white flower</i>
“ nūbīs ōpācae	<i>of a dark cloud</i>
“ vāsīs aurēī	<i>of a golden vessel</i>

547. The **Common Attribute** of two or more Substantives of different gender is either repeated or agrees with the nearest.

agri omnes et marīa	} <i>all lands and (all) seas</i>
omnes agri omniāque marīa	
agri et marīa omniā	
omnes (et) agri et marīa	

548. One Substantive placed after another to explain it, is by **Apposition** put in the **same Case**, and, when practicable, in the **same Gender and Number**.

Socrātes, sapientissīmus vir	<i>Socrates, the wisest of men</i>
philosophīa, vitae magistra	<i>philosophy, the teacher of life</i>
Athēnae, omnīum doctrinārum	<i>Athens, the inventor of all</i>
inventrīces	<i>learning.</i>

549. Nouns in **Apposition** are sometimes used to express the *time, condition, etc.* of the action.

Hercūles juvēnis leōnem inter-	<i>Hercules, when a young man,</i>
fēcit	<i>slew a lion.</i>

550. In like manner the **Latin Adjective** is used **appositively** where the English idiom employs an adverb. Adjectives thus used are those expressive of *joy, knowledge and their opposites, of order and position, of time and season, etc., as:*

libens, <i>with pleasure</i>	sōlūs, <i>alone</i>	ultīmūs, <i>last</i>
vōlens, <i>willing(ly)</i>	tōtūs, <i>wholly</i>	mēdiūs, <i>in the middle</i>
nōlens, <i>unwilling(ly)</i>	primūs } <i>first</i>	frēquens, <i>frequent(ly)</i>
invītūs, <i>against one's will</i>	priōr }	sciēns, <i>knowing(ly)</i>

nemo saltat sobriūs, *no one dances when sober;*

Socrātes primus hoc docuit, *Socrates was the first who taught this.*

[203. 204.]

Agreement of Pronouns.

551. A **Relative** or **Demonstrative Pronoun** agrees with its antecedent in **Gender, Number** and **Person**, but the **Case** depends on the clause in which it stands.

animal, quod sanguīnem habet,	<i>an animal which has blood can-</i>
sine corde esse non potest	<i>not be without a heart.</i>

When the **Relative** refers to a sentence, **id quōd** is commonly used.

gloriā invidiā vicisti, id quod	<i>you have overcome envy with</i>
est difficillīmum	<i>glory, which is most difficult.</i>

With antecedents of different **gender** the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives. (See **544.**)

puēri et muliēres, qui capti	<i>the boys and women who had</i>
erant...	<i>been taken prisoners...</i>

With antecedents of different **persons**, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third. (See **545.**)

ego et tu, qui eōdem anno nati	<i>you and I who were born in</i>
sumus...	<i>the same year...</i>

552. Sometimes a **Relative** or **Demonstrative** Pronoun agrees with a word in apposition or with a predicate rather than with its antecedent:

ama justam gloriam, qui est	<i>love real glory which is the</i>
fructus verae virtutis	<i>fruit of true virtue</i>
rerum caput hoc erat, hic fons	<i>this was the head of things, this</i>
	<i>the source.</i>

553. **is**, **he**, and **idēm**, *the same*, are the **Antecedents** of **Relatives**:

(is) qui	{ <i>he who</i> <i>such as</i> <i>such that</i>	idem qui	{ <i>the same who</i> <i>the same as</i>
----------	---	----------	---

but **is**, when Antecedent, is often suppressed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

quem dii diligunt adulescens	<i>(he) whom the gods love dies</i>
moritur	<i>young.</i>

554. An **Adjective** or **Apposition** belonging in sense to the Antecedent, sometimes appears in the relative clause in agreement with the relative.

Themistocles de servis suis	<i>Themistocles sent the most</i>
quem habuit fidelissimum ad	<i>faithful of the slaves which</i>
Xerxem misit	<i>he had to Xerxes</i>
omnes gentes regibus paruērunt,	<i>all nations obeyed kings, a kind</i>
quod genus imperii...	<i>of government which...</i>

555. **qui dicitur**, **qui vocatur**, or **quem dicunt**, **quem vocant** are used in the sense of *so-called*.

vestra, quae dicitur vita, mors est, *your so-called life is death.*

556. The **Relative** often stands at the beginning of a sentence where in English a demonstrative is generally used.

quae cum ita sint *and since these things are so.*

557. The **Relative** is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.

is sum, qui semper fui	<i>I am the same man I always was.</i>
	[205. 206.]

The Order of Words.

558. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the order of words than the English. The following practical rules will be found of value:

In general, put the **Subject** first, and the **Verb** last.

The **Subject** is followed by the words which modify it.

The **Verb** is preceded by the words which depend upon it.

Subject.	Dionysius,
Adjuncts of the Subject.	tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus
Adjuncts of the Predicate.	Corinthy pueros
Predicate.	docēbat.

Dionysius, the tyrant, after he had been driven from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.

559. An **Adjective** or dependent genitive follows the word to which it belongs:

nomen bonum instar unguenti	<i>a good name is like sweet-smel-</i>
fragrantis	<i>ling ointment</i>
metus mortis musica depellitur	<i>fear of death is dispelled by</i>
	<i>music.</i>

560. When a **Substantive** is modified by an adjective and a genitive, the usual order is: **Adjective — Genitive — Substantive.**

magna frumenti vis	<i>plenty of corn.</i>
--------------------	------------------------

561. A **Numeral** adjective or one **Essential** to the meaning of the phrase, goes before its noun:

omnes homines decet	<i>it becomes all men</i>
malum vas non frangitur	<i>a useless pitcher does not get</i>
	<i>broken.</i>

562. A **Demonstrative** pronoun precedes the noun; **Relatives** or **Interrogatives** stand first in their sentence or clause; **Adverbs** are commonly put next to the word they qualify.

haec te victoria perdet	<i>this victory will ruin you</i>
qui sitiunt, silentio bibunt	<i>they who are thirsty drink in</i>
	<i>silence</i>
quis custodiet ipsos custodes?	<i>who is to look after the keepers?</i>
male parta male dilabuntur	<i>evil gotten, evil spent.</i>

563. Prepositions regularly precede their nouns except **tēnūs** and **versūs**; but monosyllabic prepositions are often placed between the adjective and substantive; as: magna cum cura, *with great care*.

564. Conjunctions generally stand at the beginning of their sentence or clause.

The Conjunctions autēm, *but*; enim, *for*; vērō, *but*; igitūr, *then*, follow one or more words in their clause. quīdēm, *indeed*; quōquē, *also*, come after the emphatic word. ně..quīdēm include the emphatic word or words.

565. Words of *kindred* or *opposite* meaning are generally placed near each other for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*:

manus manum lavat

one hand washes the other.

[202.]

Construction of Cases.

GENITIVE CASE.

With Substantives.

566. The **Genitive** is especially the **Case** of a **Substantive** that is added to another Substantive in order to limit or define the meaning.

1. If the qualified noun signifies some action or condition of which, if it were expressed by a verb, the noun in the **Genitive** would be the **Subject**, the case is called the **Subjective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *the love of God* (= *God loves*).

2. If the **Genitive** would be the **Object** of the action expressed by the other noun in verb-form, we call it an **Objective Genitive**, as:

amor Dei, *love of (toward) God* (= *we love God*).

3. The **Genitive** of the **Personal Pronouns** is commonly **Objective**; exceptions are nostrūm and vestrūm which are used as partitive Genitives (see below 6). Mark the following examples:

studīum nostri

sympathy for us

multi nostrūm

many of us

melior pars nostri

the better part of us

major pars nostrūm

the greater part of us.

4. The **Possessive Pronoun** is generally used as the **Subjective Genitive**, as: amicus meus, *a friend of mine*. Additional Attributes are put in the Genitive: tua ipsīus soror, *your own sister*.

5. The **Genitive** is used to denote **Quality**, but only when the quality is modified by an **Adjective**; it is joined to a **Substantive** either *attributively* or *predicatively*, as:

vir maxími consilíi	<i>a man of very great prudence</i>
Terentíus magni ingeníi est	<i>Terence is a man of great talent.</i>

The **Genitive of Quality**, though less common than the **Ablative**, is always used when **Number, Measure, Time** or **Space** are denoted. **Parts** of the **body** are in the **Ablative** only (see 616).

exsilíum decem annōrum	<i>an exile of ten years</i>
Caesar fuit excelsa statūra	<i>Caesar was of tall stature.</i>

6. The **Partitive Genitive** expressing the relation of a **Whole** to its **Parts** is used:

With Substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight, as:
 medimnum tritici *a bushel of wheat;*

With Pronouns, Numerals, Comparatives and Superlatives, as:
 quis vestrum? *which of you?* regum ultímus, *the last of the*
 prior horum, *the former of these* *kings*

With Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns used as **Nouns**, but only in the **Nominative** or **Accusative**. Such are:

tantūm, <i>so much</i>	quantūm, <i>as much</i>	ālīquantūm, <i>somewhat</i>
multūm, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrīmūm, <i>most</i>
paulūm, <i>little</i>	mīnūs, <i>less</i>	mīnīmūm, <i>least</i>
hōc, <i>this</i>	īd, illūd, istūd, <i>that</i>	nīhīl, <i>nothing</i>
quōd, <i>which</i>	quīd, <i>what</i>	īdēm, <i>the same</i>

nihil novi, <i>nothing new</i>	īdem consilíi, <i>the same (of) advice</i>
quid novi? <i>what news?</i>	quid causae? <i>what reason?</i>

The **Genitive** after these **Adjectives** and **Pronouns** may be a **neuter adjective** of the **Second Declension**, but *not* of the **Third**:

aliquid boni, <i>something good</i>	nihil melius, <i>nothing better.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

With the Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent:

sātīs, <i>enough</i>	ūbī, <i>where</i>	hūc } <i>to this degree</i>
pārūm, <i>too little</i>	nusquā, <i>nowhere</i>	ēō }
nīmīs, <i>too much</i>	affātīm, <i>plenty</i>	

nimis lucis, *too much light*; huc arrogantiae, *to this degree of insolence*; ubi terrarum or gentium? *where in the world?*

7. The **Genitive of Specification** has the force of an Apposition, especially with *vox, word; nōmēn, name; verbūm, word*, as:

vox voluptātis, the word "pleasure"

arbor abiētis, a fir-tree; nomen regis, the title of king.

8. The **Genitive** is used with the Ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*; also with *ergō*, *on account of*; *instār*, *like*. *causā*, *grātiā*, *ergō* commonly follow the Genitive. Mark the expressions:

mea, tua, sua causā (not grātiā) for my, thy, his sake,

honoris grātiā, for honor's sake,

instar montis equus, a horse like a mountain.

9. Frequently *aedēs* and *templūm*, *temple*, and sometimes other nouns are omitted, when no mistake can arise:

ad Vestae ventum erat, they had arrived at the temple of Vesta.

[221. 222.]

With Adjectives.

567. Many **Adjectives** are followed by a **Genitive** to complete their meaning. The most common are:

1. **Adjectives** denoting *Desire, Knowledge, Recollection, Participation, Mastery, Fullness* and their **Opposites**:

cūpīdūs, eager, desirous

stūdīōsūs, devoted to

pērītūs, skillful in

insciūs

nesciūs } *ignorant*

ignārūs }

mēmōr, mindful

immēmōr, unmindful

expers, without share in

compōs, capable, master of

impōs, not in possession of

*impōtens, unable or powerless
to control*

plēnūs, full

*particeps, sharing, partaker of,
endowed with*

2. **Participial Adjectives** denoting *permanent qualities* (mostly ending in **ns**), as:

diligens, careful, lover of

āmans, fond of

particeps consilii

compos mentis

cupīdus gloriāe

amans sui virtus

pātīens, capable of enduring

impātīens, that cannot bear

a sharer in the plan

in possession of one's mind

eager for glory

virtue fond of itself.

3. *prōpriūs*, *own*, and *commūnis*, *common*, take the **Genitive** when the idea of *property* or *peculiarity* prevails.

*popūli Romāni est propriā libertas, liberty is characteristic of
the Roman people.*

[223. 224.]

With Verbs.

568. Verbs of *Reminding, Remembering, Forgetting* take the **Genitive**.

admōnērē	} <i>to remind</i>	mēmīnissē	} <i>to remember</i>
commōnērē		rēmīniscī	
commōnēfācērē		rēcōrdārī	
obliviscī, <i>to forget</i>			

Verbs of **Reminding**, with the **Accusative** of the *Person*, are followed by the **Genitive** of the *Person or Thing* to which the attention is called.

te vetēris amicitīae admōnēo, *I remind you of our old friendship.*

Verbs of **Remembering** and **Forgetting** take the **Genitive** if a *Person*, and either the **Genitive** or **Accusative**, if a *Thing* is remembered or forgotten.

mēmīni vivōrum	<i>I am mindful of the living</i>
ānīmus mēmīnit praeteritōrum	<i>the mind remembers the past</i>
oblivisci nihil soles nisi injuriās	<i>you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.</i>

When the **Object** is expressed by a **Neuter Pronoun** or **Adjective**, it is with all these verbs in the **Accusative**, as:

hoc te admōnēo *I warn you of this.*

mēmīnī, *I remember*, when referring to a **contemporary**, always takes the **Accusative**.

mēmīnēram Catōnem *I remembered Cato.*

569. Verbs of *Valuing* are joined with the **Genitive**, when the **Value** is expressed in a **General** or **Indefinite** **Manner**.

Such Verbs are:

aestīmārē, to value	hābērē, to hold
pūtārē, to reckon	pendērē, to weigh
ducērē, to take	fācērē, to make, put
essē, to be (worth)	

The following are **Genitives** of **general value**:

magnī, much	quantī, how much
parvī, little	plūrīmī, maxīmī, most
tantī, so much	mīnīmī, least
plūrīs, more	nīhīlī, naught
mīnōrīs, less	flocclī, a lock of wool, a straw

The Complete Phrases are, then, as follows:

parvī pendērē or aestīmārē, *to esteem lightly*
 magnī essē, *to be of great account*
 plūrīs essē, *to be of more account, to be worth more*
 nīhīlī dūcērē, *to think nothing of*
 magnī aestīmārē or hābērē, *to value highly*
 plūrīs aestīmārē, *to esteem of more value*
 plūrimī aestīmārē, *to value very highly*
 mīnimī faciērē, *to make of very little account*
 floccī faciērē, *to care not a straw for*

divitiāe a me minīmi putantur, *riches are very little prized by me;*
 opēram tuam magnī aestīmo, *your help I value highly.*

570. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, take the Genitive of the Charge.

accūsārē	} <i>to accuse, charge</i>	cōargūērē	} <i>to convict</i>
incūsārē		convincērē	
insimulārē		damnārē	} <i>to condemn, find guilty</i>
argūērē		condemnārē	
arcessērē	} <i>to summon</i>	absolvērē, <i>to acquit</i>	
rēum faciērē			

honestam familiām scelēris argūis *you accuse an honorable family of crime*
 aliquem levitātis convincēre *to convict one of levity.*

The Crime may be expressed by the Ablative with dē:

accūsāre aliquem de vi, de reptundis, de veneficio *to accuse one of assault, of extortion, of poisoning*

or by the Genitive with nōmīnē or crīmīnē, as:

nomīne conjuratiōnis condemnāti sunt *they were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.*

Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting may also take the Ablative of the charge and the punishment, and always take the Ablative of fine; multāre, *to mulct, punish*, is always construed with the Ablative.

damnāre capitis or capite *to condemn to death*
 Camillus decem milibus damnātus est *Camillus was fined 10,000*
 Manlius virtutem filii morte multāvit *Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.*

571. The **Subjective Genitive** may be used as a **Predicate** with the verbs *essē* and *fīrī* to denote that to which something belongs or to which something is peculiar.

In English the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, are commonly supplied. Instead of the **Genitive** of Personal Pronouns the **Neuters** of the Possessives: *mēum, tūum*, etc., are used.

<i>haec domus est Caesāris</i>	<i>this house is Caesar's</i>
<i>temeritas est florentis aetātis,</i>	<i>rashness is the characteristic</i>
<i>prudentiā senectūtis</i>	<i>of youth, prudence of old age</i>
<i>mentīri non est meum</i>	<i>to lie is not my way.</i>

572. With the **Impersonal interest** (and sometimes also with *rēfert*), *it concerns, interests, it is the interest of, it is of importance for*, the **Genitive** is used to denote the **Person** or **Thing** concerned.

The **Genitive** seems to be governed by *causā* understood; hence instead of the **Genitive** of the personal pronoun the **Ablative** singular feminine of the **Possessives** *mēā, tūā, sūā, nostrā, vestrā* is used with these verbs, as: *mēā intērest, I am concerned*; with *omniūm*, however, *nostrūm* and *vestrūm* must be used: *omniūm nostrūm intērest, it concerns all of us*.

rēfert seldom occurs with the **Genitive**, occasionally with *mēā, tūā*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a **Genitive**, as: *nihil rēfert, no matter*; *quid rēfert, what matter?*

The *thing* which is of interest or importance is expressed:

By a **Neuter Pronoun**, as: *hoc vehementer intērest reipublicae, this is of very much importance to the state*;

By an **Infinitive**, as: *intērest omniūm recte facere, to do right is the interest of all*;

By an **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**, as: *multum meā intērest te diligentem esse, it is of great importance to me that you be diligent*;

By an **Interrogative Sentence**, as: *multum mea intērest utrum diligens sis necne, it is of great importance to me whether you are diligent or not*.

573. The *Degree* of importance is expressed by:

Adverbs: magnōpĕrĕ, mǎgĭs, maxĭmĕ, pǎrŭm, etc.

Neuter Adjectives: multŭm, plŭs, plŭrĭmŭm, mĭnŭs, etc.

Genitives of Value: magnĭ, plŭrĭs, parvĭ, tantĭ, etc.

The *Thing with reference* to which one is interested is expressed by the Accusative with **ad**: magnĭ ad honōrem nostrum intĕrest, *it is of great consequence to our honor.* [227. 228.]

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Direct Object.

574. Active Transitive Verbs take the **Accusative** Case.

The **Object** of a transitive verb in the *active* voice becomes **Subject** in the *passive*.

boni cives amant patriām
patriā a bonis civĭbus amātur

good citizens love their country
their country is loved by good
citizens.

575. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are both transitive and intransitive in Latin. Such are:

dōlĕrĕ, *to grieve (for)*
horrĕrĕ, *to shudder (at)*

rĭdĕrĕ, *to laugh (at)*
sĭtĭrĕ, *to thirst (for).*

576. Some intransitive verbs may take an accusative of kindred meaning, as:

vitam jucundam vivĕre
longam viam ire

to live a pleasant life
to go a long way.

577. Many **Intransitive Verbs**, especially verbs of motion, when compounded with prepositions, become transitive, and accordingly take an **Accusative**. The commonest of them are **Compounds** of:

circŭm, pĕr, praetĕr, trans.

circumstārĕ, *to stand around*
permĕārĕ, *to flow through*

praetĕrĭrĕ, *to pass by*
transĭrĕ, *to cross*

triginta tyranni circumstetĕrunt
Socrātem

the 30 tyrants stood around So-
crates. [207. 208.]

Two Accusatives. Same Person.

578. Verbs of **Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing** admit **two Accusatives** of the same person or thing.

appellārē }
nōminārē } *to name or call*
vōcārē }
dicērē }

arbitrārī }
existimārē } *to regard, con-*
hābērē } *sider, think,*
pūtārē } *pronounce*
jūdicārē, *to judge*

fācērē }
efficērē } *to make*
reddērē }

crēārē } *to elect*
ēligērē }

dēsignārē, *to appoint*
sē praeberē } *to show, offer*
sē praestārē } *one's self*

Nerōnem senātus hostem judi-
cāvit

*the senate declared Nero an
enemy.*

Many other verbs, besides their proper Accusative, take a second, denoting **purpose, time, character**. Such are:

dārē, *to give*

rēlinquērē, *to leave*

hābērē, *to have*

sūmērē, *to take*

Athenienses Miltiādem sibi im-
peratōrem sumpsērunt

*the Athenians took Miltiades
as their commander.*

[209. 210.]

Two Accusatives. Person and Thing.

579. dōcērē, ēdōcērē, *to teach*; cēlārē, *to conceal from*, take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

Dionysius Epaminondam musī-
cam docuit
non te celāvi sermōnem

*Dionysius taught Epaminon-
das music*
*I did not conceal from you the
conversation.*

The **Passive** of dōcērē or ēdōcērē with the **Nominative** of the person and the **Accusative** of the thing is *almost never* used, but is replaced by discērē āliquid āb āliquō. Special uses worthy of note are as follows:

ēdōcērē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to inform some one of something*;

cēlārē āliquem dē āliqua rē, *to keep some one ignorant of something*.

580. Verbs signifying *to ask, to demand, to request, to inquire* take **two Accusatives**, one of the person, and the other of the thing.

The commonest of them are:

poscĕrĕ	} <i>to ask,</i> <i>demand</i>	ōrārĕ	} <i>to ask,</i> <i>entreat,</i> <i>beseech</i>	rŏgārĕ	} <i>to ask,</i> <i>interrogārĕ</i> <i>inquire</i>
flāgītārĕ		rŏgārĕ		interrŏgārĕ	
postulārĕ		pĕtĕrĕ		quaerĕrĕ	
posce deos venīam				ask favor of the gods	
me sententiām rogāvīt				he asked me my opinion.	

But to this there are **many Exceptions**. We may also say:

poscĕre *or* flagitāre aliquid ab aliquo.

We always say: postulāre *or* petĕre aliquid ab aliquo;

quaerĕre aliquid ab, ex, *or* de aliquo.

581. The verbs ōrārĕ, rŏgārĕ, *to ask, request*, and rŏgārĕ, interrŏgārĕ, *to ask, inquire*, admit a double accusative only when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or adjective, as: hoc te rogo, *this I inquire of you*. Otherwise we say: interrogāre aliquem de aliquā re, *to ask some one about something*.

582. A noun as second accusative appears with the verb rŏgārĕ only in the official phrase:

sententiām rogāre aliquem, *to ask one for his opinion or vote*.

[211. 212.]

Accusative with Impersonal Verbs.

583. The **Accusative** is used after the **Impersonals**:

fallīt mē	} <i>it escapes my</i> <i>notice, is un-</i> <i>known to me</i>	dĕcĕt, <i>it becomes</i>
fūgīt mē		dĕdĕcĕt, <i>it is unbecoming</i>
praetĕrīt mē		
me fugit ad te scribĕre		<i>I forgot to write to you</i>
oratorē irasci dĕdĕcĕt		<i>it is unbecoming in an orator</i> <i>to be angry.</i>

An **Infinitive** or a **Neuter Pronoun or Adjective**, rarely a **Substantive**, may be used as the **Subject** of dĕcĕt and dĕdĕcĕt:

muliĕrem decet flĕre	<i>it becomes a woman to weep</i>
parvum parva decent	<i>small things become the small</i>
negligentiā nemīnem decet	<i>carelessness becomes no one.</i>

584. Certain **Impersonal Verbs** take the Person who feels in the **Accusative**, and the Exciting Cause in the **Genitive**, or if a verb, in the **Infinitive**; viz.:

<i>mīsrēt, it excites pity</i>	<i>pūdēt, it shames</i>
<i>paenītēt, it causes sorrow</i>	<i>taedēt</i>
<i>pīgēt, it disgusts, grieves</i>	<i>pertaesūm est</i> } <i>it wearies, tires.</i>

The **Persons** are expressed as follows:

<i>mīsrēt mē, I pity</i>	<i>paenītēt mē, I am sorry, repent</i>
<i>mīsrēt tē, thou pitiest</i>	<i>pīgēt mē, I am grieved at, dis-</i>
<i>mīsrēt ēūm, he pities</i>	<i>gusted with</i>
<i>mīsrēt nōs, we pity</i>	<i>pūdēt mē, I am ashamed</i>
<i>mīsrēt vōs, you pity</i>	<i>taedēt mē</i> } <i>I am weary,</i>
<i>mīsrēt ēōs, they pity</i>	<i>mē pertaesūm est</i> } <i>tired</i>
<i>me stultitiæ meae pudet</i>	<i>I am ashamed of my folly</i>
<i>non me paenitet vixisse</i>	<i>I am not sorry for having lived.</i>

Idiomatic Uses.

585. The **Accusative** is used in **Exclamations**, either with or without an Interjection.

O, misēras homīnum mentes! Oh, the wretched minds of men!

586. A **Neuter Adjective** or **Pronoun** is used *adverbially* in the **Accusative**, as: *aliquid, somewhat; nihīl, not at all; multūm, much, etc.* The **Accusative** is also found in a few *adverbial phrases*, as: *maximam partem, mostly; id genus, of this kind; id temporis, at this time:*

<i>nihil movēor</i>	<i>I am not at all moved</i>
<i>forum id temporis omni turba</i>	<i>the forum was at this time free</i>
<i>vacuum erat</i>	<i>from all tumult.</i>

[213. 214.]

DATIVE CASE.

With Verbs.

587. The **Dative** is the Case of the **Indirect Object**, denoting *that for which, to the benefit or loss of which* any thing is or is done. It may be used with transitive and intransitive Verbs; *dativus commōdi et incommōdi: Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage.*

scribo vobis hunc librum, I write this book for you;
tibi seris, tibi metis, you sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

588. A large number of **Transitive Verbs** take along with the **Accusative** a **Dative** as an **Indirect Object**.

The English expresses the **Dative Relation** by *to* or *for*; but where the verb implies removal, the Latin **Dative** frequently answers to the English **Objective** with *from*; *for* = *in defence of* is **prō**.

errantibus viam monstrēmus	let us show the way to the erring
dolor somnum mihi adimit	grief takes away my sleep from
pro patria mori	to die for one's country. [me

589. Many **Intransitive Verbs** signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *favor* or *resist*, *trust* or *distrust*, also *indulge*, *believe*, *persuade*, *envy*, *threaten*, *spare*, and the like, take the **Dative**.

Examples are:

prōdessē, to do good	crēdērē, to believe
nōcērē, to do harm	sūādērē, to advise, recommend
blandīrī, to soothe	mīnārī, immīnērē, to threaten
fāvērē, to favor	bēnēdicērē, to bless
rēsistērē, to offer resistance	nūbērē, to marry
plācērē, to please	persūādērē, to persuade, con-
displicērē, to displease	mēdērī, to heal [vince
impērārē, to command	supplicārē, to beg
ōboedīrē, pārērē, to obey	mālēdicērē, to curse
fīdērē, to trust	parcērē, to spare
diffīdērē, to distrust	stūdērē, to devote one's self
īrascī, to be angry with	obtrectārē, to decry
indulgērē, to give up, to favor	invidērē, to envy

arbor resistit ventis

the tree offers resistance to the winds

probus invidet nemini

the upright man envies no one

non parcam opērae

I will spare no pains.

Among the most notable **Exceptions** are:

jūvārē	} to help, assist	dēfīcērē, to be wanting
adjūvārē		jūbērē, to order
aequārē, to be equal		vētārē, to forbid

which govern the **Accusative**.

590. Passives are properly made only from transitive verbs. Intransitive Verbs which govern a Dative have an Impersonal Passive with the same Case, in the following manner:

Active. bōnūs invīdet nēmīnī, *a good man envies no one*

Passive. mīhī invīdētūr, *I am envied*

tībī invīdētūr, *thou art envied*

ēī invīdētūr, *he is envied*

nōbīs invīdētūr, *we are envied*

vōbīs invīdētūr, *you are envied*

īīs invīdētūr, *they are envied*

ā bōnō invīdētūr nēmīnī, *no one is envied by a good man.*

591. Some Verbs take the Dative or Accusative according to their signification:

cāvērē ālicūī, *to care for some one*

cāvērē āliquēm, *to beware of some one*

cāvērē āb āliquō, *to be on one's guard*

consūlērē ālicūī, *to consult the interest of some one*

consūlērē āliquēm, *to consult some one*

mētūērē āliquēm, *to fear some one*

mētūērē ālicūī, *to fear for some one*

prōvidērē āliquīd, *to foresee something*

prōvidērē ālicūī rēī, *to provide for something*

mōdērārī āliquīd, *to manage something*

mōdērārī ālicūī rēī, *to set bounds to a matter*

tempērārē āliquīd, *to rule something*

tempērārē ālicūī, *to spare some one*

tempērārē āb āliquā rē, *to abstain from something.*

592. The Dative is used with many Verbs compounded with the Prepositions:

ād, antē, cōn, īn, intēr,

ōb, post, prae, sūb, sūpēr.

Examples are:

afferrē, *to bring to, to render*

interjicērē, *to throw in*

praecurrērē, *to precede*

impōnērē, *to place on*

suppōnērē, *to put under*

ādīmērē, *to take away*

intēressē, *to be present*

injicērē, *to strike into*

oppōnērē, *to oppose*

virtus omnībus rebus antēit

onēra quibusdam animalībus im-

ponīmus

virtue goes before all things

we put burdens on some ani-

mals.

[215, 216.]

593. Certain Verbs of *giving* and *putting* may take either a **Dative** with an **Accusative**, or an **Accusative** with an **Ablative**, as:

dono tibi librum, *I present you a book;*
 dono te libro, *I present you with a book;*
 circumdat urbi murum, *he puts a wall around the city;*
 circumdat urbem muro, *he surrounds the city with a wall.*

So with adspargĕrĕ, *to sprinkle*, and indŭĕrĕ, *to put on*.

594. The **Dative** is used with *essĕ* to denote the **Possessor**, the thing possessed being the subject.

When so used it is commonly translated by *to have*; *mihĭ nŏmĕn est*, means *my name is* or *I am called*; the proper name is put either in the **Nominative** or the **Dative**, as:

est mihi domi pater *I have a father at home*
 puĕro nomen est Carŏlus (Carŏlo) *the boy's name is Charles.*

595. Certain Verbs take the **Dative** to denote the **purpose** or **end**, and often at the same time another **Dative** of the person **for whom** or **to whom**. Such are:

essĕ, <i>to be</i>	mittĕrĕ, <i>to send</i>	hăbĕrĕ, <i>to hold</i>
fĭĕrĭ } <i>to become,</i>	accĭpĕrĕ, <i>to receive</i>	vertĕrĕ, <i>to interpret,</i>
} <i>turn out</i>	vĕnĭrĕ, <i>to come</i>	<i>turn (against)</i>
dărĕ, <i>to put</i>	rĕlinquĕrĕ, <i>to leave</i>	dŭcĕrĕ, <i>to count</i>

exemplo est formĭca	<i>the ant is an example</i>
malo est hominĭbus avaritĭa	<i>avarice is an evil to men</i>
dono dare	<i>to give as a present.</i>

596. The **Dative** is used with the **Gerundive** to denote the person on whom a necessity rests, as:

adhibenda est nobis diligentĭa	<i>we must use diligence</i>
nobis omnĭbus moriendum est	<i>we all must die.</i>

597. Verbs in the **Passive Voice** are sometimes followed by a **Dative** of the Agent — instead of *ā*, *āb* with the **Ablative**.

res mihi tota provĭsa est	<i>I have had the whole matter provided for</i>
carmina mihi scripta sunt nulla	<i>I have no poems written.</i>

With Adjectives.

598. Many **Adjectives** and **Adverbs** are followed by the **Dative** denoting that to which the quality is directed.

The most common are those signifying:

useful, fit, pleasant, like,

near, easy, inclined, necessary, and their Opposites.

acceptūs, *acceptable*

amicūs, *friendly*

inimicūs, *unfriendly, opposed*

aptūs, *apt, suitable*

cārūs, *dear*

commūnis, *common*

dulcīs, *agreeable*

fācilīs, *easy*

difficilīs, *difficult*

grātūs, *pleasing*

ingrātūs, *unpleasant*

grāvīs, *burdensome*

jūcundūs, *agreeable*

injūcundūs, *disagreeable*

molestūs, *troublesome*

necessāriūs, *necessary*

odīōsūs, *hateful*

pār, *equal, a match for*

dispār, *unlike*

sālūtārīs, *beneficial*

sīmīlīs, *like*

dissīmīlīs, *unlike*

turpīs, *disgraceful*

ūtīlīs, *useful*

canis similis lupo est

flamma fumo est proxima

a dog is similar to a wolf

fire is next akin to smoke.

Many **Adjectives** which belong to this class become *Substantives* and as such take the **Genitive**; e. g.:

amicūs, *a friend*

inimicūs, *an enemy*

fāmilīārīs, *an (intimate) friend*

aequālīs, *a contemporary*

vicīnūs, *a neighbor*

necessāriūs, *a relation*

599. **Adjectives of Inclination** may take the **Accusative** with *ergā* (when *friendly* feelings are spoken of) or with *in*, *adversūs* (for *friendly and unfriendly* feelings); those signifying *useful, suitable* take oftener the **Accusative** with *ad* to denote the thing *for which*, but regularly the **Dative of Persons**; as: *sevērus in filiūm, severe towards his son; homo ad nullam rem utīlis, a good-for-nothing fellow.*

600. The **Adjectives** *prōpiōr*, *proximūs* (sometimes), and the **Adverbs** *prōpiūs*, *proximē* (commonly) take the **Accusative**. After *sīmīlīs, like*, the **Genitive** is used to denote *exact resemblance*; as: *mei, tui, nostri similis, my, your, our like*, and *vērī sīmīlīs, likely*.

601. A few **Derivative Substantives** take the **Dative** after the analogy of their **Primitives**, as: *justitia est obtemperantia legibus, justice is obedience to the laws.*

Ethical Dative.

602. The **Dative** of a **Personal Pronoun** is sometimes introduced for liveliness of expression: **Ethical Dative.**

fur mihi est, he is a thief in my opinion;
quid tibi vis? what do you want?

[219. 220.]

ABLATIVE CASE.

Ablative of Cause.

603. The **Ablative** is used to express the **Cause**.

The **Ablative of Cause** designates *that by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* something is or is done. Accordingly it is used with passive verbs and such active verbs and adjectives as imply a passive meaning. In the passive construction, however, the *Person* or *Living Agent* by whom any thing is done is put in the **Ablative** with **ā, āb**.

Dei providentiā mundus admini-	<i>the world is governed by God's</i>
strātūr	<i>providence</i>
a Deo mundus administrātūr	<i>the world is governed by God</i>
concordiā res parvae crescunt	<i>by concord small affairs grow</i>
milītes praeliō fessi erant	<i>the soldiers were weary with</i>
	<i>the battle.</i>

604. The **Ablative of Cause** is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with **Verbs** and **Adjectives** like the following:

dōlērē, <i>to grieve</i>	glōriārī, <i>to boast</i>
maerērē, <i>to mourn</i>	lābōrārē, <i>to suffer</i>
gaudērē } <i>to rejoice, delight</i>	sūperbūs, <i>proud</i>
laetārī }	laetūs, <i>pleased</i> — aegēr, <i>ill</i>
dēlectārī, <i>to be delighted</i>	anxiūs, <i>anxious</i>

agricōla gaudet equis, *the husbandman delights in horses;*
 Miltiādes aeger erat vulneribus, *Miltiades was ill from his wounds;*
 aliīs malis labōras, *you suffer with other ills.*

This includes such **Ablatives** as: *jussū, by order; rōgātū, at the request, etc.* On *causā* and *grātīā*, *for the sake of*, see **566. 8.**

Akin to the Causal **Ablative** is the **Ablative** with **verbs** expressing **origin**, as:

humilībus parentībus ortus	<i>sprung from low parents.</i>
----------------------------	---------------------------------

Ablative of Means or Instrument.

605. The **Ablative** is used to denote the **Means** or **Instrument** by which anything is effected.

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est	<i>Pyrrhus was killed by a stone</i>
benevolentiam civium blanditiâ	<i>to win the good will of one's</i>
colligere turpe est	<i>fellow-citizens by flattery is disgraceful.</i>

606. The **Person**, considered as *Means* or *Instrument*, is expressed by **pĕr** with the accusative, or by **ôpĕrâ** with a genitive or possessive:

Caesar certior factus est per	<i>Caesar was informed by (means</i>
legâtos	<i>of) ambassadors.</i>

607. *erûdîrĕ, instîtûĕrĕ, to instruct; as: aliquem artibus erûdîrĕ, to instruct some one in the arts; and affîcĕrĕ, to treat, in such expressions as: aliquem honoribus affîcĕrĕ, to honor some one; aliquem molestia affîcĕrĕ, to trouble some one — are worthy of note.*

Ablative of Limitation.

608. That *in respect to which* or *in accordance with which* anything is or is done is denoted by the **Ablative of Limitation**.

Out of this usage grow a number of **Particular Phrases**:

grandis nâtû, <i>old</i>	mĕâ sententiâ, mĕâ ôpinîonĕ,
mâjôr nâtû, <i>older</i>	<i>according to my opinion</i>
maximûs nâtû, <i>oldest</i>	jûdicîo, testîmoniô âlicujûs,
mînôr nâtû, <i>younger</i>	<i>according to the judgment,</i>
mînîmûs nâtû, <i>youngest</i>	<i>testimony, of some one</i>
reges nomîne magis quam imperîo	<i>kings in name rather than in authority.</i>

[229. 230.]

Ablative of Comparison.

609. The **Ablative of Comparison** may be used with the **Comparative**, instead of *quâm, than*, with the **Nominative** or **Accusative**.

filîus melîor est quam pater	} <i>the son is better than his father</i>
filîus melîor est patre	
scio filîum meliôrem esse patre	<i>I know that the son is better than his father.</i>

cum voluptate aliquem audire	<i>to hear some one with pleasure</i>
aliquid facere magno studio, or magno cum studio	<i>to do something with great zeal</i>
aliquid aequo animo ferre (never aequo cum animo)	<i>to bear something with an even mind.</i>

614. The following **Ablatives** are used without an **Adjective** or **Preposition**:

silentio, <i>in silence</i>	jure, <i>rightfully</i>
ordine, <i>in an orderly manner</i>	injuria, <i>unjustly</i>
casu, <i>by chance</i>	vi, <i>violently</i>
via et ratione, <i>methodically</i>	vi et armis, <i>by force of arms</i>
voluntate, <i>voluntarily</i>	pedibus, <i>a-foot</i>
dolo, fraude, <i>fraudulently</i>	navibus, <i>by ship</i>

Ablative of Quality.

615. The **Ablative** with an **Adjective** or an equivalent is used to denote **Quality**.

616. **External qualities** are put by preference in the *Ablative*; **measure, number, time and space** are put in the *Genitive* only.
 serpens ingenti magnitudine, *a serpent of huge size*;
 Britanni sunt capillo promisso, *the Britons have long hanging locks.*

Ablative of Price.

617. As a rule, **Price** is put in the **Ablative**.

The **Ablative of Price** is used with:

emere	aestimare, <i>to value</i>
redimere	locare
mercari	collocare
vendere, <i>to sell (pass. venire)</i>	conducere, <i>to hire</i>
licere, <i>to be for sale</i>	essere, stare, constare, <i>to cost</i>
patriam auro vendidit	<i>he sold his country for gold</i>
equis mihi talento stetit	<i>the horse cost me a talent.</i>

618. **General Value or Cost** is expressed by the following **Ablatives**:

magno, <i>at a high price</i>	plurimo, <i>at a very high price</i>
parvo, <i>at a low price</i>	minimo, <i>at a very low price</i>
nihil, <i>for nothing</i>	
hortos istos emamus magno, si parvo non possumus	<i>let us buy those gardens at a high price, if we cannot have them cheap.</i>

619. Comparative Value or Cost (see 569) is expressed by these Genitives:

<i>tantī, so much</i>	<i>quantī, how much</i>
<i>tantīdēm, at the same price</i>	<i>plūris, dearer; mīnōris, cheaper</i>
<i>mercatores non tantīdem vendunt quanti emērunt</i>	<i>merchants do not sell at the same price at which they bought</i>
<i>quanti cenas?</i>	<i>what do you pay for your dinner?</i>

Mark the following Particular Phrases:

<i>bēnē ěmērē, to buy cheap</i>	<i>bēnē vendērē, to sell dear</i>
<i>mālē ěmērē, to buy dear</i>	<i>mālē vendērē, to sell at a loss.</i>

[231. 232.]

Ablative of Separation, Plenty, Want.

620. Verbs signifying *to remove, abstain, set free* take the **Ablative** with or without the Prepositions *ex, dē, āb*; but with *Persons* a Preposition, usually *āb*, must be used.

Examples are:

<i>dēpellērē lōcō, to drive from a place</i>
<i>abstīnērē injūriā, to abstain from wrong-doing</i>
<i>abstīnērē mānūs āb āliēnīs, to keep one's hands from other people's property</i>
<i>ējicērē ē civitātē, to drive from the state</i>
<i>ērumpērē ē saxīs, to burst from the rocks</i>
<i>ābhorrērē āb āliquā rē, to differ from something</i>
<i>dētterrērē āb injūriā, to deter from wrong-doing</i>
<i>libērārē ā cūrīs, to release from cares</i>
<i>dēcēdērē (dē) vitā, to depart from life</i>

<i>Hannibal ex Italiā decedēre</i>	<i>Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy</i>
<i>coactus est</i>	
<i>Alexander vix a se manus abstīnūt</i>	<i>Alexander hardly kept his hands from himself</i>
<i>multos fortūna libērat paena, metu nemīnem</i>	<i>fortune rids many of punishment, none of fear</i>
<i>Themistōclem Athenienses e civitatē expulērunt</i>	<i>the Athenians banished Themistocles from the state.</i>

621. Verbs compounded with **sē** and **dīs** take nearly always **ā** or **āb**; such are:

discernērē	} <i>to distinguish</i>	sēcernērē	} <i>to separate</i>
distinguērē		sējungērē	
differrē	} <i>to differ, disagree</i>	sēpārārē	} likewise:
discrepārē		ālīnārē, <i>to alienate</i>	
dissentīrē		ābhorērē, <i>to be averse</i>	}
distārē			
crede mihi, mores distant a carmine nostro		believe me, my conduct far differs from my song.	

Mark the **Particular Phrase**:

interdicērē ālicui āquā ēt ignī, *to forbid one the use of fire and water, to banish one.*

622. Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, of *Filling* and *Depriving* take the **Ablative**.

ābundārē, <i>to abound, have abundance</i>	explērē	} <i>to fill</i>
cārērē, <i>to be or do without, to lack</i>	implērē	
ēgērē, <i>to need</i>	complērē	
vācārē, <i>to be void of, to be free from</i>	rēplērē	} <i>to deprive</i>
sātīārē, <i>to glut</i>	orbārē	
	prīvārē	} <i>to plunder, to strip</i>
	spōliārē	
	nūdārē	
non egēo medicīna	<i>I do not need medicine</i>	
admonitio acerbitate carere debet	<i>an admonition should be without bitterness</i>	
America abundat lacubus et fluminibus	<i>America abounds in lakes and rivers.</i>	

ēgēō and indīgēō are often followed by the **Genitive**.

623. Adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want* regularly take the **Genitive** (see **567.** 1.), but some of them follow the analogy of the corresponding verbs and take the **Ablative**. Among the latter are:

nūdūs, <i>naked</i>	ōnustūs, <i>laden</i>	rēfertūs, <i>stuffed</i>	
orbūs, <i>deprived of</i>	īnānīs	} <i>void</i>	praeditūs, <i>endowed</i>
lībēr, <i>free</i>	vācūūs		
asellus onustus auro	<i>a donkey laden with gold</i>		
urbs nuda praesidiō	<i>a city naked of defense.</i>		

624. *ōpūs est*, *there is need, it is needful, necessary*, takes the **Dative** of the **Person** who is in want, and the **Ablative** of the **Thing** wanted (Impersonal Construction); but the Thing wanted may be the Subject and *ōpūs est (sunt)* the Predicate (Personal Construction).

The **Impersonal Construction** must regularly be used in *Negative Sentences*, and the **Personal** with *Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns*; *ōpūs* is always indeclinable.

<i>opus mihi est libro</i>	<i>I want a book</i>
<i>liber mihi opus est</i>	<i>a book is what I want</i>
<i>opus mihi est libris</i>	<i>I want books</i>
<i>libri mihi opus sunt</i>	<i>books are what I want</i>
<i>nihil opus est duce</i>	<i>there is no need of a leader</i>
<i>multa opus sunt</i>	<i>there is need of many things.</i>

Ablative in Special Constructions.

625. The **Ablative** is used with the **Adjectives**:

<i>dignūs, worthy</i>	<i>frētūs, trusting, relying</i>
<i>indignūs, unworthy</i>	<i>contentūs, satisfied</i>
also with <i>dignōr, I deem worthy.</i>	

ālīenūs, strange, foreign, takes the **Ablative** with or without *ā, āb.*

<i>vir patre dignissīmus</i>	<i>a man most worthy of his father</i>
<i>me dignor honōre</i>	<i>I deem myself worthy of honor</i>
<i>homo sum, humāni nihil a me</i>	<i>I am a man, and nothing relating to man I deem foreign to me.</i>
<i>aliēnum puto</i>	

626. The **Ablative** is used with the **Deponent Verbs**:

<i>ūtōr, -ī, to use</i>	<i>pōtīōr, -īrī, to make one's self master of</i>
<i>frūr, -ī, to enjoy</i>	<i>vescōr, -ī, to feed</i>
<i>fungōr, -ī, to discharge</i>	
and their Compounds :	
<i>ābūtōr, -ī, to abuse</i>	<i>dēfungōr, -ī, to discharge</i>
<i>perfrūr, -ī, to enjoy fully</i>	<i>perfungōr, -ī, to fulfil</i>

utar vestra benignitāte, I will avail myself of your kindness;
vescīmur bestīis, we live upon animals.

pōtīr sometimes takes the **Genitive**; always in the phrase: pōtīrī rērūm, *to get control of affairs*.

627. nītōr, *I stay myself, rest upon*, takes the **Ablative** with or without **īn**.

in Pompēji vita nititur salus ci- *the welfare of the state depends*
vitātis *on Pompey's life.*

628. fīdō and confīdō, *I trust*, take the **Ablative** when the object is a *Thing*, and the **Dative** when the object is a *Person*. diffīdō, *I distrust*, commonly takes the **Dative**. See **589**.

nemo potest fortūnae stabilitāte *no one can trust to the stability*
confidēre *of fortune*
huic legiōni Caesar maxīme con- *this legion Caesar especially*
fidēbat *trusted.* [235. 236.]

Time, Space, Place.

USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions construed with the **Accusative**:

antē, āpūd, ād, adversūs,
circūm, circā, cītrā, cīs,
ergā, contrā, intēr, extrā,
infērā, intrā, juxtā, ōb,
pēnēs, (pōnē), pōst & praetēr,
prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundūm,
suprā, versūs, ultrā, trans.

629. ād, with many varieties of application, generally means *to*. It denotes:

direction toward a *place* or *person*, as: ad urbem, *to town*;
venio ad te, *I come to you*;

nearness with reference to *place*, *time* or *quantity*, as: urbs sita
ad mare, *a town situated near the sea*; ad vespēram, *towards*
evening; ad ducentos, *nearly 200*;

time, answering the question *till when?* as: ad summam senec-
tūtem, *until extreme old age*. It also denotes a fixed time, as: ad
horam, *at the hour*;

aim or *purpose* = *in respect of*, as: res ad bellum utiles,
things useful for war;

accord or *agreement* = *according to*, as: ad voluntātem ali-
cujus loqui, *to speak according to some one's will*.

Particular Phrases are:

ad verbum, *word for word*

nihil ad hanc rem, *nothing in comparison with this thing*

ad unum omnes, *all to the last man.*

630. apūd, at, chiefly used of persons, denotes:

nearness or presence, as: **apud** Caesārem, *at Caesar's house*; **apud** iudices, *before, in presence of, the judges*; **apud** Cannas, *near Cannae*;

situation or estimation among, regard by, as: **apud** vetēres, *among the ancients*; **apud** me nihil valet hominū opinio, *with me the opinion of the multitude has no weight.*

apūd is also used with the *Names of Authors* instead of *in* with the name of their works, as: **apud** Pliniū legimus, *we read in Pliny (in his works).*

631. antē, before, means *preceding in space or time*, as: **ante** portas, *before the gates*; **ante** noctem, *before night.*

632. adversūs, more rarely adversūm, indicates:

direction toward a place or person, and combines the meanings of both *against* and *toward*, as: castra **adversus** urbem ponere, *to pitch the camp over against the city*; **adversus** aliquem pugnare, *to fight with (against) some one*; pietas **adversus** parentes, *duty to(ward) parents.*

633. cīs and cītrā, on this side, are used in reference to place opposed to **trans**, as: **citra** Rubicōnem, *on this side of the Rubicon.*

634. circā and circūm are equivalent to both *around* and *about* with reference to place, as: **circum** haec loca, *hereabout*; homines **circum** se habent, *they have people with them.* *circa* is also used of time, as: **circa** eandem horam, *about the same hour.*

Particular Phrase :

circum amicos mittere, *to send around to one's friends.*

635. circīter, near, about, is used of time only, as: **circīter** meridiem, *about noon*, but is more commonly an Adverb.

636. contrā is equivalent to *against* in both its meanings: *opposite to*, as: **contra** Italiā, *over against Italy*; *in opposition to*, as: **contra** natūrā vivere, *to live against nature.*

637. *ergā*, toward, always implies friendly feelings, as: *divīna bonitas erga homīnes*, *God's goodness toward men*.

638. *extrā* means *without* = *out of*, sometimes *beyond* or *except*, as: *extra urbem*, *without the city*; *extra modum*, *beyond measure*; *extra ducem reliqui rapāces sunt*, *except the leader the rest are robbers*.

639. *intrā* denotes *within* in regard to both *place* and *time*, as: *intra urbem*, *within the city*; *intra decem annos*, *within or during 10 years*. *intra* with an Ordinal Number means *before the expiration of*, as: *intra decimum diem urbem cepit*, *before the expiration of the 10th day he took the city*.

640. *intēr* is equivalent to both *between* and *among*, as: *inter Padum et Alpes*, *between the Po and the Alps*; *Croesus inter reges opulentissimus*, *Croesus, the wealthiest among kings*. It is also used to denote *time*, as: *inter cenam*, *during dinner*; *inter ludendum*, *while playing*. With the personal pronouns, as: *inter nōs*, *vōs*, *ēōs*, *sē*, it is employed in a reciprocal sense, answering to the English *one another*, *each other*, as: *Cicerōnis puēri amant inter se*, *Cicero's boys love one another*.

641. *infrā*, below, means:

lower in place, as: *infra caelum*, *under the sky*;

lower in rank or esteem, as: *eum infra omnes puto*, *I think him beneath all men*;

later in time, as: *Homērus non infra Lycurgum fuit*, *Homer was not later than Lycurgus*;

smaller than, as: *magnitudine infra elephantum*, *in size smaller than an elephant*.

642. *juxtā*, hard by, beside, as: *juxta murum castra posuit*, *he pitched the camp hard by the wall*.

643. *ōb* sometimes means *before*, as: *ob oculos versāri*, *to be before the eyes*. Generally it means *by reason of*, *on account of*, as: *ob eam causam*, *for that reason*.

644. *pēnēs* denotes *in the possession or power of*, as: *summum imperium penes Agamemnōnem erat*, *the chief command was in the hands of Agamemnon*.

645. *pĕr*, *through*, is used in a great variety of applications, as: denoting *place*, *from end to end*, as: *per urbem ire*, *to go through the city*;

denoting *duration* as: *per noctem*, *during the night*;

denoting *the agent or means*, as: *per amicum servātus sum*, *by (means of) my friend I was saved*;

denoting *the manner* in which a thing is done, as: *per littĕras*, *by letter*; *per potestātem*, *by authority*; *per iram*, *from or in anger*; *per vim*, *by violence*;

denoting *the object invoked in forms of swearing*, as: *per deos immortāles jurāre*, *to swear by the immortal gods*.

Particular Phrases:

per me licet, *you may for all I care*; *per aetātem*, *on account of his age*; *per valetudīnem*, *on account of ill health*.

646. *pōst*, *after*, denotes:

behind in place, as: *post equitem sedet atra cura*, *behind the rider sits black care*;

later in time, as: *post tenēbras lux*, *after darkness comes light*.

647. *praetĕr* primarily means *along*, as: *praeter litus*, *along shore*; yet it is more commonly equivalent to *except* or *besides*, as: *praeter te amicum neminem habĕo*, *except you I have no friend*; *praeter auctoritātem etiā vires habet*, *besides authority he has also strength*.

Particular Phrases:

praeter spem, *contrary to hope*; *praeter modum*, *immoderately*; *praeter cetĕros*, *more than the rest*.

648. *prōpĕ*, *near*, *near by*, as: *prope urbem*, *near the city*.

649. *proptĕr* is equivalent to *prōpĕ*, *near*, as: *propter Siciliam insulae Vulcaniae sunt*, *near Sicily are the Vulcanian islands*; but most frequently it is *on account of*, implying *motive or reason*, as: *propter modestiam tuam te diligo*, *I love you on account of your modesty*.

650. *sĕcundūm* (derived from *sĕquī*, *to follow*) means:

along, as: *secundum mare iter facĕre*, *to make a journey along the sea shore*;

next to, *immediately after*, as: *secundum cenam*, *immediately after dinner*;

according to, as: *secundum natūram vivĕre*, *to live according to nature*.

651. *suprā*, *above* (opposite to *infrā*) denotes:
higher in place, as: **supra** lunam, *above the moon*;
more than, superior to, as: **supra** duos menses, *more than two months*; **supra vires**, *above one's strength*.

652. *trans*, *beyond, across, on the other side*, is used with verbs expressing *motion*, as: multae aves ante hiemem **trans** mare migrant, *many birds migrate across the sea before winter*; also with verbs expressing *rest*, as: eo ipso tempore **trans** mare fui, *at that very time I was beyond the sea*.

653. *versūs*, *towards, -ward*, follows an accusative which is usually governed by **ād** or **īn**, as: **ad** Oceānum **versus** proficisci, *to set out towards the ocean*. With *dōmūs* and names of towns *versūs* alone is used, as: Romam **versus**, *Romeward*; domum **versus**, *homeward*.

654. *ultrā* signifies *beyond, on the further side*, as: **ultra** Atlantem montem, *beyond mount Atlas*. It is also used to denote *measure*, as: **ultra** septa transilire, *to go beyond bounds*.

[91. 92. 237. 238.]

Prepositions construed with the Ablative.

ā, āb, abs, cūm, dē,
cōrām, prō, ex, ē,
tēnūs, sīnē, prae.

655. *ā (āb, abs)*, *from*, is used in a variety of applications; it denotes:

the *point of time or space* at which the action, state, etc. are regarded as setting out, or beginning, as: a prima aetate, *from an early age*; ab urbe profectus est, *he departed from the city*;

that *from which anything proceeds or by which anything is produced*, as: calor est a sole, *the heat is from the sun*; ab hoste interfectus est, *he was killed by an enemy*;

that *from which anything is guarded*, with such verbs as *dēfendēre*, *tūērī*, etc., as: urbem defendere ab hostibus, *to defend the city against the enemy*;

that *with reference to which anything is or is done*, equivalent to *with respect to*, as: imparati sumus a militibus, *as to soldiers we are not ready*.

Before vowels and **h**, it is **āb**; before consonants, **ā** or **āb**; **abs** before **tē**, but we say also **ā tē**, *never āb tē*.

656. *absquē*, *without*, is rarely used.

657. *dē* primarily means *down from* or *away from*, as: *de* caelo, *down from* heaven; *de* vita decedēre, *to depart from* life. It is also used in a *partitive* sense in such expressions as: unus *de* plebe, *one of the* people. When denoting *time*, it is *as early as*, *even at*, as: *de* nocte, *even at* night; *de* mense Decembri, *as early as* December. Most commonly, however, it is *concerning*, *about* or *on*, as: *de* gestis Alexandri, *on the exploits of* Alexander; liber *de* amicitia, *a book on* friendship. Sometimes it is equivalent to *secundū*, *according to*, as: *de* consilio meo, *according to* my advice; and frequently it denotes the *manner of action*, as: denūo (de novo), *de* intēgro, *afresh*; *de* improvīso, *unexpectedly*; *de* industria, *purposely*; quāde causa, quibus de causis, *for which reason* or *reasons*.

658. *cōrām*, *in the presence of*, *before*, as: *coram* amico, *in the presence of* a friend. When used as an adverb, *coram* means *personally*, as: *coram* adesse, *to be present in person*.

659. *cū*, *with*, expresses *association* or *accompanying circumstances*, as: *cum* aliquo ire, *to go with* some one; *esse cum* telo, *to go armed*; *configēre cum* hoste, *to fight with* the enemy.

cum with the Ablative of a **Personal Pronoun** is *always* appended to it, as: *tecum* loquitur, *he talks with* you; and commonly also with the **Relative**: quocum, quibuscum (likewise *cum* quo, *cum* quibus); quicum is used for the Ablative of both numbers and all genders.

660. *ē*, *ex*, *out of*, *from*, denotes:

the place, answering to the question *whence?* as: *aliquem ex* regno pellere, *to drive some one out of* the kingdom; *e* longinquo videre, *to see from* afar; *ex* equo pugnare, *to fight on* horseback;

the point of time from which, as: *ex* illo die, *from* that day;

the cause out of which anything proceeds, as: *ex* nihilo nihil fit, *of* nothing nothing comes; *aeger ex* vulnere, *sick from* a wound; *ex* quo, *whence* or *for which reason*.

In a great many cases *ē* (*ex*) has the signification *in accordance with*, as: *ex* ejus sententia, *according to* his opinion; or it denotes the *manner of an action*, as: *ex* animo laudare, *to praise* heartily; *ex* improvīso, *unexpectedly*. In such phrases as: unus *e* multis, *one of* many, it is used in a *partitive* sense.

Mark the Particular Phrases:

ex tua re, *to your advantage*; *e* republica, *for the good of* the state.

Before consonants it is *ē*; before vowels and consonants, *ex*.

661. prō means:

before or in front of, preceding in space, as: pro castris aciem instruere, to array the army for battle before the camp;

for = in defence of, in behalf of, as: pro patria mori, to die for one's country;

for = instead of, as: pro consule, in place of consul;

in accordance with or in proportion to, as: pro portione, in proportion; pro virili parte, to the best of one's ability.

662. prae is *before = in front of*, only in combination with *agere* and *ferre*, as: *prae se ferre, to carry before one's self, i. e. to show.* Most commonly it means: *in comparison with, in contrast with*, as: *prae me beatus es, in comparison with me you are happy*; it is also frequently used in the sense of *on account of*, implying an obstacle, as: *prae lacrimis scribere non possum, I cannot write on account of tears.*

663. tenus, *as far as*, follows its noun, as: *Tauro tenus, as far as Taurus; hoc tenus, hitherto.*

664. sine, *without*, opposed to *cum*, has a negative power, hence we say: *sine ulla spe, without any hope.*

[93. 94. 239. 240.]

Prepositions construed with the **Accusative & Ablative.**

sūb, sūp̄r, subt̄r, in.

665. sūb and **in**, when followed by the **Accusative**, indicate *motion towards*, when by the **Ablative**, *rest in, a place.*

666. sūb with the **Accusative** means:

under, close to, as: sub montem succedere, to come close to the hill;

about, shortly before, of time, as: sub noctem, towards night; sub lucem, near daylight;

667. sūb with the **Ablative** is always:

under, as: sub terra habitare, to live under ground; sub divo, in the open air; sub monte, at the foot of a hill.

668. sūp̄r has the **Ablative** only when used in the sense of *dē*, *concerning*, as: *hac super re, concerning this thing.* With the **Accusative** it is *over, above*, answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *super aliquem sedere, to sit above some one.*

Particular Phrases: *vulnus super vulnus, wound upon wound; super cenam, during dinner.*

669. *subtēr*, *beneath*, takes the **Accusative** answering to the questions *whither?* and *where?* as: *subter togam*, *under the toga*.

670. *īn*, with the **Accusative** denotes *entrance* with regard to *place*, as: *īn urbem venit*, *he came into town*; it also indicates the *object toward* which an action is directed, either with a friendly or hostile intention, as: *amor īn patrem*, *love for one's father*; *oratiō īn Catilinam*, *a speech against Catiline*. With words denoting *time* it is equivalent to *for*, expressing a predetermination of that time, as: *īn diem vivēre*, *to live for the day*; *īn perpetūm*, *forever*; *īn dies*, *from day to day*.

Mark the **Adverbial Expressions**: *hunc īn modum*, *in this way*; *mirum īn modum*, *in a wonderful manner*; *īn vicem*, *alternately or instead of*.

671. *īn* with the **Ablative**, denotes *presence in place, time or circumstances*, as: *īn urbe habito*, *I live in town*; *est mihi īn animo*, *I have it in mind*; *īn scribendo*, *while writing*. When a **Number or Quantity** is indicated, it is equivalent to *among*, as: *numerāri īn bonis civibus*, *to be counted among the good citizens*.

[95. 96. 187. 188. 239. 240.]

TIME.

672. *Time when* is expressed by the **Ablative** of words denoting time, such as:

<i>tempūs</i> , <i>time</i>	<i>saeculūm</i> , <i>a century</i>
<i>aetās</i> , <i>an age</i>	<i>vēr</i> , <i>spring</i>
<i>punctūm tempōris</i> , <i>a moment</i>	<i>aetās</i> , <i>summer</i>
<i>hōrā</i> , <i>an hour</i>	<i>auctumnūs</i> , <i>autumn</i>
<i>dies</i> , <i>a day</i>	<i>hiems</i> , <i>winter</i>
<i>mensis</i> , <i>a month</i>	<i>vespēr</i> , <i>evening</i>
<i>annūs</i> , <i>a year</i>	<i>nox</i> , <i>night</i>
<i>Hannibālīs milītes vere convenēre</i>	<i>Hannibal's soldiers assembled in spring.</i>

673. Words not explicitly expressing time, such as: *bellūm*, *pāx*, *pūritiā*, usually take *īn* with the **Ablative**, but they are without *īn*, if accompanied by an **Adjective or Genitive**. So we say:

<i>īn bello</i> , <i>in war times</i>	<i>bello Persico</i> , <i>at the time of the Persian war</i>
<i>īn pace</i> , <i>in time of peace</i>	
<i>īn pueritiā</i> , <i>in boyhood</i>	<i>prima pueritiā</i> , <i>in early boyhood</i>
<i>īn adulescentiā</i> , <i>in youth</i>	<i>bello Antiōchi</i> , <i>during the war with Antiochus</i>
<i>īn senectūte</i> , <i>in old age</i>	

Particular Phrases.

initio	} <i>at the beginning</i>	temporibus	} <i>in the times of</i>
principio		aetate	
adventu, <i>at the arrival</i>		ludis, <i>during the games</i>	
discessu, <i>at the departure</i>		bis die, <i>twice a day</i>	
in tempore, <i>at the right time</i>		hora nona, <i>at 9 o'clock</i>	

674. Time how long is put in the Accusative.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit, *Appius was blind many years.*

The Preposition **p̄r** may be used to denote *from beginning to end*, as: est mecum per totum diem, *he is with me the livelong day.*

Time how long since may be expressed by an ordinal number in the Accusative, as:

Mithridātes jam annum tertium	<i>Mithridates has reigned going</i>
et vicesimum regnat	<i>on 23 years.</i>

Time how long before the present moment is expressed by **ābhinc** with the Accusative, as: abhinc sex menses, *six months ago.*

675. Distance of time how long before or after is expressed by the Ablative with antē or pōst following:

paucis diēbus ante, *a few days before*
 paucis diēbus post, *a few days afterward.*

The **Accusative** can also be employed, but then the *Preposition* precedes, thus: ante, post paucos dies.

Either Case and the **cardinal** as well as the **ordinal** numbers may be used, when the *Preposition* is placed **between** the Numeral and the Substantive. Hence the English phrase *three years after* may be expressed as follows:

tribus annis post	post tres annos
tertio anno post	post tertium annum
tribus post annis	tres post annos
tertio post anno	tertium post annum

quām and a verb may be added to **antē** and **pōst** in all the forms above specified, as:

tribus annis postquam venērat	} <i>three years after he</i>
post tres annos quam venērat	
tertio anno postquam venērat	
post annum tertium quam venērat	

had come.

PLACE.

682. To express relations of **Place**, *Prepositions* are necessary, viz.:

in with the **Ablative** to denote the place *where*, as: in urbe, *in town*;

in or **ad** with the **Accusative** to denote the place *to which*, as: in Eurōpam, *to Europe*; ad urbem, *to town*;

ex with the **Ablative** to denote the place *from which*, as: ex Britanniā, *from Great Britain*.

683. But the **Prepositions** are not used with the names of **Towns** and **small Islands**.

In answer to the question *whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the **Accusative Case**, as: Romam venit, *he came to Rome*.

In answer to the question *whence?* the names of towns and small islands are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Roma cessit, *he retired from Rome*.

In answer to the question *where?* the names of towns and small islands, if of the first or second declension and in the singular, are put in the **Genitive Case**, as: Romae mansit, *he remained at Rome*. But if the names are of the plural number or belong to the third declension, they are put in the **Ablative Case**, as: Babylōne mortuus est, *he died at Babylon*. (For the place *where* there was formerly a special Case, the **Locative**, ending in **ī** which is preserved in Carthaginī, *at Carthage*; rurī, *in the country*, etc.)

684. **urbs** or **oppidum** *without an Attribute* is placed **before** the proper name, and the preposition **in** or **ex** is **always** employed, as:

in urbem Cirtam

to the city of Cirta

ex oppido Gergovia

from the town of Gergovia

in urbe Roma

in the city of Rome.

685. **urbs** or **oppidum** *with an Attribute* is placed **after** the proper name, **commonly** with **in** or **ex**. But in answer to the question *where?* the **Ablative** may be used with or without **in**, even though the proper name be in the **Genitive**.

Aulide, ex oppido Boeotiae

from Aulis, a town of Boeotia

Thalam, in oppidum magnum

to Thala, a great town

Albae, (in) urbe munita

at Alba, a fortified city.

686. The following words are used like names of towns, without a preposition:

rūs, *into the country* dōmŭm, *home*

rūrě, *from the country* dōmō, *from home* hūmō, *from the ground*

rūrī, *in the country* dōmī, *at home* hūmī, *on the ground*

dōmī mīlītīaequē, *at home and in the field*

bellī dōmīquē, *in war and in peace*

fōrās, *to the doors*; fōrīs, *out-of-doors, abroad*.

A Genitive or Possessive may be used with **dōmūs** in this construction, but when it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally employed, as:

domi meae, *at my house*; domum Caesaris, *to Caesar's house*;

in domum vetērem e nova, *to the old house from the new.*

687. The **Ablative** is used without a preposition to denote the place *where*:

With nouns when qualified by the Adjective **tōtūs**, or **cunctūs**:

Demosthēnes disertissimus tota *Demosthenes was the most elo-*

Graecia fuit *quent man in all Greece;*

With **lōcō**; **lōcīs** when qualified by Adjectives:

hoc loco, multis locis *in this place, in many places.*

688. The *way by which* is put in the Ablative:

terra marique	<i>by sea and by land</i>
---------------	---------------------------

Appia via profectus est *he set out by the Appian way.*

689. The **Preposition In** is generally joined with the **Ablative** after *Verbs of Placing*, as:

pōnĕrĕ, *to place* stătŭrĕrĕ } *to set* dĕmĕrgĕrĕ, *to plunge*

collocăre, *to put* constituere } *to set* imprimere, *to stamp*

consīdĕrĕ, *to settle* dĕfigĕrĕ, *to plant* inscribĕrĕ, *to write upon*

Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit *Plato has put reason in the head*

Lucretia cultrum in corde defi- *Lucretia plants a knife in her*
git *heart.*

git

heart.

690. Again, after *Verbs of Assembling* and kindred significations the **Preposition** **in** is followed by the **Accusative**. Such are:

advēnirē, *to arrive* congregārī, *to assemble* cōgērē, *to assemble*

convănire, *to meet* nuntiare, *to bring word*

conjurāti in curiā convenērunt *the conspirators met in the
senate house.*

[191, 192, 241, 242,]

Special Uses of Substantives.

691. In place of the **Abstract** expressions: in pueritiā, in adulescentiā, in senectūte, in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the Latin employs the **Concretes** pūēr, ādūlescens, sēnex; ab infante, a parvūlo, *from childhood*.

692. When official titles are used to indicate time, the **concrete** nouns consūl, praetōr, &c., are used instead of consūlātūs, praetūrā, &c. as: L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō consulībus, *in the consulship of L. Piso and A. Gabinius*.

693. Again, **Abstract** nouns are sometimes used instead of **Concretes**, as: nobilitās for nobiles, *noblemen*
 posteritas “ postēri, *descendants*
 vicinītas “ vicīni, *neighbors*.

694. In Latin, **Abstract** nouns when referring to several objects or denoting repetition at different times admit of *plural use*, as:
 adventūs imperatōrum, *the arrival of the generals*;
 interītūs exercitūum, *the destruction of the armies*.

695. Some **Abstract** nouns take such a modified sense as to admit of *plural use*, as: fortitudīnes, *gallant actions*; irae, *quarrels*.

696. Symmetrical parts of the human body are usually in the plural, as: cervīces, *the neck*; pectōra, *the breast*; also words denoting phenomena of nature, as: nives, *snow*; grandīnēs, *hail*; pluvīae, *rain*.

697. Other **Plural** expressions to be noted are:

ligna, (<i>logs of</i>) <i>wood</i>	carnes, <i>pieces of meat</i>
aera, <i>articles of bronze</i>	vina, <i>kinds of wine</i> .

698. The Singular, in a **Collective** sense, is sometimes used for the plural, as:

pedes, <i>infantry</i>	faba, <i>beans</i>
miles, <i>the soldiery</i>	porcus, <i>pork</i>
eques, <i>cavalry</i>	gallīna, <i>fowl</i>
hostis, <i>the enemy</i>	vestis, <i>clothing</i> .

699. A **Proper** name may be applied to two or more members of the same family, or to persons of the same character, and so becomes strictly **common** as: Horatīi, *the Horatii*; Nerōnes, *Neros* (*tyrants*).

700. The Substantive **nēmō** is often used with other Substantives so as to become equivalent to the Adjective **nullūs**, as: nēmō civis, *no citizen*. It wants the **genitive** and **ablative**. The oblique cases of **nīhīl** are supplied by the respective cases of **nulla res**.

Special Uses of Adjectives.

701. Adjectives are often used as **Substantives**. In the **Plural** masculine adjectives denote *persons*, neuter adjectives *things*.

paupĕres, <i>the poor</i>	humāna, <i>human affairs</i>
divĭtes, <i>the rich</i>	omnĭa, <i>all things</i>
omnes, <i>all men</i>	vĕra, <i>truth</i> .

702. The **Neuter Singular** may denote either a *single object* or a *quality*, as:

honestum, <i>an honorable act</i>	bonum, <i>a good</i>
malum, <i>an evil</i>	pulchrum, <i>beauty</i>

703. Adjectives are often used in Latin where the English has the *Possessive*, or a *noun with a preposition*, as:

domus regiā, *a king's palace*
 pugna Cannensis, *the fight at Cannae*
 iter campestre, *a journey across country*
 aliĕna domus, *another man's house*
 Miltiādes Atheniensis, *Miltiades of Athens*.

704. The *first part, last part, middle part* of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the Adjectives primŭs, mĕdiŭs, ūltimŭs, infimŭs, imŭs, summŭs, rĕliquŭs, as: mediā nox, *the middle of the night*; summa arbor, *the top of the tree*; suprĕmi montes, *the summits of the mountains*.

705. The **Comparative** sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the **Superlative** of *very*, as: brevior, *rather short*; audācior, *too bold*; amīcŭs carissimŭs, *a very dear friend*; Cato, homo doctissimŭs, *Cato, a very learned man*.

706. The force of the **Comparative** is increased by multō, *much, far*; āliquantō, *some more, considerably*; ĕtĭām, *even, still*, as: multo melior, *much better*; etĭam doctior, *still more learned*.

707. The **Superlative** is strengthened by longē, *by far*; multō, *much*; vĕl, *even*; unus omnĭum, *one above all others*; quām, quantŭs potuit, *as...as possible*; as: multo maxĭma pars, *by far the largest part*; quam maxĭmae copĭae, *forces as large as possible*; sophistes vel maxĭmus, *the very greatest sophist*.

708. When two qualities of the *same object* are compared, both adjectives (or adverbs) are in the **Comparative**, as: est doctior quam sapientior, *he is more learned than wise*. Where mĕgis quām is used, both Adjectives are in the **Positive**: amīcus tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens, *your friend is eloquent rather than wise*.

709. The **Comparative** is to be used in reference to *only two* objects; the **Superlative** when comparing *more than two* objects, as: *uter fratrum natu major est? Which of the two brothers is the older? Quaeritur ex duobus uter dignior, ex pluribus quis dignissimus; the question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more, which is the worthiest.*

Special Uses of Pronouns.

710. **Personal** and **Possessive** Pronouns of the *First* and *Second* Persons are not expressed in Latin except for distinction or emphasis, as: *amamus parentes, we love our parents.*

711. As a rule, the **Reflexive Pronoun** *sui, sibi, se* and its Possessive *suus*, are used when reference is made to the **Subject** of the sentence; as: *Caesar se ad suos recepit, Caesar betook himself to his men.*

The **Possessive** *suus* may also be used with reference to any noun in the same sentence on which *emphasis* is thrown, as:

Socrātem cives sui interfecē-	<i>Socrates was put to death by</i>
runt	<i>his own fellow-citizens</i>
puer columbam cepit in nido	<i>the boy caught the dove in its</i>
suo	<i>nest.</i>

On the other hand, the **Determinatives** *ejus, eorum, earum* are used as **Possessives** of the third person, when *no* emphasis appears, or when reference is made to a noun in another sentence, as:

Deum agnoscis ex operibus ejus	<i>you recognize God by his works</i>
multi cives interfecti, eorum-	<i>many citizens were slain, and</i>
que bona publicāta sunt	<i>their property confiscated.</i>

To express reciprocal action **inter se** is regularly used, as: *amant inter se, they love one another.*

712. *hic*, *this*, refers to that which is nearer the speaker (**Demonstrative** of the **First Person**); *iste*, *that (of yours)* to the person addressed (**Demonstrative** of the **Second Person**); *ille*, *that*, to that which is remote (**Demonstrative** of the **Third Person**).

hic very frequently means *that which is about to be mentioned*, as: *his condicionibus, on the following terms;*

iste especially refers to *one's opponent* (in court, etc.) and frequently implies contempt, as: *Mars alter, ut isti volunt, a second Mars, as those fellows say;*

ille is often used of *that which is well known, notorious*, as: *praeclārum illud Solōnis, that famous saying of Solon.* It is also used in the sense of *the following.*

713. Often **hīc** and **illē** are to be rendered *the latter* and *the former* (**hīc**, the one last mentioned, the *nearer*; **illē**, the one mentioned earlier, the *remoter*), thus:

melius de quibusdam acerbi ini-	<i>bitter enemies deserve better of</i>
mīci merentur quam ii amīci,	<i>some people than those</i>
qui suāves videntur; illi	<i>friends who seem obliging;</i>
saepe verum dicunt, hi nun-	<i>the former often tell the</i>
quam.	<i>truth, the latter never.</i>

But the order is often reversed so that **hīc** refers to the object first mentioned (usually the more important), and **illē** to the one mentioned last.

melior est certa pax quam spe-	<i>better is certain peace than</i>
rāta victoriā; haec in tua,	<i>hoped-for victory; the former</i>
illa in deōrum manu est	<i>is in your hands, the latter</i>
	<i>in the hands of the gods.</i>

714. **ī**s, *that*, is either the regular Antecedent of the Relative or refers to an Object just mentioned.

is sapiens est, qui se ad casus	<i>he is a wise man who accom-</i>
accommodet omnes	<i>modates himself to all circum-</i>
	<i>stances</i>
mihi obviā venit tuus puer; is	<i>I was met by your servant; he</i>
mihi littēras abs te reddidit	<i>delivered to me a letter from</i>
	<i>you.</i>

715. When a quality is ascribed with emphasis to an object already named, **ī**s with a copulative or adversative particle is used, thus:

ēt īs, atquē īs, isquē,	<i>and he too, and that too</i>
nēquē īs, ēt īs nōn,	<i>and he not, and that not</i>
unam rem explicābo, eamque	<i>one point I shall explain, and</i>
maximam	<i>that, too, a very important one.</i>

716. No demonstrative pronoun is employed in Latin in phrases where *that* or *those* in English is used in place of a noun which would have to be repeated:

Terentiī fabūlis plus delector	<i>I find more delight in the plays</i>
quam Plauti	<i>of Terence than in those of</i>
	<i>Plautus.</i>

717. **īdēm** is often equivalent to an adverb or an adverbial phrase (*also, likewise, yet, at the same time*), as: Quidquid honestum est, idem est utile. *Whatever is honorable is at the same time useful.*

718. *ipsē, self*, is used with any of the other pronouns or a noun for the sake of emphasis, often expressed in English by *just, mere, very*, as: *triginta erant dies ipsi, it was just 30 days.*

When added to any reflexive pronoun, *ipsē* agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the sentence, according as either is emphatic; as:

piger ipse sibi obstat, the lazy man stands in his own way;
nosce te ipsum! know thyself!

719. For the agreement of **Relatives** see **551**, foll.

The **Antecedent**, and the Adjective or Apposition of the antecedent are often incorporated into the Relative clause, as: *in quem primum egressi sunt locum Troja vocatur; the first place they landed at was called Troy.*

720. The **Interrogative** *quīs?* is used substantively and adjectively; *qui?* mostly adjectively. Thus we say: *quis rex? which king?* inquiring for the *individual*; but *qui homo? what man?* inquiring for the *character*.

721. The **Indefinite Pronouns** are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant, without indicating *what one*.

722. *āliquīs* means *some one or other*, as: *fecit hoc aliquis tui simīlis, some one or other like you did this*; *aliquid consuetudīni dandum est, something must be allowed to custom.*

723. *quīs* (fainter than *aliquis*) is used chiefly after *Relatives* and the following *Conjunctions*:

sī, if; nīsī, if not; nē, lest; nūm, whether; cūm, when.

āliquīs after *sī* and the rest is *emphatic*.

ne quid nimis! nothing in excess!

ne qua significatio fiat, that no sign may be made.

724. *quisquām* (subst.) and *ullūs* (adj.) mean *any one at all*, and are chiefly used in negative, interrogative, and conditional sentences, also after *sīnē*, without; *vix, scarcely, quām, than*.

<i>neque ex castris Catilinae quis-</i>	<i>nor had any one departed from</i>
<i>quam omnium discesserat</i>	<i>the camp of Catiline</i>
<i>legāti sine ulla spe pacis domum</i>	<i>the ambassadors returned home</i>
<i>rediērunt</i>	<i>without any hope of peace</i>
<i>legāti non sine aliqua spe pacis</i>	<i>the ambassadors returned home,</i>
<i>domumrediērunt</i>	<i>not without some hope of</i>
	<i>peace.</i>

725. *quidām*, means *one, a, a certain one*; in the plural it is equivalent to *some, sundry*, as: *quidam rhetor antiquus, a certain ancient rhetorician*; *certi quidam homīnes, some reliable persons*.

726. *ūnusquisquē* means *every single one*; *quīvīs & quīlibēt*, *any one you like*; *quisquē*, *each one*; *omnēs*, *all together*.

727. The Distributive *quisquē* is used:

After the reflexive pronoun, *sūi, sībī, sē*, and its possessive *sūus*, as: *sua cuique voluptas, each man has his hobby*;

With *Superlatives* and *Ordinals*, as: *optimum quidque rarissimum est, the best is the rarest, or every good thing is rare, or the better a thing, the rarer it is*; *quinto quoque anno, every fifth year*.

728. *āliūs* is simply *another*; *altēr*, is *the other of two, or the second*; *cētēri*, *all the rest or others*.

729. The expressions *āliūs . . āliūs, altēr . . altēr* may be used in a *reciprocal* sense: *puēri alter altērum amant, the boys love each other*. *āliūs* repeated in different propositions is translated *one — another*; *aliud agitur, aliud simulatur, one thing is done, another pretended*. *āliī . . āliī*, is *some . . others*; *altērī . . altērī*, *one party . . another party*. *āliūs* with another case of the same word may be translated by two separate propositions commencing with *one—another* respectively; as: *aliud alii natūra iter ostendit, nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man*.

[245. 246.]

SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

Use of Tenses.

730. There are **Six Tenses** in Latin, viz.:

Of Continued Action.

the **Present**, as: *scribō, I am writing*;

the **Imperfect**, used chiefly for description or repeated action, as: *scribēbām, I was writing*;

the **Future**, as: *scribām, I shall write*.

Of Completed Action:

the **Perfect**, either definite or historical, as: *scripsī, I have written* (definite), or: *I wrote* (historical);

the **Pluperfect**, as: *scripsērām, I had written*;

the **Future Perfect**, as: *scripsērō, I shall have written*.

731. The **Present** is used of what is going on now, at the present time, and of what is true at all times, as:

loquēris adhuc, cum omnes ta-	<i>you are still speaking while all</i>
cent	<i>are silent</i>
fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>fortune helps the brave.</i>

732. The **Present** is often substituted for the *Historical Perfect* in lively narration, as:

triginta rectōres reipublicae	<i>30 rulers of the Athenian com-</i>
Atheniensis constituuntur, qui	<i>monwealth are appointed, who</i>
fiunt tyranni	<i>become tyrants.</i>

733. The **Present** is used in Latin to express a past action or state which is continued so as to be present also, especially with *jām*, *now*; *jām dīū*, *now for a long time*; *jām pridēm*, *now long since*, as:

tot annos bella gero	<i>for so many years I have waged</i>
	<i>and am still waging war.</i>

734. The **Present** is regularly used with *dūm*, *while*, though the time referred to is past, as:

haec dum aguntur, Caesāri nun-	<i>while this is going on, word</i>
tiātum est	<i>was brought to Caesar.</i>

735. The **Imperfect** denotes an action continuing in the past, but not then accomplished. It is employed to describe manners, customs and situations.

scribēbam epistūlam, cum amī-	<i>I was writing a letter when my</i>
cus adesset	<i>friend came</i>
ante oppidum planitiēs patēbat	<i>before the town extended a plain</i>
Pausaniās epulabātur more Per-	<i>Pausanias was wont to banquet</i>
sārum	<i>in the Persian style.</i>

736. The **Future** represents an action that is yet to come. In subordinate clauses it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English:

sanabimur, si volēmus	<i>we shall be healed if we wish.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------------------

The **Future** sometimes has the force of an *Imperative*:

in sudōre vultus tui comēdes pa-	<i>in the sweat of thy face thou</i>
nem tuum	<i>shalt eat thy bread.</i>

737. The **Perfect** has two distinct uses:

I. As the **Perfect Definite** it denotes an action as now completed, and is rendered by the English Perfect with *have*.

triste est nomen carendi, quia
subjiçitur haec vis: habuit,
non habet

*sad is the phrase "do without"
because this meaning is at-
tributed to it: he has had,
he has no longer.*

II. As the **Historical Perfect** it denotes an action as completed in past time, but leaves it, in other respects, wholly indeterminate.

Caesar armis rem gerere con-
stituit, exercitum finibus Ita-
liae admovit, Rubiconem trans-
iit, Romam et aerarium occu-
pavit, Pompējum cedentem
persecutus est, eumque in
campis Pharsalicis devicit.

*Caesar resolved to use armed
force; he advanced with his
army to the frontiers of Italy,
passed the Rubicon, took pos-
session of Rome and the
treasury, pursued Pompey
and defeated him in the plain
of Pharsalus*

The following **Conjunctions**:

postquam }
posteaquam } *after*

ut }
ut primum } *as soon as*

ubi }
ubi primum } *as soon as*
simulac }
simulatque }

are usually followed by the **Historical Perfect**:

milites postquam victoriam
adepti sunt, nihil reliqui vic-
tis fecere

*when the soldiers had won the
victory, they left nothing to
the vanquished.*

738. The **Pluperfect** is used of an action that was completed before another was begun; as:

consul copias, quas pro castris
collocaverat, reduxit

*the consul led back the forces
which he had stationed before
the camp.*

739. The **Future Perfect** denotes an action as completed in the future; it is used with much greater exactness in Latin than in English, as:

ut sementem feceris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

740. In the statement of an action repeated before another, with such particles as: *cūm, ūbī, whenever; sīmūlāc, as soon as; sī, when;* and Relatives, as: *quōtīens, as often as*, the **Perfect** and **Pluperfect Indicative** are used — the Perfect referring to *Present Time*, the Pluperfect to *Past*.

quōtīens **cecīdit**, surgit, *as often as he falls, he rises,*
quōtīens **cecidērat**, surgēbat, *as often as he fell, he rose.*

In like manner, in letters the **Perfect**, or **Imperfect** may be used for the *present* and the **Pluperfect** for *past* tenses, as in the phrase: *nihil erat quod scribērem, I have nothing to write.*

741. The **Periphrastic Conjugations** are formed by combining the tenses of *essē* with the **Future Participle (Active)**, and with the **Gerundive (Passive)**.

The **Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes either intention or being on the point of doing something, as:

scriptūrūs sūm, *I purpose to write, or am about to write.*

The **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** expresses necessity or propriety, as:

pārentēs āmandī sunt, *parents must be loved, deserve or ought to be loved.*

The **Person by whom** is put in the **Dative**, as:

pārentēs libērīs āmandī sunt, *parents ought to be loved by their children.*

bellum scriptūrus sum, quod populus Romānus cum Jugurtha gessit	<i>I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.</i>
---	---

[247. 248.]

Sequence of Tenses.

742. When two sentences are so related to each other, that the one defines and explains the other, or that the one is dependent on the other, they are connected in the way of **Subordination**, as:

crepant aedificiā, priusquam cadant, *houses creak before they fall;*

crepant aedificiā is the **Principal Clause**,
priusquam cadant is the **Dependent Clause**.

The **Subjunctive** is largely used in **Subordinate Sentences**, and will be treated at length in that connection.

743. In those **Dependent Clauses** which require the **Subjunctive** the choice of the tenses of the *Dependent Clause* is determined by the tense of the *Principal Clause* according to the following

GENERAL RULES.

I. **Tenses**, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes:

Principal, including the *Present*, both *Futures* and the *Perfect Definite*;

Historical, including the *Imperfect*, the *Historical Perfect* and the *Pluperfect*.

II. **Principal Tenses** are followed by the *Present Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

III. **Historical Tenses** are followed by the *Imperfect Subjunctive* for *contemporary* action, and by the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *antecedent* action.

Principal Clause.		Dependent Clause.
Present.	cognosco, <i>I am finding out</i>	{ quid faciās, <i>what you are doing</i> quid feceris, <i>what you have done, what you have been doing, what you did</i>
Future.	cognoscam, <i>I shall find out</i>	
Fut. Perf.	cognovĕro, <i>I shall have found out (shall know)</i>	
Perf. Defn.	cognōvi, <i>I have found out (I know)</i>	
Imperf.	cognoscĕbam, <i>I was finding out</i>	{ quid facĕres, <i>what you were doing</i> quid fecisses, <i>what you had done, had been doing</i> quid facĕrent hostes, <i>what the enemy was doing</i> quid fecissent hostes, <i>what the enemy had done.</i>
Pluperf.	cognovĕram, <i>I had found out (I knew)</i>	
Hist. Perf.	Caesar cognōvit, <i>Caesar found out</i>	

744. The **Perfect Definite**, though properly a *Principal* tense, is more commonly treated as a *Historical* tense, and admits after it the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*:
oblitus es, quod dixĕrim, *you have forgotten what I said*;
interrogāvi eum, quid facĕret, *I have asked him what he was doing*;
feci hoc, ut intellegĕres, *I have done this that you might see.*

745. In **Sentences of Result**, with *ut*, *quī*, *quīn*, the verb of the **Dependent Clause** has the same tense as it would have if the clause were a **Principal** one.

Verres Siciliā ita perdidit, ut ea restitūi in antiquum sta- tum non possit	Verres so ruined Sicily, that she can not be restored to her ancient condition.
---	---

746. The **Future Tenses** are wanting in the *Subjunctive*. After a **Future** or **Future Perfect**, their place is supplied by the **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**; after the other tenses by the **Active Periphrastic Subjunctive**, **Present** or **Imperfect**; as:

cognoscam, quid faciās, *I shall find out what you will be doing*;
cognovēro, quid fecēris, *I shall have found out what you have done*;
cognosco, quid factūrus sis, *I am finding out what you will do*;
cognovēram, quid factūrus esses, *I had found out what you would do.*
[249. 250.]

Use of the Indicative.

747. The **Indicative** is the mood of *Direct Assertions* or *Questions*, as:

necessitas non habet legem	necessity recognizes no law
quare vitia sua nemo confitetur?	why will no man confess his
quia etiam nunc in illis est	faults? because he continues
	to indulge in them.

The **Indicative** is sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Subjunctive*, chiefly in expressions denoting the *propriety*, *advantage* or *necessity* of an action not performed, such as:

longum est, it would be tedious	possum	} I might, I could
utilius fuit, it would have been	poteram	
better	debēo	} I ought or I should
pār est, it would be fair	debēbam	
perturbationes animorum poteram	I might call the disturbances of	
appellare morbos, sed non con-	the mind "diseases", but	
veniret ad omnia	that would not suit all the	
	cases.	

The **Indicative** of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used, as: haec condicio non accipienda fuit; *these terms ought not to have been accepted.*

748. The **Indicative** is used after **General Relatives**, such as: *quisquīs, no matter who; quotquōt, no matter how many, and all forms in -cunquē, -ever, also after sīvē...sīvē, whether...or,* where in English the **Potential** may be used, as:

*quidquid id est, timēo Danāos whatever it may be, I fear the
et dona ferentes Danai, even when they bring
presents.*

Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

749. The **Subjunctive** represents the action of the verb as something merely *entertained* by the mind and *dependent* on other circumstances.

750. The **Present** and **Perfect Subjunctive** are used to denote an action as *possible* (**Potential Subjunctive**); also the *second person* of the **Imperfect Subjunctive** in the same manner, but only in the expressions:

*credēres, putāres, you would, might have thought
vidēres, cernēres, you would, might have seen.*

*hic quaerat quispiam here some one may ask
dixērit quis some one may say.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nōn**.

751. The **Subjunctive** is used to denote a *wish*—the **Present** and **Perfect** a wish conceived as possible; the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect** an unaccomplished one (**Optative Subjunctive**). When so used, the **Present** and **Perfect** are commonly, and the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect** regularly preceded by **utīnām**, *O that, I wish that, would that.*

*stet haec urbs may this city continue to stand
falsus utīnam vates sim I wish I may be a false prophet
utīnam me mortūum vidisses would you had seen me dead.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

752. The **Subjunctive** is used to express an *exhortation* or a *command* (**Hortatory** or **Imperative Subjunctive**).

Pres. First Pers. *amēmus patriām, let us love our country*
“ Second Pers. *corpōris robōre utāre, use your bodily strength*
“ Third Pers. *amet, let him love*
Perf. Second Pers. { *ne transiēris Ibērum, do not cross the Ebro*
(negative only) { *hoc ne fecēris, thou shalt not do that.*

The regular negative in such cases is **nē**.

753. The **Subjunctive** is used in the Present and Perfect to express a *concession* (**Concessive Subjunctive**), as:

vendat aedes vir bonus, *suppose an honest man is selling a house;*
sit fur, *granted that he be a thief.*

The regular negative here is **nē**.

754. The **Subjunctive** is used in *doubtful questions* (**Dubitative Subjunctive**), as:

quid hoc homīne faciās? *what are you to do with this man?*
quid agērem? *what was I to do?*

The regular negative here is **nōn**.

[251. 252.]

Dependent Uses of the Subjunctive.

755. Dependent **Subjunctive** Clauses may be classified as follows:

Conjunctive Clauses	introduced by	<i>Conjunctions,</i>
Relative Clauses	“	“ <i>Relatives,</i>
Indirect Questions	“	“ <i>Interrogative Words.</i>

Consecutive and Final Conjunctions.

756. *ūt, that,* governs the **Subjunctive**:

I. When it means *that, in order that* (often to be translated by the Infinitive with *to, in order to*) to express **Purpose**; its Negative is **nē, that not, lest**.

esse oportet, ut vivas, non vi-	<i>you must eat to live, not live</i>
vēre, ut edas	<i>to eat</i>
cura, ne quid ei desit	<i>take care that nothing be want-</i>
	<i>ing to him.</i>

II. When it means *so that* (often rendered by *to, so as to*) to express a **Result**. Its Negative is **ūt nōn, so that not**.

tanta vis probitātis est, ut eam	<i>so great is the power of upright-</i>
in hoste etiā diligāmus	<i>ness that we love it even in</i>
	<i>an enemy</i>

ita vixi, ut non frustra me na-	<i>I have so lived that I do not</i>
tum esse existimem	<i>think I was born in vain.</i>

III. When it means *granted that* to express a *Concession*; its Negative is **nē**.

ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas	<i>granted that strength be wanting, yet the good will is to be praised</i>
ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est	<i>granted that pain is not the greatest evil, an evil it certainly is.</i>

757. nēvē, and *not, nor*, is used as *Continuative* after **nē**, as:
 Thrasybūlus legem tulit, ne quis ante actārum rerum accusarētur **neve** multarētur
Thrasybulus proposed a law that no one should be accused of or punished for past offences.

758. The most general way of expressing *Purpose* is by **ūt** (negatively **nē**) as: *esse oportet, ut vivas, non vivere, ut edas; you must eat to live, not live to eat* This is the regular construction with verbs of *Willing* and *Wishing*, of *Warning* and *Beseeking*, of *Urging* and *Demanding*, of *Resolving* and *Endeavoring*, of *Forcing* and *Permitting*; such as:

consūlo, curo, prospiciō, providēo, vidēo;
 contendo, labōro, nitor, opēram do, id ago, id specto, nihil anti-
 quius habēo, quam;
 opto, postūlo, flagīto, oro, rogo, peto, precor, obsēcro;
 mando, edico, impēro, praecipio;
 impello, incito, movēo, addūco;
 hortor, monēo, suadēo, persuadēo;
 concēdo, permitto;
 faciō, perficiō, adipiscor, assēquor, consēquor, impētro.

voło, ut mihi respondēas,	<i>I wish you to answer me</i>
oro et hortor te, ut in munēre diligentissimus sis	<i>I entreat and admonish you to be very careful in your office</i>
ne nocēas, dum vis prodesse vidēto	<i>see to it that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.</i>

759. A clause of *Result* introduced by **ūt**, so that (negatively **ūt nōn**) is used:

After such words as *tām, tālis, tantus, itā, sic, adēc*;

After verbs denoting *it happens, it remains, it follows*, and the like; (*accidit, contingit, evēnit, sequitur, restat, &c.*)

After *quām* with a *Comparative*:

Atticus ta vixit, ut Atheniensī-	<i>Atticus so lived that he was</i>
bus carissīmus esset	<i>very dear to the Athenians</i>
accīdit, ut plena esset luna	<i>it chanced to be full moon</i>
urbs munitior erat, quam ut	<i>the town was too strong to be</i>
primo impētū capi posset	<i>taken in the first attack.</i>

760. The phrase tantūm ābest, ūt...ūt; *it is so far* (from being the case) deserves special notice:

tantum abest ab eo, ut malum	<i>so far is death from being an</i>
sit mors, ut verēar, ne homīni	<i>evil that I fear man has no</i>
sit nihil bonum aliud	<i>other blessing.</i>

761. After mētūō, tīmēō, vērēōr, *I fear*, mētūs est, pērīcūlūm est, *there is fear, danger*, nē must be rendered by *that or lest*, and ūt by *that not*, as:

Milo metuēbat, ne a servis indi-	<i>Milo feared that he would be</i>
carētur	<i>betrayed by his servants</i>
tīmēo, ut sustinēas labōres	<i>I fear that you will not hold</i>
	<i>out under your toils.</i>

762. The prefix ālī- in ālīquīs and similar Compounds is rejected after **Relatives** and the following **Conjunctions**:

sī, *if*; nīsī, *if not*; nē, *lest*; nūm, *whether*; cūm, *when*.

Hence we say in *Final Clauses*:

nē quīs, that no one	nē quandō, that never
nē quīd, that nothing	nē quisquām, that no one at all
nēcūbī, that nowhere	nē quidquām, that nothing at all.

[253. 254.]

763. The Ablative quō (= ūt ēō, *that thereby*), in order that, so that, with the **Subjunctive** is used as a **Conjunction** in clauses of **Purpose**, especially with *Comparatives*, as:

ager arātur, quo meliōres fruc-	<i>the field is plowed that it may</i>
tus edere possit	<i>yield better fruit.</i>

764. quōmīnūs (= ūt ēō mīnūs, *that thereby the less*), that not, with the **Subjunctive** is used with verbs of *Hindering*, such as:

impēdirē, to hinder	obstārē, to be in the way
dētērrērē, to frighten off	obsistērē, to oppose
prōhibērē, to keep from	rēcūsārē, to refuse

mors non deterret sapientem,	<i>death does not deter a wise man</i>
quomīnus in omne tempus rei	<i>from consulting the interest</i>
publicae consūlat	<i>of the state the whole time.</i>
aetas non impēdit, quomīnus	<i>age does not hinder our retain-</i>
agri colendi studiā teneāmus	<i>ing interest in agriculture.</i>

Instead of **quōmīnūs**, we may use **nē**, and when the principal clause is *negative*, **quīn**:

Regūlus ne sententiā dicēret	<i>Regulus refused to pronounce</i>
recusāvit	<i>an opinion</i>

765. **quīn** (= **quī**, *how*, and **nē**, *not*), *that not*, with the **Subjunctive** is used only after *negative* clauses or such questions as expect a negative answer. It is equivalent

to quī nōn , quōd nōn , <i>but</i> , as:	
nemo est, quīn hoc vidēat	<i>there is no one but sees this;</i>

to ūt nōn , <i>but</i> , as <i>not</i> , as:	
nemo est tam fortis, quīn rei	<i>no one is so brave as not to be</i>
novitāte perturbētur	<i>confounded by the newness of a thing.</i>

766. **quīn** is used in the sense of *that not* or *that* after **Negative Expressions** implying *doubt*, *omission* and the like; such are:

non dubīto,	<i>I do not doubt</i>
non est dubīum,	<i>there is no doubt</i>
quis dubitet?	<i>who can doubt?</i>
non multum abest,	<i>there is not much wanting</i>
nihil abest,	<i>there is nothing wanting</i>
nihil praetermitto	} <i>I omit nothing</i>
nihil intermitto	
temperāre mihi non possum,	<i>I cannot restrain myself</i>
vix me continēo,	<i>I hardly refrain from</i>
retinēri non possum,	<i>I cannot be restrained</i>
facēre non possum quīn,	<i>I cannot help</i>
fiēri non potest quīn,	<i>it cannot happen but that</i>
quis dubitet, quīn in virtūte di-	<i>who can doubt that wealth con-</i>
vitīae sint?	<i>sists in virtue?</i>
non multum afūit, quīn interficē-	<i>I was not far from being</i>
rer	<i>killed.</i>

Concessive and Comparative Conjunctions.

767. Concessive Conjunctions express a *Concession*, with the general signification *although, granting that*.

These are: *etsī, ētīamsī, tāmetsī, quamquām, although quamvis (quantumvis), however much, however licēt, ūt, cūm, though, suppose, whereas.*

768. Of these, *licēt* (*properly a verb*) exclusively, and *quamvis* usually, take the **Present or Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

*licet superbus ambūles pecuniā, although you may strut about
fortūna non mutat genus proud of your purse, fortune
changes not birth*

*vitia mentis, quamvis exigua defects of the mind, no matter
sint, in majus excēdunt how slight they be, go on in-
creasing.*

769. *cūm, whereas, since; ūt, granted that; nē, granted that* not (see **756. III.**) take the **Subjunctive**.

*Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, Phocion was constantly poor,
cum divitissimus esse posset though he could be very rich.*

770. *ētīamsī* takes the **Indicative** to denote *real concessions*, and the **Subjunctive** to denote such as are *merely conceived* in the mind, as:

*ista veritas, etiamsi jucunda non that truth, although it is not
est, mihi tamen grata est agreeable, is nevertheless
acceptable to me*

*vita brevis est, etiamsi supra life is short, although it should
centum annos duret last over 100 years.*

771. *etsī, tāmetsī* and *quamquām* regularly take the **Indicative** (unless otherwise required by the connection, as:

*viri boni recte agunt, etsi nul- good men do right, though they
lum consecuturum emolūmen- see no profit about to result
tum vident*

*quamquam omnis virtus nos ad though all excellence attracts us
se allicit, tamen justitia et to itself, yet justice and liber-
liberalitas id maxime efficit ality do this most.*

772. The Conjunctions of Comparison

tamquām, quāsī (vēlūt sī, ūt sī, prōindē āc sī), as if,
take the **Subjunctive**.

The **Tenses** follow the general rule of *Sequence* (743); accordingly the *Present* and *Perfect* Subjunctive are sometimes used where the English idiom would suggest the *Imperfect*, as:

superbi saepe ita se gerunt, *haughty people often behave as*
quasi ipsi soli **sint** homīnes *if they alone were men.*

The **Particles of Comparison**: ūt, sicūt, quēmadmōdūm, *as*, usually referring to itā, sic, *so*, take the **Indicative**:

ut sementem fecēris, ita metes; *as you sow, so shall you reap.*

[255. 256.]

Temporal Conjunctions.

773. As a rule, **Temporal Clauses** take the **Indicative**; they are introduced by the following Conjunctions:

postquā, <i>after that, after</i>	cū, <i>when</i>
ūt, <i>as</i>	dūm } <i>while, until</i>
ubi, <i>when</i>	dōnēc }
sīmūlāc } <i>as soon as</i>	quōād, <i>up to</i>
sīmūlatquē }	quamdī, <i>as long as</i>
ūt prīmūm } <i>the first moment</i>	antēquā } <i>before that, before</i>
cū prīmūm } <i>that (see 737)</i>	priusquā }

774. Temporal **cū**, meaning *when, at the time when*, takes the **Indicative** of all the tenses, as:

ager cum multis annos quīēvit,	<i>when a field has rested many</i>
uberiores efferre fructus solet	<i>years, it usually produces a</i>
	<i>more abundant crop</i>
oracula Graeci consulēbant, cum	<i>the Greeks consulted the oracles</i>
bella erant initūri	<i>when they were to begin war.</i>

775. Historical **cū**, meaning *when, as*, takes the **Imperfect** and **Pluperfect Subjunctive**.

Agēsilaus cum ex Aegypto re-	<i>Agesilaus died as he was re-</i>
verteretur, mortuus est	<i>turning from Egypt</i>
cum Caesar Ancōnam occupas-	<i>when Caesar had occupied An-</i>
set, urbem reliquimus	<i>cona, we left the city.</i>

776. **dūm**, **quōād** and **dōnēc** (= quamdī), *so long as, while*, take the **Indicative** of all the tenses; in narrative **dūm**, *while*, takes the **Present Indicative**. (734)

dum spiro, spero	<i>while there is life, there is hope</i>
quoad potuit, restitit	<i>as long as he could, he withstood</i>
haec dum aguntur, domi res	<i>while this was going on, affairs</i>
quietae erant	<i>were quiet at home.</i>

777. dŭm, quōād, dōnēc, until, take the **Present, Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative** when a *fact* is to be expressed, as:

haud desīnam, donec perfecēro *I will not cease, until I shall have accomplished.*

778. dŭm, quōād, until, implying *purpose, doubt or futurity*, take the **Subjunctive**:

Alexander paulisper exercitum consistēre jussit, donec consideret pulvis *Alexander ordered the army to halt a short time, until the dust should be down.*

779. antēquām and priusquām, before, have in narration the same construction as historical *cŭm* or *postquām*, viz. either the **Subjunctive** of the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, or the **Perfect Indicative**, as:

Achaei non ante ausi sunt bellum capessēre quam ab Roma revertissent legāti *the Achaeans did not dare to begin the war before the ambassadors had returned from Rome*

antēquam bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit *before war consumed the wealth of our city it was very powerful.*

780. In reference to Future Time, these conjunctions take the **Present and Future Perfect Indicative**, also the **Present Subjunctive**, as:

tempestas minātur, antēquam surgat *the storm threatens before it rises*

ante revertar quam luna bis impleverit orbem *I will return before the moon has twice filled her orb.*

[257. 258.]

Causal Conjunctions.

781. The following Causal Conjunctions take the **Indicative**:

quīā } *because*
quōd }

quōnīam } *since, inas-*
quandōquidēm } *much as*
siquidēm }

quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite

since it is now night, go to your houses

quia natūra mutāri non potest, ideo verae amicitiae aeternae sunt

because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.

782. The **Subjunctive** is used in causal clauses when a statement is made *not as a fact*, but *as the assertion or opinion* of some one else, as:

Socrātes accusātus est, quod Socrates was brought to trial
corrupēret juventutem because (as they said) he corrupted youth.

783. After those verbs which express the feeling of *joy, grief*, etc., as: *gaudēre, to rejoice; grātiām āgērē, to thank; dōlērē, to grieve; glōriārī, to boast*, **quōd** is used to give the ground of emotion, as:

quod scribis, gaudēo I am glad that you write
tibi grātiās ago, quod me omni I thank you that you free me
molestiā liberas from all trouble.

784. **quōd**, *that*, is also used to introduce explanatory clauses, chiefly after a Demonstrative:

bene facis, quod me adjūvas you do well in assisting me
quod Regūlus rediit mihi mirabile videtur that Regulus returned seems wonderful to me.

785. At the beginning of a sentence, **quōd** is used in the sense of *as to*, especially in letters, as:

quod de domo scribis. . . , as to what you write of the house. . .

nōn quōd, **nōn quō**, *not as if*, and **nōn quīn**, *not as if not*, take the **Subjunctive**, as:

pugiles ingemiscunt, non quod boxers groan not as if they
dolēant, sed quod omne corpus intenditur were in pain, but because all the body is put to the stretch.

786. Causal **cūm**, *as, since*, takes the *Subjunctive*.

cum vita sine amicis insidiarum since life without friends is full
et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa of treachery and fear, reason
monet amicitias comparare itself advises us to contract
friendships. [259. 260.]

Conditional Conjunctions.

787. In a **Conditional Sentence** the clause containing the condition is called the **Protāsis**, and that containing the conclusion the **Apodōsis**.

Protasis. si bovem non possis, if you cannot drive an ox,
Apodosis. asinum agas drive a donkey,

The **Protasis** is regularly introduced by the conditional particle **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds, viz:

nīsī , <i>unless</i>	sīn , <i>if not, but if</i>
sī nōn , <i>if not</i>	quodsī , <i>but if</i> .

788. There are **Three Classes of Conditional Sentences**:

I. The condition is represented as a *fact*: **sī** with the **Indicative** in both clauses:

si Deus est, aeternus est	<i>if there is a God, he is eternal.</i>
----------------------------------	--

II. The condition is represented as *possible* or *likely* to be realized: **sī** with **Present** or **Perfect Subjunctive**:

si quis ita agat, imprūdens sit	<i>if anybody were to act thus, he would not be wise.</i>
--	---

III. The condition is represented as *contrary to fact*: **sī** with **Imperfect** or **Pluperfect Subjunctive**:

facērem, si possem	<i>I should do it if I could.</i>
---------------------------	-----------------------------------

789. **nīsī** and **sī nōn** are used for negative conditions; with **nīsī** the negative belongs to the whole sentence, with **sī nōn** to a particular word, as:

nisi id confestim facis, te tradam magistratūi	<i>unless you do this at once I shall deliver you to the magistrate</i>
dolōrem si non potēro frangēre, occultābo	<i>if I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.</i>

790. The **Subjunctive** is used in **Conditional Wishes** with:

dummōdō }	dummōdō nē }
dūm }	dūm nē }
mōdō }	mōdō nē }
	<i>provided only not</i>

odērint, dum metūant	<i>let them hate if they only fear</i>
Athenienses summas laudes merentur, dummōdo ne tam leves fuissent	<i>the Athenians deserve the highest praise if only they had not been so wanton.</i>

sī mōdō, *if only, provided that*, requires the **Indicative**.

[261, 262.]

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive.

791. As a rule, the **Relative Clause** is in the *Indicative* when a *definite fact* is stated:

planta, quae saepius transfer- a tree often transplanted does
tur, non coalescit not thrive.

792. The **Subjunctive** is used in **Relative Clauses**:

I. to denote **purpose** or **motive**; **quī** = **ūt ēgō**, **ūt tū**, **ūt is**, etc.
missi sunt delecti cum Leonīda, picked men were sent with
qui Thermopylas occupārent Leonidas to take possession
of Thermopylae.

II. to denote the **cause**, *on account of which* or the **hindrance** *in spite of which*; **quī** = **cūm ēgō**, **cūm tū**, **cūm is**, etc. (often with **ūt**, **ūtpōtē**, *as*; **quippē**, *namely*).

o virum simplicem, qui nos nihil O guileless man who hidest
celet! nothing from us!

III. to denote **result** or to indicate a **characteristic** of the antecedent, sometimes in a restrictive sense, as:

non is sum, qui hoc faciā I am not such a one as to do this
oratiōnes Catōnis, quas quidem Cato's speeches as far as I have
legērim read them.

793. The construction of the **Consecutive** or **Characteristic Relative** is especially common:

a. after **is**, **tālīs**, **ējusmōdī**, **tantūs**, **tām** with an Adjective or Adverb, **sōlūs** and **ūnūs**:

est innocentia affectio talis animi, quae nocēat nemini, *innocence is such a quality of mind as to do harm to no one.*

b. after general expressions of *existence* and *non-existence*, as:

est qui	} there is, there are	habeo quod, I have to
sunt qui		reperiuntur qui, persons are
nemo est qui,	there is none to	found who
nihil est quod,	there is nothing	

sunt qui censēant una animum cum corpore interire, *there are some who believe that the soul perishes together with the body.*

c. after **dignūs**, **indignūs**, **idōnēūs**, **aptūs**:
indignus es, cui fides habeatur, *you are unworthy of being believed.*

794. A clause joined to another by a Relative, takes the **Subjunctive**, when it contains *not the sentiment of the writer*, but of *some other person* alluded to, as:

Paetus omnes libros, quos frater *Paetus presented to me all the*
suus reliquisset, mihi donāvit *books that his brother had left.*

795. Comparatives may be followed by **quā̄m ūt, quā̄m quī** with the **Subjunctive**, corresponding to the English *too...to*, as:

damna majōra sunt quam quae *the losses are too great to be*
aestimāri possint *estimated.*

[263. 264.]

Direct Questions.

796. Questions in Latin are introduced by **Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs or Particles**.

Interrogative Pronouns.

quis? quīd? *who? what?* quisnā̄m? quidnā̄m? *who, what pray?*

quī? quae? quōd? *which?*

ūtēr? ūtrā? ūtrūm? *which of the two?*

quālīs? quālē? *of what kind?*

quantūs? quantā? quantūm? *how great?*

quōtūs? quōtā? quōtūm? *what? (in number or order)*

quōtusquisquē? quōtāquaequē? quōtumquodquē? *how few?*

quōt? *how many?*

Interrogative Adverbs.

ūbī? *where?*

undē? *whence?*

quō? *whither?*

quā? *where? which way?*

quandō? *when?*

quōtīens? *how often?*

quōmōdō? } *how?*

quēmadmōdūm? }

cūr? }

quārē? } *why? what for?*

quā̄m ob rēm? }

ūbīnā̄m? *where pray?*

undēnā̄m? *whence pray?*

quōnā̄m? *whither pray?*

quā̄nā̄m? *which way pray?*

quamdiū? } *how long?*

quō̄susquē? }

quā̄m? (only before **Adjectives** and

Adverbs) *how? how much?*

quantōpērē? (only before **Verbs**)

how greatly? how much?

quidnī? cūr nōn? *why not?*

797. The **Interrogative Particles** are:

nē, nūm, nonnē, ūtrūm, ān.

Of these **nē** asks merely for information; it cannot stand by itself, but is joined to any emphatic word, usually the verb, which then comes first in the sentence; it is not translated, as:

omnisne pecuniā debīta solūta est? *is all the money owing paid?*

When a **negative answer** is expected, **nūm** is used, which stands at the beginning of the sentence and is likewise not translated, as:

num vespertilio avis est? *Is the bat a bird?*

With **nōn**, **nē** forms a special interrogative particle **nonnē**, *not*; the answer expected is *yes*, as:

nonne lectio hujus libri te delectat? *does not the perusal of this book delight you?*

798. Double or Alternative questions have the following forms:

ūtrūm, <i>whether</i> ..	ān, <i>or</i> ..
— nē, “ ..	ān “ ..
....., “ ..	ān “ ..

utrum domi fuisti an in schola?	} <i>have you been at home or in school?</i>
domine fuisti an in schola?	
domi fuisti an in schola?	

Sometimes the first part of an alternative question is omitted or implied, and **ān** alone asks a question, as:

an nescis regibus longas esse manus? *or perhaps do you not know that kings have long arms?*

In *Direct* questions *or not* is **annōn**; in *Indirect* **necnē**.

utrum domi fuisti annon? *have you been at home or not?*

QUESTION AND ANSWER.

799. In answering a question the emphatic word is generally repeated, as:

vidistine eum? *did you see him?* vidi, *yes, I did.*

solusne venisti? *did you come alone?* non solus, *no, I did not.*

The following **Responsives** are also used in answer to a direct question:

yes	no
itā, <i>so</i>	nōn itā, <i>no, not so</i>
itā est, <i>so it is</i>	mīnīmē, <i>by no means</i>
itā verō est, <i>so it is indeed</i>	mīnīmē verō, <i>by no means indeed</i>
sānē, <i>of course</i>	nīhīl mīnūs, <i>nothing less so</i>
sānē quidēm, <i>yes, indeed</i>	neutiquām, <i>not at all.</i>
etīām, <i>even so</i>	
verō, <i>truly, in truth</i>	

800. *immō*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of a previous statement, as:

causa igitur non bona est? Im-	<i>the cause, then, is a bad one?</i>
mo optima	<i>Nay, it is an excellent one</i>
num ille tibi familiāris est? Im-	<i>is he a friend of yours? On the</i>
mo alienissimus	<i>contrary, a perfect stranger.</i>

[265. 266.]

Indirect Questions.

801. The **Subjunctive** is used in such questions as are dependent upon some word in the former part of the sentence (**Indirect Questions**).

The words: *ubi fuisti? where have you been?*
are a **Direct Question**, with the verb in the **Indicative**; in the sentence:
dic mihi ubi fuēris, tell me where you have been,
the same words are an **Indirect Question**, and the dependent verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

qualis sit animus ipse animus	<i>the mind itself knows not what</i>
nescit	<i>the mind is</i>
quis ego sim me rogitas?	<i>do you ask me who I am?</i>

802. **Indirect Questions** have the same particles as the direct, *nūm* and *nē*, corresponding to *whether* in English; *sī*, *if*, is used for *whether* after *tentārē*, *expērīrī*, to *try*, and *expectārē*, to *expect*.

Epaminondas quaesivit salvusne	<i>Epaminondas asked whether</i>
esset clipeus	<i>his shield was safe</i>
paludem si nostri transirent	<i>the enemy were waiting (to see)</i>
hostes expectabant	<i>whether our men would cross</i>
	<i>the swamp.</i>

803. INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

quaero utrum verum an falsum sit	} <i>I ask whether it is true or</i>
quaero verumne an falsum sit	
quaero verum an falsum sit	
quaero verum falsumne sit	

false

When the interrogative particle is omitted in the first member, *nē* may stand in the second, but only in **Indirect Questions**.

or not in **Indirect Questions** is **necnē**, as: *dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, the question is whether there are gods or not.*

[267. 268.]

The Imperative.

804. The **Imperative** is used to express a *command, wish, advice or exhortation*.

The **Present Imperative** denotes that an action is to be performed *at once*, or to be continued if actually being performed, as:

si quid in te peccāvi, ignosce	<i>if I have sinned against you, forgive me</i>
justitiām cole et pietātem	<i>cultivate justice and piety.</i>

The **Future Imperative** is used where there is a direct reference to *future time*; it corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall* or to the Imperative *let*, and is properly used in general directions, laws, statutes and wills, as:

regiō imperiō duo sunt, consū-	<i>there shall be two officers with</i>
les appellātor	<i>royal power; they shall be called consuls.</i>

805. The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē**, which is, however, in classical Latin only found with the **Future Imperative**, as:

homīnem mortūm, inquit lex,	<i>thou shalt not bury a dead man</i>
in urbe nē sepelito	<i>in the city, says the law.</i>

In prohibitions instead of the **Negative Imperative** the following forms of the *Subjunctive* with **nē** are usually employed:

the second person of the **Perfect Subjunctive**, as:

hoc nē fecēris, *leave that undone;*

the third person of the **Present Subjunctive**:

puer telum ne habēat, *a boy is not to have a weapon.*

806. Instead of the *Simple Imperative* several **Imperative Phrases** are common:

cūrā ūt, <i>take care that</i>	}	each with the Subjunctive .
fāc ūt, <i>cause that</i>		
fāc, <i>do</i>		

cura ut quam primum venias, *come as soon as possible;*
valetudinē tuam fac ut cures, *take care of your health.*

cāvē nē, <i>beware lest</i>	}	each with the Subjunctive .
cāvē, <i>beware</i>		

nōlī, *be unwilling*, with the **Infinitive**.

cave festīnes, *do not be in a hurry;* cave existīmes, *do not think;*
noli me tangere, *do not touch me;* noli putāre, *do not suppose.*

The Infinitive.

807. The **Infinitive** is not limited to a particular number or person, as the ordinary verbal forms, but is really a **Verbal Noun**.

The **Infinitive** governs the case of its verb, and is modified by adverbs and not by adjectives, as:

legere librum, *the reading of a book*;

diligenter legere librum, *the careful reading of a book*.

808. The **Infinitive** may be used as the **Subject** of a verb.

As such it is chiefly found with *essē* and impersonal verbs:

nunquam est utile peccare *to do wrong is never useful*

intērest omnium recte facere *it is the interest of all to do right*.

When the verb *essē*, *to be* (or others of similar meaning, see **540**) with an **Adjective** or **Noun** is used as the **Subject** of the sentence, such *Adjective* or *Noun* is put in the **Accusative**; as: **senem** ante tempus fieri miserum est, *it is miserable to grow old before the time*.

809. The **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs.

Such are verbs denoting:

to be able, must, dare, posse, debere, audere

to begin, continue, cease, incipere, pergere, desinere

to be accustomed, learn, know how, assuescere, discere, scire

to wish, desire, resolve, velle, cupere, statuere.

vincere scis, Hannibal, victoria uti nescis, *how to win victory you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory you know not*.

When the verb *essē*, *to be* (or others of similar meaning, see **540**) with an **Adjective** or **Noun** is used as the **Object** of a verb, such *Adjective* or *Noun* is put in the **Nominative**, as: **beatus** esse sine virtute nemo potest, *no one can be happy without virtue*.

The **Infinitive** of the *Present* is often used for the tenses of the *Indicative* in lively narration, and takes the **Subject** in the **Nominative** (**Historical Infinitive**.)

pars cedere, alii insēqui, neque signa neque ordines servare *a part give way, others press on, they hold neither to standards nor ranks.* [271, 272.]

Accusative with the Infinitive.

810. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used like the English Objective with the Infinitive in such sentences as: *hoc verum esse scīmus, we know this to be true.*

In English we might also say: *We know that this is true;* but Latin permits *only* of the Infinitive Construction.

811. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** may be the **Subject** of the sentence. The *Predicate* is either a noun or an adjective with *est*, or an impersonal verb.

The most common phrases under this rule are:

pār est, <i>it is fair</i>	oportēt, <i>there is need, ought</i>
justū est, <i>it is just</i>	appārēt, <i>it is clear</i>
certū est, <i>it is certain</i>	constāt, <i>it is agreed, evident</i>
credībilē est, <i>it is credible</i>	conducīt, expēdit, <i>it is useful</i>
fās est, <i>it is right</i>	convēnit, <i>it is fitting</i>
nēfās est, <i>it is forbidden</i>	plācēt, <i>it pleases</i>
fāmā est, <i>the story goes</i>	displicēt, <i>it displeases</i>
opīniō est, <i>there is a report</i>	necessē est, <i>it must needs</i>
spēs est, <i>there is hope</i>	opūs est, <i>there is need</i>

me scribere oportet, I must write or I ought to write

certum est liberos amari, it is certain that children are loved.

812. The **Accusative** with the **Infinitive** is used as the **Object** of verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*:

Verba sentiendi:

sentīrē, *to perceive, notice*
 animadvertērē, *to see*
 audīrē, *to hear*
 vidērē, *to see*
 accipērē, *to hear*
 compērīrē, *to ascertain*
 cognoscērē, *to know*
 intelligērē, *to learn*
 cōgitārē, *to think*
 arbitrarī, crēdērē, *to believe*

Verba declarandi:

dēclārārē, *to declare*
 dīcērē, *to say*
 nēgārē, *to deny*
 affirmārē, *to affirm*
 respondērē, *to answer*
 scribērē, *to write*
 fātērī, *to confess*
 dēmonstrārē, *to prove*
 narrārē, *to tell*
 nuntiārē, *to bring word*

aves videmus construere nidos, we see that birds build nests;

nemo negabit se esse mortalem, no one will deny that he is mortal.

813. Verbs of *Perceiving* take the **Acc.** with the **Pres. Participle** to represent the object as *actually seen, heard, etc.*, as: Catōnem vidi in bibliothēca sedentem, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.*

814. Verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring* take a dependent **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**. Such are:

vōlō, <i>I wish</i>	cūpiō, <i>I desire</i>	sīnō, <i>I permit</i>
nōlō, <i>I do not wish</i>	jūbēō, <i>I bid</i>	pātiōr, <i>I suffer</i>
mālō, <i>I like better</i>	vētō, <i>I forbid</i>	

discipulum me habēri volo, non *I wish to be taken for a learner,*
doctōrem *not for a teacher*
Caesar pontem jubet rescindi *Caesar orders the bridge to be*
broken down.

These verbs may take the *simple* Infinitive when the subject remains the same. Instead of the Accusative with the Infinitive, ut with the Subjunctive is frequently used with this class of verbs (**758**); but never with nolo, and seldom with volo and malo; jubēo and veto *regularly* take the Accusative with the Infinitive.

815. Verbs of *Emotion*, as: gaudērē, *to rejoice*, grātiām āgērē, *to thank*, dōlērē, *to grieve* (see **783**) may be considered as verbs of *saying* and *thinking* and, as such, take an **Accusative** with **Infinitive**, as: saluum te advenisse gaudēo, *I rejoice that you have arrived safe.*

816. To translate such clauses as are introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and require in Latin the **Accusative** with the **Infinitive**,

take no notice of *that*;

translate the **English Nominative** following *that* by the **Latin Accusative**;

translate the **English Verb** by the **Latin Infinitive**.

817. A **Predicate Noun** or **Adjective** and the **Participles** of the Compound Infinitives must agree with the **Accusative-Subject**; but, of course, the **Supine** remains unaltered.

sentio borēam frigidum esse	<i>I feel that the north-wind is cold</i>
medici causa morbi inventa cu-	<i>physicians think that when the</i>
rationem esse inventam pu-	<i>cause of disease is discovered,</i>
tant	<i>the cure has been discovered.</i>

Tenses of the Infinitive.

818. After Verbs of *Perceiving* and *Declaring* (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*)

the **Present Infinitive** expresses *contemporaneous* action,
the **Perfect Infinitive** expresses *antecedent* action,
the **Future Infinitive** expresses *future* action.

Present Infinitive.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scribĕre | <i>I believe that he is writing</i> |
| II. credĕbam eum scribĕre | <i>I believed that he was writing.</i> |

Perfect Infinitive.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scripsisse | <i>I believe that he has written</i> |
| II. credĕbam eum scripsisse | <i>I believed that he had written.</i> |

Future Infinitive.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| I. credo eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believe that he will write</i> |
| II. credĕbam eum scriptūrum esse | <i>I believed that he would write.</i> |

I. After a Principal Tense translate:

the **Infinitive** like the **Indicative** of the *same* tense.

II. After a Historical Tense translate:

the **Infinitive Present** like the **Indicative Imperfect**

the **Infinitive Perfect** “ **Indicative Pluperfect**

the **Infinitive Future** “ **Subjunctive Imperfect** (*should and would*).

819. The **Future Infinitive** is often expressed by **fōrĕ** or **fūtūrūm** **essĕ ūt** — necessarily so when the verb has no **Supine**, as:

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| credo fore ut pluāt | <i>I believe it will rain</i> |
| credĕbam fore ut pluĕret | <i>I believed it would rain.</i> |

820. The **Personal Pronouns**, which are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis, must be **always** expressed in the **Accusative** with **Infinitive**. For the Pronouns of the third person the Reflexive **sĕ** is used *in reference to the subject* of the **Principal Clause**, and the Demonstratives **ĕūm**, **ĕām**, **ĕōs**, **ĕās** when referring to another noun.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| nemo tam senex est qui se an- | <i>no one is so old but thinks he</i> |
| num non putet posse vivĕre | <i>can live another year</i> |
| Ennius deos esse censet, sed | <i>Ennius believes that there are</i> |
| eos non curāre opinātur, quid | <i>gods, but he does not think</i> |
| agat humānum genus | <i>they care what mankind are</i> |
| | <i>doing.</i> |

Nominative with the Infinitive.

821. With **Passive Verbs** of *Perceiving* and *Declaring*, instead of the Infinitive with the Accusative a personal construction is more common by which the *Subject Accusative* becomes the *Subject Nominative* of the leading verb: **Nominative with the Infinitive.**

Accus. with Inf. tradunt Homērum caecum fuisse, *they say that Homer was blind*

Nomin. with Inf. Homērus caecus fuisse traditur, *Homer is said to have been blind.*

822. Especially to be noted is the construction of the **Nominative** with the **Infinitive** after:

jūbēō, *I order*

sīnō, *I permit*

vētō, *I forbid*

vidēōr, *I seem*

consules jubentur exercitum *the consuls are ordered to levy*
scribere *an army*

omnibus videmur recte fecisse, *it seems to all that we did right*
quod amici causam defenderi- *in defending the cause of our*
mus *friend.* [277. 278.]

Direct Discourse.

823. A *Statement* which gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer is called *oratio recta*, or **Direct Discourse.**

inquām, *quoth I*, is used in *direct* quotations, **ājō**, *I say*, in *indirect* quotations. *inquā*m always follows one or more of the words quoted. When a nominative is added to *inquit*, it commonly follows this verb: *uva*, **inquit** *vulpes*, *nondum matura est*, *the grape is not yet ripe*, *says the fox* [279. 280.]

Indirect Discourse.

824. An **Indirect Quotation** expresses a thought indirectly, as *reported*, *recognized* or *contemplated* by some one: *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.

Socrātes dicere solēbat: "omnes in eo quod **sciunt** satis **sunt** eloquentes," *Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."*

Oratio obliqua.

Socrātes dicere solēbat, omnes in eo quod **scirent**, satis **esse** eloquentes; *Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.*

825. In **Indirect Discourse** the *Verb* of the *Principal Clause* is in the **Infinitive** and its *Subject* in the **Accusative**; *Dependent Clauses* connected with it by *Relatives* and *Particles* take the **Subjunctive**.

Interrogative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive** according to **801**.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesāris pauca respondit: quid sibi **vellet**? cur in suas possessiones **veniret**?

Ariovistus gave a brief answer to Caesar's demands: what did he mean? why did he come into his possessions?

Imperative Sentences are put in the **Subjunctive**; the negative is, of course, **nē**.

mandāta remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, exercitus dimitteret

they sent back orders of which the substance was as follows: Caesar should return into Gaul and disband his armies.

826. A *Clause* depending upon a *Subjunctive* or *Infinitive* takes the **Subjunctive** if it is regarded as an integral part of that clause. This is called **Attraction of Mood**.

mos est Athēnis laudāri in cōciōne eos, qui **sint** in proeliis interfecti

it is custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.

827. The **Subjunctive** is used in *subordinate clauses* to express the thought of *some other person* than the speaker or writer.

quos vicēris, amicos tibi esse cave credas

do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends.

828. All references to the **Subject** of the leading clause are regularly expressed by the Reflexive **sui** (**suius**); as: animus sentit se sua vi movēri, *the mind feels that it moves by its own force.*

Participles.

829. There are **two Participles** in the *Active Voice*:
the **Present Participle** denotes *continuance*, as: scribens, *writing*;
the **Future Participle** is used to express *what is likely or about to happen*, as: scriptūrus, *about to write*.

830. There are **two Participles** in the *Passive Voice*:

the **Perfect Participle** denotes *completion*, as: scriptus, *written*;
the **Gerundive** (so-called **Future Participle**) denotes *necessity or propriety*, as: scribendus, *to be written*.

831. Deponent Verbs have **four Participles**:

the **Present Participle**, as: hortans, *exhorting*;
the **Perfect Participle**, as: hortatus, *having exhorted*;
the **Fut. Part. Act.**, as: hortaturus, *being about to exhort*;
the **Fut. Part. Pass.**, as: hortandus, *to be exhorted*.

832. The Participles are used **attributively**, or in the manner of ordinary Adjectives, as:

arbor florens, *a blossoming tree* scripta epistula, *a written letter*
puer dormiens, *a sleeping boy* urbs obsessa, *a besieged town*.

833. The Participles are used with the utmost freedom **appositively**, and may have the value

of *a Relative*, as: divitiae semper duraturae, *riches which will last forever*;

of *while, when, after*, as: Plato scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*;

of *if*, as: mendaci homini ne verum quidem dicenti credimus, *we do not believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*;

of *since, because*, as: cantus olorinus recte fabulosus habetur nunquam auditus, *the swan's song is justly regarded as fabulous, because it has never been heard*;

of *though, although*, as: oculus se non videns alia cernit, *the eye, though not seeing itself, sees other things*;

of *to, in order to* (expressing a purpose), as: Scipio in Africam trajecit Carthaginem deleturus, *Scipio crossed over into Africa to destroy Carthage*.

834. The Participle with a negative, as *nōn*, *nīhīl* is often best rendered

by *without* and a *Participial Noun*, as: *multi homīnes vitupērant libros non intellectos, many men find fault with books without understanding them.*

835. Verbs of *Perceiving* take the *Accusative* with the *Present Participle*, when the object is to be represented as *actually* seen, heard, etc.; also: *fācērē*, *indūcērē*, *to represent, introduce* (see **813**), as:

vidi puēros ludentes

I saw the boys playing

Xenōphon facit Socrātem disputantem

Xenophon represents Socrates disputing.

[195. 196. 283-286.]

Ablative Absolute.

836. A Noun or Pronoun with a *Participle* is used in the *Ablative Case* absolutely to express some accompanying circumstance or condition of the action.

The *Ablative Absolute* may be translated by the English *Nominative Absolute* which is a close equivalent; but, as a rule, the same change of form is required as in translating Participles in general (see **833**). Examples are:

Numa Pompiliō regnante. Numa Pompilius reigning. When Numa Pompilius was reigning. In the reign of Numa Pompilius.

Tito imperante. In the reign of the emperor Titus.

Caesāre interfecto. Caesar being, having been murdered. When Caesar had been murdered. After the murder of Caesar.

Another *Ablative* should not be placed in apposition with the *ablative absolute*. Thus we may say: *puēro mortūo, the boy having died*; but not: *Gaio puēro mortūo, the boy Gaius having died*; this should be expressed by: *cum Gaius puer mortuus esset*. The *ablative absolute* with the *Future Participle* is also avoided by the classic authors.

An *Adjective*, or another *Noun* may take the place of the *Participle*, as:

Xerxe rege. Xerxes being king.

natūra duce. Nature being the leader. Under the guidance of nature.

nolentibus nobis. While we are unwilling. Against our will.

In spite of us.

patre invito. While father is, was unwilling. Against father's will.

837. The want of a Perfect **Active** Participle in Latin is frequently supplied by the Ablative Absolute with a Perfect **Passive** Participle, thus:

Caesar, urbe capta, rediit } *The city being taken, Caesar returned.*
 } *Having taken the city, Caesar returned.*
[197. 198. 287. 288.]

Gerund.

838. As the Infinitive is used as a *Verbal Noun* in the Nominative and Accusative Cases, so the **Gerund**, corresponding to the English participial noun in *ing*, is used in the remaining cases, viz.:

Nom.	scribere est utile	<i>writing is useful</i>
Gen.	ars scribendi	<i>the art of writing</i>
Dat.	scribendo adfui	<i>I was present at the writing</i>
Acc.	scribere disco	<i>I learn to write</i>
	ad scribendum utilis	<i>useful for writing</i>
Abl.	scribendo discimus	<i>we learn by writing.</i>

839. The **Gerund** governs the same case as the verb:

ars scribendi epistolam	<i>the art of writing a letter</i>
cupidus te audiendi	<i>desirous of hearing you</i>
injurias ferendo	<i>by bearing wrongs</i>
ad beate vivendum	<i>for living happily</i>
parendo legibus	<i>by obeying the laws.</i>

Gerundive.

840. The **Gerundive**, in its adjective use, denotes *necessity* or *propriety*.

Its most frequent use is with *esse* in the **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation** (see **314**). The neuter of the Gerundive with *est*, *erāt*, etc., is used impersonally if what is said holds good of people in general, as: *vivendum est*, *we or you must live*.

But the person *by whom* may also be added in the **Dative**, thus:

mihi scribendum est, *I must or should write*
tibi scribendum est, *thou must or shouldst write*
ei scribendum est, *he must or should write*
nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write*
vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write*
eis scribendum est, *they must or should write.*

841. The **Gerundive** is used as an **Objective Predicate** to denote *Purpose* after verbs signifying *to give, take, send, leave, as*:

curāre, <i>to take care</i>	accipere, <i>to receive</i>
dāre, <i>to give</i>	permittere, <i>to permit</i>
relinquere, <i>to leave</i>	locāre, <i>to let, lease</i>
mittere, <i>to send</i>	conducere, <i>to contract for</i>
divīti homīni id aurum servandum dedit	<i>he gave that gold to a rich man to keep.</i>

842. The **Gerundive** of verbs governing the accusative is frequently used instead of the Gerund in the following manner:

The **Accusative** is put in the same Case as the Gerund;

The Gerund is then changed into the Gerundive;

The Gerundive is made to agree with the Substantive in *Gender, Number and Case*; thus:

Gerund.	Gerundive.
Gen. scribendi epistulam	scribendae epistulae
Dat. scribendo epistulam	scribendae epistulae
Acc. ad scribendum epistulam	ad scribendam epistulam
Abl. scribendo epistulam	scribenda epistula.

843. The **Genitive** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives, as:

ars vivendi, <i>the art of living</i>	equitandi peritus, <i>skillful in riding</i>
consilium urbis delendae, <i>a plan for destroying the city</i>	civitatis regendae peritus, <i>skillful in governing the state.</i>

Very common are **causā** and **grātiā**, *on account of, for the sake of, for the purpose of* with the Genitive of Gerund and Gerundive to point out *design or purpose*, as:

memoriae exercendae gratia, *for the sake of exercising the memory.*

844. The **Dative** of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with adjectives of fitness and their opposites:

utīlis, -ē, <i>useful, good</i>	aptūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>adapted, suited</i>
inutīlis, -ē, <i>useless, unfit</i>	idōnēūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fit, suitable</i>

to denote the *object for which*; but the more common construction of these adjectives is that of the Accusative with *ad*, *to*, thus:

aqua utilis bibendo, *water good for drinking*,
charta inutilis ad scribendum, *paper unfit to write upon*.

845. The **Accusative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is most frequently used after *ad*, *to*, denoting *purpose*, as:

ad colendos agros, *for cultivating the fields*;
me vocas ad scribendum, *you summon me to write*;
propensus ad discendum, *inclined to learn*.

846. The **Ablative** of the Gerund and Gerundive is used as Ablative of *means* or *instrument*, and most frequently after the preposition *in*, *in*, as:

mens discendo alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning*
moderatio in jocando, *restraint in joking*.

[199. 200. 289-292.]

Supine.

847. The **Supines** are verbal nouns of the Fourth Declension, having only the accusative and ablative singular, as: *āmātūm*, *āmātū*, *to love*.

The **Former Supine** (in *ūm*) is used after verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose* of the motion; it has an *active meaning*, as:

venio te rogātum *I come to ask you*.

With the passive infinitive *īrī* (lit. *to be gone*) the Supine in *ūm* forms the **Future Infinitive Passive**, *āmātūm īrī*, *to be about to be loved* (**315**).

The **Latter Supine** (in *ū*) has a *passive meaning*; it is used only with a few Adjectives denoting *ease* or *difficulty*, *pleasure* or *displeasure*, *right* or *wrong*; with the nouns *fās*, *right*, *nēfās*, *wrong*, sometimes with *ōpūs*, *need*, as:

quid est tam jucundum auditu? *what is so agreeable in hearing?*

Equivalents of the Supine.

848. The **Former Supine**, as an expression of *purpose*, is not very common, its place being supplied in various ways. Thus the sentence:

The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to sue for peace,
may be rendered:

Supine. Carthaginienses legātos misērunt **pacem petītum**.

Gerundive { C. legātos misērunt **ad pacem petendam**.
with **ād**, { C. legātos misērunt **pacis petendae causa**.
causā

Fut. Part. C. legātos misērunt **pacem petitūros**.

ūt w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **ut pacem petērent**.

quī w. Subj. C. legātos misērunt, **qui pacem petērent**.

The use of the **Latter Supine** is confined to a few verbs, as: dictū, *to tell*; factū, *to do*; auditū, *to hear*; vīsū, *to see*. With faciēs, difficilis, jucundus, the construction of **ād** with the gerund is more common, as: res est facilis ad cognoscendum (*cognitu*), *the thing is easy to know*. [293. 294.]

Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

849. The following Particles are called **Copulative Conjunctions**: **ēt**, **-quē**, **atquē** (**āc**), and

nēquē, and not

ētīām, **quōquē**, also

ēt is simply *and*, the most common and general copulative, and connects independent words and clauses without any additional meaning; **-quē**, affixed to the word it annexes, combines things that belong closely to one another; **atquē** adds a more important to a less important member. The following may serve as an example to illustrate the various usages:

dies et noctes means *days and nights*, simply;

dies noctesque “ *days and nights*, as a whole;

dies atque noctes “ *days and (also) nights*.

furem fur cognoscit, et lupus *thief knows thief, and wolf*
lupum *knows wolf*

dum vires annique sinunt, tole- *work while your strength and*
rāte labōrem *years permit you*

intra moenia atque in sinu urbis *within the walls and even in*
sunt hostes *the heart of the city are the*
enemies.

āc does not stand before a vowel or **h**; **atquē** either before vowels or consonants. They generally mean *as, than*, after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness, as: **aequē āc**, *as much as, equally as*; **sēcūs āc, ālitēr atquē**, *otherwise than*.

ētīām (lit. *and farther*) *even, yet, still*, adds a new circumstance, and generally precedes the words to which it belongs; **quōquē**, *so also*, which refers only to a single word and follows that word, implies a sameness in the whole, as:

etiām mendīcus mendīco invidet *even the beggar envies the beggar*
otīa corpus alunt, animus quo- *rest strengthens the body, the*
que pascitur illis *mind, too, is thus supported.*

850. Several *Subjects* or *Objects*, standing in the same relations,

either take **ēt** throughout: **polysyndeton**, i. e. *joined in various ways*;
 or omit it throughout: **asyndeton**, i. e. *unconnected*;
 or take **quē** only after the last member, thus:

summa fide et constantīa et justitīa } *with the greatest faith, con-*
summa fide, constantīa, justitīa } *stancy and justice.*
summa fide, constantīa, justitīaque }

ēt is used after **multī** followed by another adjective, where in English *and* is usually omitted; as: **multae et magnae arbōres**, *many large trees*.

851. In the second member of a sentence *and not* is expressed by **nēquē**, as: **dicunt, neque dubitant**, *they say and do not doubt*. Mark the following **Idiomatic Expressions**:

<i>and no one</i>	nēquē quisquām	<i>nor any one</i>
<i>and no</i>	nēquē ullūs	<i>nor any</i>
<i>and nothing</i>	nēquē quidquām	<i>nor any thing</i>
<i>and never</i>	nēquē unquām	<i>nor ever</i>

852. The following are **Disjunctive Conjunctions**:

aut, vėl, -vē, sīvė (seu), or.

aut, *or*, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution, as:
vincēris aut vincis, *you are conquered or conquering*.

vėl (lit. *you may choose*) gives a choice, often with **ētīām**, *even*, **pōtīūs**, *rather*, as:

hic popūlus indomītus vel potius *this untamable or rather savage*
immānis *people.*

854. The Causal Conjunctions are:

nām, **ēnīm**, **namquē**, **ētēnīm**, *for*

nām is always put at the beginning, **ēnīm** always follows the first word of the sentence; **namquē** and **ētēnīm** are commonly put in the first place.

855. The Illative Conjunctions are:

itāquē, **igītūr**, **ergō**, *therefore*

idēō, **ideircō**, *on that account*

prōindē, *accordingly*

itāquē is put at the beginning of the sentence and is used of *facts*; **igītūr** follows one or more words in its clause, and is used of *opinions*; **ergō**, *therefore*, denotes necessary consequence and is more emphatic than **igītūr**; it is put at the beginning of the sentence or after an emphatic word; **prōindē** is only employed in exhortations:

quot homīnes, tot sententiāe;	<i>many men, many minds; there-</i>
falli igītūr possūmus	<i>fore we may be mistaken</i>
negat haec filiā me suam esse;	<i>she says that I am not her</i>
non ergo haec mater mea est	<i>daughter, therefore she is not</i>
	<i>my mother</i>
proinde fac magno anīmo sis!	<i>accordingly, be of good cheer!</i>

856. **nēquē** is used for **nōn** with the conjunctions: **ēnīm**, **vērō**, **tāmēn**, **igītūr**, thus:

neque enim, *for not*
neque tamen, *yet not*

neque vero, *but not*
neque igitur, *therefore not.*

[297. 298.]

Corresponsive Conjunctions.

857. Some Conjunctions frequently have a **Correlativo** in the preceding clause, to which they correspond.

Copulative.

ēt..ēt, <i>both..and</i>	nēquē..nēquē	} <i>neither..nor</i>
cūm..tūm, <i>both..and especially</i>	nēc..nēc	
mōdō..mōdō	nēquē..-quē, <i>on the one hand</i>	} <i>not..and on the other</i>
nunc..nunc	ēt..nēquē, <i>on the one hand..</i>	
tūm..tūm, <i>then..then</i>	<i>and on the other hand not</i>	
tām..quām, <i>both..and</i>		

nōn sōlūm..sěd ětīām	}	<i>not only..but also</i>
nōn mōdō..sěd ětīām		
nōn tantūm..sěd ětīām		

Disjunctive.

Comparative.

aut..aut } *either..or*
 vėl..vėl }

ūt..ītā
 quēmadmōdūm..ītā } *as..so*

sivě..sivě, *whether..or*

[299. 300.]

POETICAL FORMS.

PROSODY.

858. Prosody means Accent, and since Latin accent is regulated by quantity, Prosody, *in the classic sense*, has reference to the length of syllables, measured by the length of time taken up in pronouncing them. By modern Grammarians, Prosody is used in a wider sense to include both *quantity* and *versification*.

Quantity.

859. As a general rule, each simple vowel is either long (—) or short, (◡) and each syllable is considered as either long or short, according as it contains either a long or a short vowel — (*Longs and Shorts by Nature*). A long syllable is generally reckoned in length equal to two short ones.

860. All diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: āūrum, cōgo (cō-ago), mālō (magis volo), nīl (nihil), jūnior (juvenior).

Likewise *e* and *i* when corresponding to Greek *ε ι*:

Aenēas, Alexandrēa, Thalīa, Arīon.

861. A vowel before another vowel is *short*, no account being taken of *h*, as: pīus, dēus, trāho. Even a vowel naturally long or a diphthong becomes short before another vowel, as: dēorsum, prāeopto.

EXCEPTIONS:

e in *ei* of the Fifth Declension is *long* when a vowel precedes, as: fidēi, but fidēi.

i in the Genitive form īūs is long; it is, however, sometimes made short in verse, but never in alius (for alīius).

In fīō, *i* is long, except when followed by *er*, as: fīō, fīēbam; but fīērī.

In the Vocative of proper names in -ājūs, -ējūs, *a* and *e* are long: Gāi, Pompēi.

In words from the Greek, vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original, as: *āer*, *musēum*, *ēos*, *Agēsilaūs*, *Amphīon*.

862. A syllable with a short vowel is considered as *long* when the short vowel is followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant either in the same or in the following syllable, as: *ēst*, *ēssem*, *rēstare*, *dūx*. The consonants may be divided between two words, as *sūb sīdērē*. A short syllable made long by this rule is said to be *long by Position*.

863. But if the syllable ends in a short vowel, and the next syllable in the same word begins with a mute (see **6**.) followed by *r* or *l*, the syllable before the two consonants is *common* (anceps) — that is, it may be either *long* or *short* (⊔) in verse, as in *tenēbrae*; in prose it is invariably short.

864. Every vowel sound followed by *j* is long; only compounds of *jugum*, *yoke*, retain the short vowel before *j*, as: *bījūgus*, *two-horse*.

865. Forms from the same stem, whether **Inflections**, **Derivatives**, or **Compounds** retain the *original quantity* of the radical syllable, even when the vowel is changed, as:

āmor, *āmicus*, *inīmicus*, *inīmicitia*
sāpio, *sāpor*, *sāpiens*, *insīpiens*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i>	from <i>pāciscor</i>	<i>fīdes</i>	} from <i>fīdo</i>
<i>rēx</i> , <i>rēgis</i>	“ <i>rēgo</i>	<i>fīdelis</i>	
<i>sēdes</i>	“ <i>sēdeo</i>	<i>perfīdus</i>	
<i>vōx</i> , <i>vōcis</i>	“ <i>vōco</i>	<i>perfīdia</i>	
<i>dux</i> , <i>dūcis</i>	“ <i>dūco</i>	but:	
<i>nōta</i>	} “ <i>nōtus</i>	<i>confīdo</i>	
<i>nōtio</i>		<i>diffīdo</i>	
<i>nōtare</i>		<i>fīdus</i>	
<i>ōdium</i>	“ <i>ōdi</i>	<i>infīdus</i>	
		<i>fīducia</i>	

Middle Syllables.

866. **Perfects** and **Supines** of two syllables have the first syllable long even when that of the present is short, as: *vēnī*, *vīdī*, *vīcī*.

EXCEPTIONS: 7 **Perfects**: *bībī*, *dēdī*, *fīdī*

stēti, *stīti*, *tūli*, *scīdi*.

10 **Supines**: *dātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*

cītum, *ītum*, *stātum*

lītum, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rūtum*.

867. Reduplicated Perfects shorten both syllables, but the second may be made long by position, as: *tango, tētīgi — fallo, fēfelli*. The only exception is *caedo, cēcīdi* in distinction from *cado, cēcīdi*.

868. Perfects in *ūī* have their stem vowel short, as:

vētō-vētūī; plācēō-plācūī; cōlō-cōlūī.

EXCEPTIONS: *dēbēō, = dēhībēō; flōrēō* from *flōs*; *pārēō*, and *pōno*, but *pōsui*.

869. Supines in *itūm* have *i* long when from Perfects in *ivī* (ii), as: *cupītum, petītum, audītum*. *recensēo* has *recensītum* from *recensūi* in the Perfect.

870. Verbs in *īō* (*īōr*) of the Third Conjugation have a short stem vowel: *fācīō, cūpīō, jācīō, pātīōr, &c. &c.*

871. The verb endings *imus, itis* have only in the Present of the Fourth Conjugation a *long* penult; also in *sīmus, sītis; possīmus, possītis; velīmus, velītis; nolīmus, nolītis; malīmus, malītis; faxīmus, faxītis*.

872. In *rīmūs* and *rītīs* of the Future Perfect, and Perfect Subjunctive, *i* of the penult is *common*, i. e., it may be long in verse. *āmāvērīmūs, amāvērītīs*.

873. The terminations *ābūs, ōbūs, ēbūs* in plural cases, have a *long* penult, *ībūs* and *ūbūs* a short one.

filiābus, duōbus, diēbus — ducībus, acūbus.

874. Derivative Adjectives in *ālīs, ārīs, ānūs, ivūs, ōsūs* have the penult *long*: *naturālis, vulgāris, humānus, natīvus, odiōsus*;

those in *īcūs* and *īdūs* have it *short*: *bellīcus, cupīdus*.

EXCEPTIONS: *amīcus, antīcus, aprīcus, postīcus, pudīcus*.

875. Verbal Adjectives in *ilīs* have the penult *short*, as *docīlis, facīlis*. But Derivatives from nouns have it *long*, as *hostīlis, puerīlis*.

EXCEPTIONS: *humīlis* from *humus*; *parīlis* from *pār*.

876. Adjectives in *īnūs* have the penult *long*, as:

divīnus, genuīnus, peregrīnus, vicīnus.

But if such Adjectives denote *time* or *material*, the penult is *short*, as: *adamantīnus, crastīnus, diutīnus*.

EXCEPTIONS: *matutīnus, vespertīnus, repentīnus*.

Final Syllables.

877. In words of more than one syllable, final **a**, **e**, and **y** are short, **i**, **o**, and **u** are long:

1. **a** is short: terră, tectă, capită.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of the *First Declension*: terrā.

Vocative of *Greek words* in **ās**: Aeneā.

Imperative of *First Conjugation*: amā.

Most uninflected words as trīgintā, anteā, contrā; but: itā, quīā.

2. **e** is short: retĕ, ipsĕ, antĕ.

EXCEPTIONS:

Ablative of *Fifth Declension*, diē.

Imperative of *Second Conjugation*, mōnē.

Most Adverbs from Adjectives of the *Second Declension*, as: rectē, doctē. But notice: bĕnĕ, mālĕ, saepĕ, temerē, supernĕ, infernĕ. impunĕ and necessĕ are from old forms impunīs and necessīs.

Greek words in **e** (η): Niobē, Tempē.

3. **i** is long: dominī, vigintī, amarī.

EXCEPTIONS:

nisī, quasī.

Dative and Vocative of *Greek words*, Daphnidī, Alexī.

i is common in: mihī, tībī, sībī, ibī, ūbī.

Notice the Compounds: of ūbī: ubīnam, ubīvis, ubīque — of ibī: alībī, ibīdem — of ut, utī: utīnam, utīque.

4. **o** is long: bonō, amātō.

EXCEPTIONS:

Nouns of the *Third Declension* and verbal forms, as: leō, vēō.

ĕgō, dūō, mōdō, dummōdō, tantummōdō, quandō, quandōquidēm.

5. **u** is always long: cornū, fructū, auditū.

878. All *Final Syllables* that end in a single consonant other than **s** are short: ād, amāt, consūl, capūt.

EXCEPTIONS:

Compounds of pār, dispār, impār.—The *Adverbs* illīc, illūc, istūc.

Many *Greek nouns*, as: aēr, aethēr, cratēr; also alēc, liēn.

879. Final **as**, **es**, **os** are long; final **is**, **us**, **ys** are short.

1. **as** is *long*: **Messīās**, **silvās**, **vocās**.

EXCEPTIONS:

Greek nouns in **ās**, **ādīs**, as **Arcās**, **Arcādīs**.

Greek accusative plur.: **herōās**, **Arcādās**.

anās, **anātis**.

2. **es** is *long*: **legēs**, **diēs**, **docēs**.

EXCEPTIONS:

Nom. Sing. *Third Declension*, when the Genitive has **ētīs**, **ītīs**, **īdīs** with *short* penult, as **milēs**, **segēs**, **obsēs**; but **abiēs**, **ariēs**, **pariēs**.

Compounds of **ēs**, *be*; as: **ādēs**

penēs (*Preposition*).

Greek words in **ēs** (*ες*) **Thracēs**, **Arcādēs**.

3. **os** is *long*: **deōs**, **nepōs**.

EXCEPTIONS: **compōs**, **impōs** — Greek words in **ōs**: **Delōs**.

4. **is** is *short*: **canīs**, **legīs**.

EXCEPTIONS:

Plural Cases of all Declensions: **mensīs**, **servīs**, **nobīs**, **omnīs**, **partīs** (*Accus. pl.*).

The *Nominative* of such substantives as have in the Genitive **ītīs**, **īnīs**, **entīs**, as **Salāmīs**, **Samnīs**, **Simōīs**, **-entīs**.

Second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Active, *Fourth Conjugation* **audīs**; likewise **velīs**, **nolīs**, **malīs**, **possīs** and the Compounds of **sīs**. **pulvīs** and **sanguīs**.

5. **us** is *short*: **gladiūs**, **vulnūs**, **fructūs**, **amāmūs**.

EXCEPTIONS:

Gen. Sing. Nom. and Acc. Plur. *Fourth Declension*, **fructūs**.

Nominative of the *Third Declension* when the Genitive has a long **u**: **virtūs**, **palūs**, **tellūs**.

Greek words with **u** long (*ου*): **tripūs**.

6. **ys** (in words of Greek origin) is *short*: **chlamŷs**, **Halŷs**.

Monosyllables.

880. All words of *one syllable* that end in a vowel, are long: **ā**, **dā**, **mē**, **dē**, **hī**, **prō**, **tū**.

The attached particles **-quē**, **-vē**, **-nē**, **-cē**, **-tē**, **-ptē** are *short*.
On the Prefix **rē** see below **885**.

881. Substantives and Adjectives of one syllable are *long*, when they end in a consonant even if the stem-syllable be short, as: **ōs**, **mōs**, **vēr**, **sōl**, **fūr**, **plūs**; **pēs** (**pēdis**), **bōs** (**bōvis**), **pār** (**pāris**).

EXCEPTIONS: **vīr**, **lāc**, **ōs** (**ossis**), **mēl**
cēr, **vās** (**vādīs**), **fēl**.

hīc, *this one*, is sometimes short.

882. All other words of one syllable that end in a consonant, are short: **pēr**, **tēr**, **cīs**, **īn**, **fāc**.

EXCEPTIONS: **ēn**, **nōn**, **quīn** — **crās**, **cūr**, **sū**

the Adverbs, **hīc**, **hūc**, **hāc**, **sīc**.

dīc and **dūc** have the quantity of their verbs; **ēs**, *be*, is short.

Quantity in Compounds.

883. Compounds generally retain the quantity of their component parts, as: **dūco**, **dēdūco**, **condūco**; **ēō**, **ābēō**, **ōbēō**, **īnēō**; **dīco**, **contrādīcō**.

884. **pro** is *short* in Greek words, as **prōphēta**; but *long* in Latin (**880**) though there are many exceptions, especially before **f**; as:

prōcellā	prōfestūs	prōfundō
prōfānūs	prōfitēōr	prōnēpōs
prōfārī	prōficiscōr	prōpāgō
prōfectō	prōfūgiō	prōtervūs .

885. Of the inseparable Prefixes, **dī**, **sē**, and **vē** are *long*, **rē** is *short*: **dīdūcō**, **sēdūcō**, **rēdūcō**.

EXCEPTIONS: **dīrīmō**, **dīsertūs**

rēligiō, **rēfert**, **rēliquiae**.

886. In a few words, the quantity of the second part is changed. Such are: **pejērō**, from **jūrō**; **cognītūs** from **nōtūs**.

A remarkable change of quantity appears in the Compounds of **-dīcūs**, from **dīcō**: **fatidīcus**, **veridīcus**, **maledīcus**, and in: **innūba**, **pronūba**, from **nūbo**.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

887. Elision is the *omission* or rather *partial suppression* of a final vowel or a final **m** when the following word begins with a vowel or **h**, as:

deserto in litore	<i>to be read</i> desert' in litore
certae occumbere morti	" cert' occumbere morti
supremum audire laborem	" suprem' audire laborem.

888. The practice of elision is followed in poetry to avoid the hiatus (*gaping*), or the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables. But *before* and *after Interjections* the hiatus is allowed, as:

O ēt | dē Lătī|ā, ō | ēt dē | gēntē Să|bīnā.

889. Elided syllables should be sounded but lightly. After a vowel or **m** final, the word **est** drops its **e** and is joined with the preceding syllable; as:

multa est, *read* multa'st; multum est, *read* multum'st.

890. Synaerēsis, or the *contraction* of two vowels which are commonly pronounced separately, is regular in the following words: deinde, prōinde, dēest, dēesse, āntehāc (= ānthāc) and in all forms of the verb anteire (= antīre).

891. In like manner **i** and **u** before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sounds of *y* and *w*, as: flūvīōrūm *say* flūvyōrūm; ābīētē = ābyētē; genūā = genwa.

892. One syllable is sometimes resolved into *two* by Diaerēsis, as: sī lū ae = sil vae; in sū ē tūs = in suē tūs.

893. Syncōpe, a *cutting short* is the taking away of one or more letters from the middle of a word, as: saecum *for* saecūlum; prendere *for* prehendere.

894. Apocōpe, a *cutting off*, is the cutting off a letter or letters from the end of a word, as: viden, *for* videsne; ain *for* aisne.

895. Systōle is the *shortening* of a long syllable, as: dedē-runt *for* dedērunt; Diastōle the *lengthening* of a short syllable, as Prīamīdes *for* Prīamīdes.

896. Epenthēsis is the *insertion* of a letter or a syllable in the middle of a word, as in the old forms sīēt, possīēt *for* sīt, possīt.

897. Tmēsis is the *separation* of compound words into their parts, as:

quam rem cunque <i>for</i> ,	quamcunque rem
per mihi gratum	“ mihi pergratum
super unus eram	“ unus superēram.

ESSENTIALS OF VERSIFICATION.

898. A verse, or line of poetry consists of a series of measures which are called **Feet**.

The feet most frequently employed in Latin verse are the following:

Of two syllables.

υ υ	Pyrrhichius , <i>Pyrrhic</i>	pătēr
--	Spondēus , <i>Spondee</i>	virtūs
υ -	Iambus , <i>Iambus</i>	ămāns
- υ	{ Trochaeus , <i>Trochee</i> }	mătēr
	{ Chorēus , <i>Choree</i> }	

Of three syllables.

υ υ υ	Tribrāchys , <i>Tribrach</i>	ădērīt
-- --	Molossus , <i>Molossus</i>	mōrtālēs
- υ υ	Dactylus , <i>Dactyl</i>	tēmpōră
υ υ -	Anapaestus , <i>Anapaest</i>	săpiēns
υ - υ	Amphibrāchys , <i>Amphibrach</i>	ădēsē
- υ -	{ Amphimācrus , <i>Amphimacer</i> }	tēcērānt
	{ Creticus , <i>Cretic</i> }	
υ - -	Bacchius , <i>Bacchius</i>	ămōrī
- - υ	Antibacchius , <i>Antibacchius</i>	pēcĉătă

Of Feet of four syllables the following are recognized:

υ υ υ υ	Proceleusmaticus , <i>Proceleusmatic</i>	cĉlĉrītĉr
-- --	Dispondēus , <i>Double Spondee</i>	intĉrrŭpŭnt
- υ - υ	Ditrochaeus , <i>Double Trochee</i>	infĉdĉlĉs
υ - υ -	Diambus , <i>Double Iambus</i>	rĉnŭntĉns
υ υ - -	Ionĉcus a minĉre , <i>Lesser Ionic</i>	mĉtŭĉntĉs
- - υ υ	Ionĉcus a majĉre , <i>Greater Ionic</i>	sĉntĉntĉă
- υ υ -	Choriambus , <i>Choriambus</i>	cŭrrĉcŭlĉ
υ - - υ	Antispastus , <i>Antispast</i>	vĉrĉcŭndŭs.

899. The **Unit** of measure is the *short syllable* (-); this is called a *mora* (*time*). A *long syllable* (—) is regularly equal to two *morae*. Accordingly in some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long, or a long instead of two short.

900. **Rhythm** is the *alternate* elevation and depression of the voice at certain intervals of time. That part of the foot which is distinguished from the rest by a greater stress of voice is called **Arsis**, the other part **Thesis**. The stress of voice laid upon the arsis is called *ictus* (*beat*); it is marked thus ˘.

901. The natural arsis is invariably on the long syllable or syllables of a foot; hence the *Trochee* and *Dactyl* have the ictus on the first syllable, the *Iambus* and *Anapaest* on the last, and the *Cretic* on the first and last. Only those feet which consist of both long and short syllables can have Arsis and Thesis, or Rhythm, and are, therefore, called **Rhythmical Feet**. Those consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are only used as substitutes for rhythmical feet, and take the ictus of the foot for which they stand; hence, a Spondee when used for the Dactyl takes the ictus of the Dactyl, viz: on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the Anapaestic rhythm, viz: the ictus on the last syllable.

902. **Rhythmical Feet** are *simple* when they have only one arsis, and *compound* when they have more than one. If the arsis follows, the rhythm is called *ascending*, if it precedes, *descending*.

903. A **Verse** is *simple* when it has one dominant measure which determines the rhythm of the whole verse; and *compound*, when different rhythms are combined in the same verse. The latter are only found in lyric poetry.

904. A verse takes its name from the predominant measure as *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, *Dactylic*, *Anapaestic*, and from the number of feet that compose it, as, *Hexameter*, *Pentameter*, *Tetrameter*, *Trimeter*, *Dimeter*, *Monometer*.

905. In **Dactyls** and all compound rhythmical feet (see above **902**) a measure is *a single foot*; accordingly, a verse having five dactyls is called a *pentameter*; one having six dactyls, *hexameter*.

906. **Trochaic**, **Iambic**, and **Anapaestic** verses are measured *not by single feet, but by pairs* (*dipodia*, *dipody*). In these rhythms a *monometer* contains two feet, a *dimeter* four, a *trimeter* six, a *tetrameter* eight.

907. A verse is termed **Acatalectic** (*not halting short*) when its last foot is complete; a verse lacking a syllable at the end is called **Catalectic**; it is catalectic in *syllabam*, or in *bisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the last foot.

908. The last syllable of a verse may be long or short indifferently, and is, therefore, called *syllaba anceps*, because the time wanting is made up by pause.

909. Most simple verses have certain breaks or pauses to rest the voice, and to prevent monotony. The *break* occasioned by the ending of a word in the middle of a foot, is called *Caesūra* marked thus †. The verse

$\bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \quad \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup \quad \cup | \bar{\iota} -$
 Donec † eris † felix † multos † numerabis † amicos

has five *Caesūrae*. Again, the *coincidence* of the end of a word with the end of a foot is called *Diaerēsis* marked thus ||.

$\bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \quad || \quad \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota}$
 Tempora || si fuerint || nubila || solus eris.

Every verse must have, about its middle, one principal *caesūra* or *diaerēsis*.

910. *Caesūra* is prevailing in *Iambic* and *Dactylic* verses, while the *Anapaestic Dimeter*, *Trochaic Tetrameter*, *Dactylic Pentameter* and the *Choriambic* verse have a fixed *diaerēsis* in the middle of the verse.

911. A *caesūra* occurring after the *arsis* of a foot is called *masculine*; a *caesūra* occurring after the *thesis* is called *feminine*:

$\bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \cup \quad \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup$
 Una salus † victis † nullam † sperare † salutem.
 masc. masc. masc. fem.

A *caesūra* may be found in any foot of the verse except the first.

912. In *Iambic* and *Dactylic* metres, the *Caesūrae* are named according to the number of half-feet before them, thus:

1. trithemimēres ($\frac{3}{2}$) at the end of the 3d half foot
2. penthemimēres ($\frac{5}{2}$) “ 5th “
3. hepthemimēres ($\frac{7}{2}$) “ 7th “
4. ennehemimēres ($\frac{9}{2}$) “ 9th “

They are all represented in the following hexameter:

$\bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \quad \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \quad \varpi | \bar{\iota} \quad \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} -$
 Ille latus † niveum † molli † fultus † hyacyntho.
 1 2 3 4

913. To read verse *rhythmically* is an accomplishment which must be taught orally. Observing the rules of quantity and versification, take care not to dwell on the rhythm of the verse to the neglect of accent and connection of the words. The ordinary mode of scanning, as:

$\bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \varpi | \bar{\iota} \varpi | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} \cup \cup | \bar{\iota} -$
 Donece risfe lixmul tosnume rabisa micos

is worse than useless.

DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

914. The **Dactylic Hexameter** (**Heroic Verse**) or simply **Hexameter** consists regularly of six dactyls and is *catalectic* in bisyllābūm. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet. Rarely a spondee is found in the fifth place, and when it is, the verse is called **Spondaic**. Accordingly its formula is:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏

915. Of the great number of possible caesūrae in the Hexameter the following are the most usual:

The principal caesūra is the Penthemimeral, or masculine caesūra of the third foot, as:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏
Arma virumque cano, † Trojae qui primus ab oris.

The next is the feminine caesūra of the third foot, also called μετὰ τρίτον τροχαῖον, as:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏
O passi graviores, † dabit deus his quoque finem.

Then comes the Hephthemimeral in the arsis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by the trithemimères after the second arsis, as:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏
Stat sonipes † ac frena ferox † spumantia mandit.

916. The last word of a Hexameter should be either a *disyllable*, or a *trisyllable*; monosyllables at the end denote emphasis, as:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏
Parturiunt montes † nascetur ridiculus mus.

917. In the first part of the verse variety in the use of dactyls and spondees has an agreeable effect. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls, a slow and heavy one by that of spondees. The following examples have been chosen with especial reference to this point:

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏
Quadrupedante † putrem † sonitu † quatit ungula campum.

⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏ | ⏏
(Cyclōpes) Illi inter † sese † magna † vi brachia tollunt.

ELEGIAC PENTAMETER.

918. The **Elegiac Pentameter** consists of two parts separated by *Diaerësis*. Each part consists of two dactyls and the arsis of a third; the first part admits spondees, the second does not:

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | - || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad}$
 Tempora si fuerint nubila solus eris.

It derives its name from the number of dactyls. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$.)

919. The **Elegiac Pentameter** is seldom, if ever, used except in the *Elegiac Distich*, which consists of the *Hexameter* followed by the *Pentameter*:

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad}$
 Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos;
 $\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad}$
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

920. No monosyllables can stand at the end of either part of the **Pentameter**, except when preceded by another one, as:

$\underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | - || \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad} \cup \cup | \underline{\quad}$
 Magna tamen spes est in bonitate Dei.

921. Neither *syllāba anceps* nor *hiātus* is allowed at the *diaerësis*. Almost every **Pentameter** ends in a dissyllable, and elision is avoided.

IAMBIC TRIMETER.

922. The most common form of **Iambic verse** is the **Senarian**, or **Iambic Trimeter**; it is of frequent occurrence in lyric poetry, and is also the ordinary verse of dramatic dialogue. Since the final syllable must be *anceps*, the formula of the verse is as follows:

$\cup \underline{\quad} \cup - | \cup \underline{\quad} \cup - | \cup \underline{\quad} \cup \underline{\quad}$

923. In the **Iambic Trimeter** a *Spondee* or its equivalent (*Anapaest* or *Dactyl* with *Iambic ictus* — $\cup \cup$) may be regularly substituted in the odd places (1st, 3d, 5th foot), also a *Tribrach* ($\cup \cup \cup$) anywhere except in the last place.

924. The principal *caesūra* of the **Iambic Trimeter** is either the *penthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the 3d foot, or the *hepthemimeral* which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

COMPOUND VERSES.

925. A verse is **compound** if different measures are combined in the same to produce a more artificial movement especially

characteristic of lyric poetry. If a dactylic rhythm passes into trochees, the movements are intermediate between those of prose and poetry. Hence the name **Logaoedic verse** (from *λόγος*, prose, and *ᾠδή*, song). Sometimes an introductory foot of two syllables which is called **Basis** and commonly marked thus X, is put before the dactylic or logaoedic series. The **Verses** constructed upon the **Logaoedic** form (especially those used by Horace) are the following:

1. **Adonic** (a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup$
 Térruit úrbem.

2. **Aristophanic** (a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup$
 Lýdia díe per ómnes.

3. **Pherecratean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \underline{\text{X}} \quad | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup$
 Vix duráre carínae.

4. **Glyconic** (basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \underline{\text{X}} \quad | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup | \cup$
 Rómae principis úrbium.

5. **Lesser Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \underline{\text{X}} \quad | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup$
 Integér vitáe scelerísque púrus.

6. **Greater Sapphic** (double basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; two trochees):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \underline{\text{X}} \quad | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup$
 Té Deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

7. **Lesser Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \underline{\text{X}} \quad | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup | \cup$
 Máecenás atavís éдите régibús.

8. **Greater Asclepiadean** (basis; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; a trochee *catalectic*; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\underline{\text{X}} \quad \underline{\text{X}} \quad | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup | \underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup | \cup$
 Núllam Váre sacrá víte príús séveris árborem.

In the *Greater Sapphic* and both the *Asclepiadeans*, the dactyl with the catalectic trochee appears a simple Choriambus: $\underline{\text{X}} \quad \cup \cup \cup$; hence these metres have obtained the general name of **Choriambic**.

9. Lesser Alcaic (two dactyls; two trochees):

$\underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup$
 Víriginibús puerisque cánto.

10. Greater Alcaic (anacrŭsis; double basis; a dactyl; trochaic dipody *catalectic*):

$\cup : \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \cup \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \text{ } || \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \cup$
 Justum ét tenácem próposití virúm.

One or more syllables placed before the proper beginning of the measure are called an anacrŭsis; it is separated by a colon:

11. Archilochian (dactylic tetraméter; three trochees):

$\underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \dagger \text{ } \infty | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup || \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup$
 Sólvitur ácris hiéms † gratá vice vérís ét Favóni.

METRES OF HORACE.

926. Verses are combined in two different ways. Either the same verse is repeated throughout; such are the *Heroic Hexameter* and the *Iambic Trimeter*. Or the same verse or different verses recurring in a certain order are combined in a **Stanza** or **Strophe**. A strophe of two lines is called a **Distich**; of three, a **Tristich**; of four a **Tetrastich**.

927. Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires. The Odes include nineteen varieties of strophe, viz.:

1. Alcaic Strophe, consisting of:

Two Greater Alcaics $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cup : \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \cup \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} || \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \cup \\ \cup : \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \cup \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} || \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\} \quad 925. 10$

One Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis $\cup : \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup$

One Lesser Alcaic $\underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \quad 925. 9$

Justum ét tenácem próposití virúm

Non cívium árdor práva jubéntiúm

Non vúltus ístantís tyránni

Ménte quatít solidá neque Aúster.

2. Sapphic Strophe (minor), consisting of:

Three lesser Sapphics $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \cup \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \dagger \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \\ \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \cup \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \dagger \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \\ \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} \cup \underline{\text{L}}^{\times} | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \dagger \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \end{array} \right\} \quad 925. 5$

One Adonic $\underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \text{ } \cup | \underline{\text{L}} \text{ } \cup \quad 925. 1$

Jám satís terrís nivís átque dírae

Grándínís misít pater ét rubénte

Déxterá sacrás jaculátus árceś

Térruit úrbem.

3. **Sapphic Strophe** (major), consisting of:

One Aristophanic $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \text{I} \cup$ 925. 2

One Greater Sapphic $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \text{I} \cup$ 925. 6

Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

Lydia dic per omnes

Té deós oró, Sybarín cúr properás amándo.

4. **Asclepiadean Strophe I.** (minor), consisting of:

Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 7

repeated in tetrastichs:

Máecenás, atavís édite régibús

O et praesidium ét dulce decús meúm.

5. **Asclepiadean Strophe II.**, consisting of:

One Glyconic $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup$ 925. 4

One Lesser Asclepiadean $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup$ 925. 7

alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

Návis, quae tibi creditúm

Débes Végiliúm, finibus Atticís

Réddas incolumém, precór,

Et servés animae dimidiúm meae.

6. **Asclepiadean Strophe III.**, consisting of:

Three Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 7

One Glyconic $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup$ 925. 4

Quís desíderió sít pudor áut modús

Tám carí capitis? — Praeípe lúgubrés

Cántus, Mélpomené, cuí liquidám patér

Vócem cúm cythará dedit.

7. **Asclepiadean Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Two Lesser Asclepiadeans $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \\ \frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} || \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup \end{array} \right\}$ 925. 7

One Pherecratean $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup$ 925. 3

One Glyconic $\frac{\text{I} \times}{-} | \text{I} \cup \cup | \text{I} \cup | \cup$ 925. 4

O fons Bándusiáe spléndidiór vitró

Dúlci dígne meró, nón sine flóribús

Crás donáberis háedo

Cuí frons túrgida córnibús.

8. **Asclepiadean Strophe V.**, consisting of the

Greater Asclepiadean repeated in fours	{	$\frac{\text{X}}{\text{—}}$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$ —	}	925.8
		$\frac{\text{X}}{\text{—}}$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$ —		
		$\frac{\text{X}}{\text{—}}$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$ —		
		$\frac{\text{X}}{\text{—}}$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$ —		

Tú ne quæsierís, scire nefás quém mihi, quém tibi
Finem dí dederint, Leúconoé, néc Babylóniós
Téntaris numerós. At meliús, quídquid erít patí!
Seú plurés hiemés, seu tribuít Júpiter últimám.

9. **Alcmanian Strophe**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter	$\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \dagger \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$
Dactylic Tetrameter	$\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$

Quó nos cúnque ferét meliór fortúna parénte,
Ibimus ó socií comitésque.

10. **Archilochian Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter	$\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \dagger \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$
Dactylic Trimeter	$\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ —

Dífugére nivés, redeúnt jam grámina cámpis
Arboribúsque comáe.

11. **Archilochian Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter	$\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \dagger \varpi$ $\text{—} \varpi$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup$
Iambic Dimeter	$\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$ $\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$
Dactylic Trimeter	$\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ —

Hórrida témpetás caelúm contráxit et ímbres
Nívésque deducúnt Jovem:
Núnc mare, núnc siluæ.

The second and third lines of this strophe are often written as one verse.

12. **Archilochian Strophe III.**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter	$\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$ $\cup \parallel$ $\text{—} \cup \text{—}$ $\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$
Dactylic Trimeter	$\text{—} \cup \cup$ $\text{—} \cup \cup$ —
Iambic Dimeter	$\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$ $\cup \text{—} \cup \text{—}$

Pectí, nihil me sícut antea júvat
Scribere vérsiculos
Amóre percussúm gravi.

The second and third lines of this strophe are often written as one verse.

13. **Archilochian Strophe IV.**, consisting of:

Archilochian $\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{ 925. 11}$
 Iambic Trimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

Sólvitur ácris hiéms gratá vice vérís ét Favóni
 Trahúntque siccas máchinae carínas.

Two pairs are combined to form a tetrastich.

14. **Iambic Trimeter** alone (see 922).

15. **Iambic Strophe**, consisting of:

Iambic Trimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$
 Iambic Dimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

Beátus ille qui procul negótiis
 Ut prísca gens mortálium.

16. **Pythiambic Strophe I.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$
 Iambic Dimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

Nóx erat, ét caeló fulgébat lúna seréno
 Intér minora sídera.

17. **Pythiambic Strophe II.**, consisting of:

Dactylic Hexameter $\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$
 Iambic Trimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

Altera jám teritúr bellís civílibus áetas,
 Suís et ipsa Róma viribús ruit.

18. **Trochaic Strophe**, consisting of:

Trochaic Dimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$
 Iambic Trimeter $\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$

Nón ebur neque aúreum
 Meá renidet ín domo lacúnar.

19. **Lesser Ionics** (see 898).

Two Dipodies $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \end{array} \right.$
 Two Tripodies $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \\ \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \end{array} \right.$

Miserárum est neque amóri
 Dare lúdum neque dúlci
 Mala víno lavere áut exanimári
 Metuéntes patruáe verbera línguae.

928. INDEX TO THE METRES OF HORACE.

The references are to the numbers in the preceding paragraph.

LIB. I.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Maecenas atavis: 4. | 20. Vile potabis: 2. |
| 2. Jam satis terris: 2. | 21. Dianam tenerae: 7. |
| 3. Sic te diva: 5. | 22. Integer vitae: 2. |
| 4. Solvitur acris hiems: 13 | 23. Vitas hinnuleo: 7. |
| 5. Quis multa: 7. | 24. Quis desiderio: 6. |
| 6. Scriberis Vario: 6. | 25. Parcius junctas: 2. |
| 7. Laudabunt alii: 9. | 26. Musis amicus: 1. |
| 8. Lydia dic: 3. | 27. Natis in usum: 1. |
| 9. Vides ut alta: 1. | 28. Te maris: 9. |
| 10. Mercuri facunde nepos: 2. | 29. Icci beatis: 1. |
| 11. Tu ne quaesieris: 8. | 30. O Venus: 2. |
| 12. Quem virum: 2. | 31. Quid dedicatum: 1. |
| 13. Cum tu Lydia: 5. | 32. Poscimur: 2. |
| 14. O navis: 7. | 33. Albi ne doleas: 6. |
| 15. Pastor cum traheret: 6. | 34. Parcus deorum: 1. |
| 16. O matre pulchra: 1. | 35. O diva: 1. |
| 17. Velox amoenum: 1. | 36. Et ture: 5. |
| 18. Nullam Vare: 8. | 37. Nunc est bibendum: 1. |
| 19. Mater saeva: 5. | 38. Persicos odi: 2. |

LIB. II.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Motum ex Metello: 1. | 11. Quid bellicosus: 1. |
| 2. Nullus argento: 2. | 12. Nolis longa: 6. |
| 3. Aequam memento: 1. | 13. Ille et nefasto: 1. |
| 4. Ne sit ancillae: 2. | 14. Eheu fugaces: 1. |
| 5. Nondum subacta: 1. | 15. Jam pauca: 1. |
| 6. Septimi Gades: 2. | 16. Otium divos: 2. |
| 7. O saepe mecum: 1. | 17. Cur me querelis: 1. |
| 8. Ulla si juris: 2. | 18. Non ebur: 18. |
| 9. Non semper imbres: 1. | 19. Bacchum in remotis: 1. |
| 10. Rectius vives: 2. | 20. Non usitata: 1. |

LIB. III.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Odi profanum: 1. | 7. Quid fles: 7. |
| 2. Angustam amice: 1. | 8. Martiis caelebs: 2. |
| 3. Justum et tenacem: 1. | 9. Donec gratus: 5. |
| 4. Descende caelo: 1. | 10. Extremum Tanain: 6. |
| 5. Caelo tonantem: 1. | 11. Mercuri nam te: 2. |
| 6. Delicta majorum: 1. | 12. Miserarum est: 19. |

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 13. O fons Bandusiae: 7. | 22. Montium custos: 2. |
| 14. Herculis ritu: 2. | 23. Caelo supinas: 1. |
| 15. Uxor pauperis: 5. | 24. Intactis opulentior: 5. |
| 16. Inclusam Danaën: 6. | 25. Quo me Bacche: 5. |
| 17. Aeli vetusto: 1. | 26. Vixi puellis: 1. |
| 18. Faune nympharum: 2. | 27. Impios parrae: 2. |
| 19. Quantum distet: 5. | 28. Festo quid: 5. |
| 20. Non vides: 2. | 29. Tyrrhena regum: 1. |
| 21. O nata mecum: 1. | 30. Exegi monumentum: 4. |

LIB. IV.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Intermissa Venus: 5. | 9. Ne forte credas: 1. |
| 2. Pindarum quisquis: 2. | 10. O crudelis adhuc: 8. |
| 3. Quem tu Melpomene: 5. | 11. Est mihi nonum: 2. |
| 4. Qualem ministrum: 1. | 12. Jam veris comites: 6. |
| 5. Divis orte bonus: 6. | 13. Audivēre Lyce: 7. |
| 6. Dive quem proles: 2. | 14. Qua cura patrum: 1. |
| 7. Diffugēre nives: 10. | 15. Phoebus volentem: 1. |
| 8. Donarem pateras: 4. | <i>Carmen Saeculare</i> : 2. |

EPODES.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ibis liburnis: 15. | 10. Mala soluta: 15. |
| 2. Beatus ille: 15. | 11. Pecti nihil: 12. |
| 3. Parentis olim: 15. | 12. Quid tibi, vis: 9. |
| 4. Lupis et agnis: 15. | 13. Horrida tempestas: 11. |
| 5. At O deorum: 15. | 14. Mollis inertia: 16. |
| 6. Quid immerentes: 15. | 15. Nox erat: 16. |
| 7. Quo quo scelesti: 15. | 16. Altera jam: 17. |
| 8. Rogare longo: 15. | 17. Jam jam efficaci: 14. |
| 9. Quando repostum: 15. | |

MISCELLANEOUS.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

929. The **Roman Year**, by the reformed Calendar of *Julius Caesar*, had 365 days, divided as at present into 12 months:

Januarius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februarius,	28 “	Junius,	30 “	October,	31 “
Martius,	31 “	Quintilis,	31 “	November,	30 “
Aprilis,	30 “	Sextilis,	31 “	December.	31 “

Every fourth year the 24th of February (VI. Kal. Mart.) was counted twice giving 29 days to that month. The *Intercalary day* — 25th of February — was called his sextus.

In early times the year began in March; hence the names, Quintilis, Sextilis, September, etc. Quintilis and Sextilis were afterwards changed to Julius and Augustus, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

930. The first day of the month was called *Kalendæ* (*Calends*); on the *fifteenth* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *thirteenth* of the other months, were the *Idūs* (*Ides*); on the *seventh* day of March, May, July, and October, but the *fifth* of the other months were the *Nonæ* (*Nones*). To these the names of the months were added as Adjectives, as: *Kalendæ Januariæ* = *Jan. 1*; *Nonæ Februariæ* = *Febr. 5*; *Idus Martiæ* = *March 15*.

931. From these three points the days of the month were reckoned *backward* in the following manner: The *day before* each of them was expressed by *pridie* with the **Accusative**, as:

pridie Kalendas Januariās = *Dec. 31*.

pridie Nonas Januariās = *Jan. 4*.

pridie Idus Januariās = *Jan. 12*.

In counting further backward the point of departure was, by Roman custom, counted in the reckoning so that *ante diem tertium* Kal. Jan. means *two days before the Calends of January*; *ante diem quartum* Kal. Jan., *three days before the Calends of January*, and so on. This combination is treated as *one indeclinable word*, so that it can be used with prepositions, as: *ex ante diem III. Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kal. Septembres*, *from June 3 to August 31*.

932. In stating the day of a month, two different constructions are used. The original construction is *die tertio ante Kalendas Martias*, *February 27.*; but *die* and *ante* are regularly omitted, thus: *tertio Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *III. Kal. Mart.* The other form is: *ante diem tertium Kalendas Martias*, or in figures: *a. d. III. Kal. Mart.*

933.

CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

*Days of
our months.*

January.

February.

1.	KALENDIS JAN.	KALENDIS FEB.
2.	IV. Nonas Jan.	IV. Nonas Feb.
3.	III. " "	III. " "
4.	prid. " "	prid. " "
5.	NONIS JAN.	NONIS FEB.
6.	VIII. Idus Jan.	VIII. Idus Feb.
7.	VII. " "	VII. " "
8.	VI. " "	VI. " "
9.	V. " "	V. " "
10.	IV. " "	IV. " "
11.	III. " "	III. " "
12.	prid. " "	prid. " "
13.	IDIBUS JAN.	IDIBUS FEB.
14.	XIX. Kalendas Feb.	XVI. Kalendas Mart.
15.	XVIII. " "	XV. " "
16.	XVII. " "	XIV. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XIII. " "
18.	XV. " "	XII. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XI. " "
20.	XIII. " "	X. " "
21.	XII. " "	IX. " "
22.	XI. " "	VIII. " "
23.	X. " "	VII. " "
24.	IX. " "	VI. " "
25.	VIII. " "	V. " "
26.	VII. " "	IV. " "
27.	VI. " "	III. " "
28.	V. " "	prid. " "
29.	IV. " "	[prid. Kal. Mart. in leap-
30.	III. " "	year, the VI. Kal. (24th)
31.	prid. " "	being counted twice.]

(So *Aug.*, *Dec.*)

*Days of
our months.*

March.

April.

1.	KALENDIS MART.	KALENDIS APR.
2.	VI. Nonas Mart.	IV. Nonas Apr.
3.	V. " "	III. " "
4.	IV. " "	prid. " "
5.	III. " "	NONIS APR.
6.	prid. " "	VIII. Idus Apr.
7.	NONIS MART.	VII. " "
8.	VIII. Idus Mart.	VI. " "
9.	VII. " "	V. " "
10.	VI. " "	IV. " "
11.	V. " "	III. " "
12.	IV. " "	prid. " "
13.	III. " "	IDIBUS APR.
14.	prid. " "	XVIII. Kalendas Maias.
15.	IDIBUS MART.	XVII. " "
16.	XVII. Kalendas Aprilis.	XVI. " "
17.	XVI. " "	XV. " "
18.	XV. " "	XIV. " "
19.	XIV. " "	XIII. " "
20.	XIII. " "	XII. " "
21.	XII. " "	XI. " "
22.	XI. " "	X. " "
23.	X. " "	IX. " "
24.	IX. " "	VIII. " "
25.	VIII. " "	VII. " "
26.	VII. " "	VI. " "
27.	VI. " "	V. " "
28.	V. " "	IV. " "
29.	IV. " "	III. " "
30.	III. " "	prid. " "
31.	prid. " "	(So June, Sept., Nov.)

(So May, July, Oct.)

934. To turn Roman dates into English:

For **Calends**: Add *two* to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

For **Ides** and **Nones**: Add *one* to the date of the Nones and Ides of the month in question, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES: a. d. VIII. Kal. Febr. ($31 + 2 - 8$) = *Jan. 25.*

a. d. IV. Non. Mart. ($7 + 1 - 4$) = *March 4.*

a. d. IV. Id. Sept. ($13 + 1 - 4$) = *Sept. 10.*

935. The **Year** was designated by the names of the Consuls for that year: but was also reckoned from the building of the City (*ab urbe condita*, *anno urbis conditæ*) which, according to Varro, corresponds with the 753d year B. C. In order to reduce such dates to those of the Christian era, if the given number be less than 754, subtract it from the latter, and the remainder will be the year B. C. as: a. u. c. 691 (the year of Cicero's consulship) = B. C. 63; if greater than 753, subtract 753 from it, and the remainder will be the year after Christ (A. D.), as: a. u. c. 767 (the year of Augustus' death) = 14 A. D.

936. The **Week** of seven days (*hebdōmas*) was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were named from the planets:

dies Solis, <i>Sunday</i>	dies Jovis, <i>Thursday</i>
dies Lunæ, <i>Monday</i>	dies Venëris, <i>Friday</i>
dies Martis, <i>Tuesday</i>	dies Saturni, <i>Saturday</i> .
dies Mercurii, <i>Wednesday</i>	

ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

937. The **Coins** of the Romans were in early times of copper. The *ās*, being originally the unit of currency, was nominally a pound weight, but was reduced by degrees to one twenty-fourth of its original weight and value. In the third century silver coins were introduced; the *denarius* = 10 *asses*, and the *sestertius* = $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses* (*sestertius* = *semis-tertius*, *half third*, represented by IIS or HS = duo et semis, $2\frac{1}{2}$).

938. The *Sestertius* was the ordinary coin of the Romans, by which the largest sums were reckoned. Gold was introduced later, the *aurëus* being equal to 100 *sesterces*. The value of these coins is seen in the following:

1 as	nearly 2 cents.
$2\frac{1}{2}$ asses = 1 sestertius or nummus (HS)	" 4 "
10 asses = 4 sestertii = 1 denarius	" 16 "
1000 sestertii = 1 sestertium	\$40.00

939. The *Sestertium* was a sum of money, not a coin. Though probably the genitive plural of *sestertius*, the word is inflected regularly as a neuter noun, thus: *tria sestertia* = \$120.00. When joined with the multiplicative adverbs it denotes a sum of *a hundred thousand*, *centena milia* being omitted, thus: *decies sestertium*, *a million* = \$40,000.

940. The Roman **Measures of Length** are the following:

12 uncīae, *inches* = 1 pes, *Roman foot* (11.6 *Engl. inches*)

1 cubitus, *cubit* = $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet

1 gradus, *step* = $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet

1 passus, *pace* = 5 feet

mille passuum, *1000 paces* = 1 mile (4850 *Engl. feet*).

941. The basis of **Square Measure** was the jugĕrum, an area of 240 Roman feet long and 120 broad, a little less than $\frac{2}{3}$ of an English acre.

942. The **Measures of Weight** are:

12 uncīae (*ounces*) = one pound (*libra*, about $\frac{3}{4}$ lb. avoirdupois).

Fractional parts (weight or coin) are:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ($\frac{1}{12}$), uncīa; | 5. ($\frac{5}{12}$), quincunx; | 9. ($\frac{3}{4}$), dodrans; |
| 2. ($\frac{1}{6}$), sextans; | 6. ($\frac{1}{2}$), semissis; | 10. ($\frac{5}{6}$), dextans; |
| 3. ($\frac{1}{4}$), quadrans; | 7. ($\frac{7}{12}$), septunx; | 11. ($\frac{11}{12}$), deunx; |
| 4. ($\frac{1}{3}$), triens; | 8. ($\frac{2}{3}$), bessis; | 12. As . |

The **Talent** was a Greek weight = 60 *librae*.

943. The **Measures of Capacity** are:

12 cyāthi = 1 sextarius (*nearly a pint*).

16 sextarīi = 1 modius (*peck*).

6 sextarīi = 1 congius (*3 quarts, liquid measure*).

8 congii = 1 amphōra (*6 gallons*).

944.

ABBREVIATIONS.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A., absolvo. | N. L., non liquet. |
| A. Chr., ante Christum. | Non., Nonae. |
| A. D., ante diem. | P. C., patres conscripti. |
| A. U. C., anno urbis conditae. | P. M., pontifex maximus. |
| C., condemno. | P. R., populus Romanus. |
| Cos., consul. Coss., consules. | Pr., praetor. |
| D. D., dono dedit. | Proc., proconsul. |
| D. D. D., dat, dicat, dedicat. | Q. B. F. F. Q. S., quod bonum felix |
| Des., designatus. | faustumque sit. |
| F., filius. | Quir., Quirites. |
| H. S., sestertius. | Resp., respublica. |
| Ictus, jurisconsultus. | S., senatus. |
| Id., idus. | S. C., senatus consultum. |
| Imp., imperator. | S. D. P., salutem dicit plurimam. |
| J. O. M., Jovi optimo maximo. | S. P. Q. R., Senatus Populusque |
| K., Kal., Kalendae. | Romanus. |
| Leg., legatus, legio. | Tr. pl., tribunus plebis. |

945. PRINCIPAL LATIN AUTHORS.

T. Maccius Plautus	B.C.254-184
<i>Comedies.</i>	
Q. Ennius	239-169
<i>Annals, Satires, &c. (Fragments).</i>	
M. Porcius Cato	236-149
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &c.</i>	
M. Pacuvius	220-130
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
P. Terentius Afer (TERENCE)	195-159
<i>Comedies.</i>	
C. Lucilius	149-103
<i>Satires (Fragments).</i>	
L. Attius (or Accius)	170-75
<i>Tragedies (Fragments).</i>	
M. Terentius Varro	116-28
<i>Husbandry, Antiquities, &c.</i>	
M. Tullius Cicero	106-43
<i>Orations, Letters, Dialogues.</i>	
C. Julius Caesar	100-44
<i>Commentaries.</i>	
T. Lucretius Carus	99-55
<i>Poem "De Rerum Natura".</i>	
C. Valerius Catullus	87-47
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
C. Sallustius Crispus (SALLUST)	86-35
<i>Histories.</i>	
Cornelius Nepos	90-
<i>Lives of Famous Commanders.</i>	
P. Vergilius Maro (VIRGIL)	70-19
<i>Eclogues, Georgis, Aeneid.</i>	
Q. Horatius Flaccus (HORACE)	65-8
<i>Satires, Odes, Epistles.</i>	
Albius Tibullus	54-18
<i>Elegies.</i>	
Sex. Aurelius Propertius	49-15
<i>Elegies.</i>	
T. Livius Patavinus (LIVY)	B.C.59-A.D.17
<i>Roman History.</i>	

P. Ovidius Naso (OVID)	B.C. 43—A.D. 16
<i>Metamorphoses, Fasti, &c.</i>	
C. Velleius Paterculus	B.C. 19—A.D. 31
<i>Roman History.</i>	
M. Valerius Maximus	A.D.—31
<i>Anecdotes, &c.</i>	
Pomponius Mela	—50
<i>Husbandry & Geography.</i>	
A. Persius Flaccus	34—62
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Seneca	—65
<i>Philos. Letters, &c.; Tragedies.</i>	
M. Annæus Lucanus	38—65
<i>Historical Poem "Pharsalia".</i>	
Q. Curtius Rufus	?
<i>History of Alexander.</i>	
C. Plinius Secundus (PLINY)	23—79
<i>Nat. Hist., &c.</i>	
C. Valerius Flaccus	—88
<i>Heroic Poem "Argonautica".</i>	
P. Papinius Statius	45—96
<i>Heroic Poems "Thebais", &c.</i>	
C. Silius Italicus	25—100
<i>Heroic Poem "Punica".</i>	
D. Junius Juvenalis (JUVENAL)	42—121
<i>Satires.</i>	
L. Annæus Florus	—120
<i>Historical Abridgment.</i>	
M. Valerius Martialis (MARTIAL)	43—104
<i>Epigrams.</i>	
M. Fabius Quintilianus	40—118
<i>Rhetoric.</i>	
C. Cornelius Tacitus	57—118
<i>Annals, History, &c.</i>	
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (PLINY JUNIOR)	62—113
<i>Letters.</i>	
C. Suetonius Tranquillus	70—150
<i>The Twelve Cæsars.</i>	

Apulēius	A. D. 110-
<i>Philos. Writings, "Metamorphoses".</i>	
A. Gellius	-180
<i>Miscellanies, "Noctes Atticæ".</i>	
*Q. Septimius Florens Tertullianus	160-220
<i>Apologist.</i>	
*M. Minucius Felix	-250
<i>Apologetic Dialogue, "Octavius".</i>	
*Firmianus Lactantius	250-325
<i>Theology.</i>	
D. Magnus Ausonius	-380
<i>Miscellaneous Poems.</i>	
Ammianus Marcellinus	-395
<i>Roman History.</i>	
Claudius Claudianus	-408
<i>Poems, Panegyrics, &c.</i>	
*Aurelius Prudentius Clemens	348-410
<i>Christian Poems.</i>	
*Aurelius Augustinus	354-430
<i>Confessions, Discourses, &c.</i>	
Anicius Manlius Boethius	470-520
<i>Philosophical Dialogues.</i>	

* *Christian writers.*

INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index contains all the *Simple Verbs* in common use which involve any important irregularities, with such of their *Compounds* as require particular notice. — *The references are to paragraphs.*

A.

ābēō, -īrē, *to go away*, 407
 ābīgō, -ērē, *to drive away*, 383
 ablūō, -ērē, *to wash (off)*, 366
 abnūō, -ērē, *to dissent*, 366
 ābōlēō, -ērē, *to abolish*, 356
 ābōlescō, -ērē, *to disappear*, 394
 abscondō, -ērē, *to tear off*, 374
 abscondō, -ērē, *to hide*, 372
 absistō, -ērē, *to cease*, 374
 absolvō, -ērē, *to acquit*, 366
 abstergēō, -ērē, *to wipe off*, 360
 abstīnēō, -ērē, *to abstain*, 358
 absūm, ābessē, *to be absent*, 306
 absūmō, -ērē, *to use up*, 385
 ābūtōr, -ī, *to use, abuse*, 396
 accēdō, -ērē, *to approach*, 374
 accendō, -ērē, *to kindle*, 373
 acciō, -īrē, *to call in*, 362
 accipiō, -ērē, *to receive*, 368
 accūbō, -ārē, *to lie near*, 347
 accumbō, -ērē, *to recline at table*, 376
 accurrō, -ērē, *to run to*, 387
 ācescō, -ērē, *to turn sour*, 394
 acquirō, -ērē, *to acquire*, 389
 ācūō, -ērē, *to sharpen*, 366
 adfērō, -rē, *to afford*, 404
 ādhaerēō, -ērē, *to stick*, 360
 ādīmō, -ērē, *to take away*, 389
 ādīpiscōr, -ī, *to obtain*, 396
 adjungō, -ērē, *to join (to)*, 378
 adjūvō, -ārē, *to assist*, 348

admittō, -ērē, *to admit*, 374
 adnūō, -ērē, *to nod assent*, 366
 ādōlēō, -ērē, *to grow up*, 356
 ādōlescō, -ērē, *to grow up*, 394
 ādōrīōr, -īrī, *to attack*, 399
 adsistō, -ērē, *to stand by*, 374
 adsūm, ādessē, *to be present*, 306
 aegrescō, -ērē, *to fall sick*, 395
 affligō, -ērē, *to dash*, 378
 āgē, *come*, 417
 aggrēdiōr, -ī, *to attack*, 396
 agnoscō, -ērē, *to acknowledge*, 393
 āgō, -ērē, *to drive, do*, 383
 ājō, *I say*, 416
 albēō, -ērē, *to be white*, 354
 algēō, -ērē, *to be cold*, 360
 allēgō, -ērē, *to choose*, 383
 allīciō, -ērē, *to allure*, 368
 allidō, -ērē, *to dash against*, 371
 allinō, -ērē, *to besmear*, 388
 allōquōr, -ī, *to address*, 396
 ālō, -ērē, *to nourish*, 386
 ambīgō, -ērē, *to contend*, 383
 ambīō, -īrē, *to go about*, 408
 āmīciō, -īrē, *to clothe*, 398
 āmittō, -ērē, *to lose*, 374
 amplectōr, -ī, *to embrace*, 396
 angō, -ērē, *to torment, vex*, 381
 anquirō, -ērē, *to search after*, 389
 antēcēllō, -ērē, *to excel*, 386
 antēpōnō, -ērē, *to prefer*, 386
 antistō, -ārē, *to excel*, 349

āpāgĕ, *be gone*, 417
 āpĕrīō, -īrĕ, *to open*, 398
 āpiscōr, -ī, *to reach after*, 396
 applaudō, -ĕrĕ, *to applaud*, 371
 applicō, -ārĕ, *to apply*, 347
 appōnō, -ĕrĕ, *to put by*, 386
 arcĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to keep off*, 353
 arcessō, -ĕrĕ, *to summon*, 390
 ardĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to burn*, 360
 ārĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be dry*, 353
 ārescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become dry*, 394
 argūō, -ĕrĕ, *to accuse*, 366
 arridĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to smile upon*, 360
 arripīō, -ĕrĕ, *to seize*, 368
 ascendō, -ĕrĕ, *to ascend*, 373
 aspiciō, -ĕrĕ, *to look*, 368
 assentiōr, -īrī, *to assent*, 399
 assēquōr, -ī, *to pursue*, 396
 assidĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit by*, 361
 assidō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit down*, 374
 assuescō, -ĕrĕ, *to be accustomed*,
 393
 attendō, -ĕrĕ, *to attend to*, 371
 attinĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to belong*, 358
 attingō, -ĕrĕ, *to touch*, 382
 audĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to dare*, 363
 aufĕrō, -rĕ, *to carry away*, 404
 augĕō -ĕrĕ, *to increase*, 359
 augescō, -ĕrĕ, *to augment*, 394
 āvē, *hail*, 417
 āvellō, -ĕrĕ, *to pull down*, 389
 āvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to long for*, 354

B.

bībō, -ĕrĕ, *to drink*, 376

C.

cādō, -ĕrĕ, *to fall*, 371
 caedō, -ĕrĕ, *to fell*, 371
 cālescō, -ĕrĕ, *to become warm*,
 394
 callĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be versed*, 353

calvēō, -ĕrĕ, *to be bald*, 354
 candĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to shine*, 353
 candō, *I burn*, 373
 cānĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to be gray*, 354
 cānō, -ĕrĕ, *to sing*, 387
 cāpessō, -ĕrĕ, *to lay hold of*, 390
 cāpīō, -ĕrĕ, *to take*, 331, 368
 carpō, -ĕrĕ, *to pluck*, 375
 cāvĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to take heed*, 357
 cĕdō, *give*, 417
 cĕdō, -ĕrĕ, *to yield*, 374
 cellō, *I impel*, 386
 cĕnō, -ārĕ, *to dine*, 278
 censĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to value, think*, 358
 cernō, -ĕrĕ, *to see, discern*, 388
 cettĕ, *give*, 417
 cīĕō, -ĕrĕ } *to rouse*, 362
 cīō, -īrĕ }
 cingō, -ĕrĕ, *to gird*, 378
 circumdō, -ārĕ, *to surround*, 349
 circumfundō, -ĕrĕ, *to surround*,
 373
 circumsĕdĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to sit around*,
 361
 circumstō, -ārĕ, *to stand around*,
 349
 clangō, -ĕrĕ, *to clang*, 381
 claudō, -ĕrĕ, *to shut, close*, 371
 cōālescō, -ĕrĕ, *to grow together*,
 394
 cōargūō, -ĕrĕ, *to convict*, 366
 cōĕmō, -ĕrĕ, *to buy together*, 389
 coepī, coepissĕ, *to have begun*, 415
 cognoscō, -ĕrĕ, *to know*, 393
 cōgō, -ĕrĕ, *to force (cō-āgō)*, 383
 cōhaerĕō, -ĕrĕ, *to stick*, 360
 collidō, -ĕrĕ, *to dash together*,
 371
 colligō, -ĕrĕ, *to collect*, 383
 cōlō, -ĕrĕ, *to cultivate*, 386
 combūrō, -ĕrĕ, *to burn (wholly)*,
 389

commīniscōr, -ī, to devise, 396
 committō, -ērē, to commit, 374
 cōmō, -ērē, to adorn, 385
 compescō, -ērē, to restrain, 393
 compingō, -ērē, to drive tight, 382
 complēō, -ērē, to fill (up), 356
 comprimō, -ērē, to press together, 389
 concinō, -ērē, to sound together, 387
 concīō, -īrē, to call together, 362
 conclūdō, -ērē, to shut up, 371
 concūpiscō, -ērē, to covet, 394
 concurrō, -ērē, to run together, 387
 concūtīō, -ērē, to shake, 368
 condō, -ērē, to found, 372
 condōlescō, -ērē, to feel pain, 394
 confērō, -rē, to collect, 404
 conficīō, -ērē, to make, 368
 confidō, -ērē, to confide, 373
 confitēōr, -ērī, to confess, 364
 confīgō, -ērē, to fight, 378
 confōdīō, -ērē, to pick out, 368
 confringō, -ērē, to break in two, 383
 congērō, -ērē, to bring together, 389
 congrūō, -ērē, to agree, 366
 cōnīvēō, -ērē, to shut the eyes, 357
 consciscō, -ērē, to bring upon, 394
 conscribō, -ērē, to frame, 375
 consērō, -ērē, to plant, 388
 considō, -ērē, to settle, 374
 conspergō, -ērē, to sprinkle, 384
 constō, -ārē, to consist, 349
 constrūō, -ērē, to construct, 367
 consuescō, -ērē, to be wont, 393
 consūlō, -ērē, to counsel, 386
 consumō, -ērē, to consume, 385

contemnō, -ērē, to despise, 385
 contendō, -ērē, to exert, 371
 contērō, -ērē, to rub off, 388
 conticescō, -ērē, to become still, 394
 continēō, -ērē, to hold together, 358
 contrāhō, -ērē, to contract, 378
 contrēmiscō, -ērē, to tremble, 394
 contribūō, -ērē, to contribute, 366
 contundō, -ērē, to break down, 371
 convālescō, -ērē, to recover, 394
 cōquō, -ērē, to cook, bake, 378
 corrīgō, -ērē, to correct, 378
 corrumpō, -ērē, to corrupt, 376
 corrūō, -ērē, to fall to the ground, 366
 crēbrescō, -ērē, to become frequent, 395
 crēdō, -ērē, to believe, 372
 crēpō, -ārē, to creak, 347
 crescō, -ērē, to grow, 393
 cūbō, -ārē, to lie down, 347
 cūdō, -ērē, to forge, 373
 cūpīō, -ērē, to desire, 332, 368
 currō, -ērē, to run, 370, 387

D.

decernō, -ērē, to determine, 388
 decerpō, -ērē, to pluck, 375
 dēcēt, it becomes, 420
 dēcidō, -ērē, to cut down, 371
 dēcīpīō, -ērē, to deceive, 368
 dēdēcēt, it is unbecoming, 420
 dēdiscō, -ērē, to unlearn, 393
 dēfendō, -ērē, to defend, 373
 dēfētiscōr, -ī, to be worn out, 396
 dēfungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396
 dēglūbō, -ērē, to skin, 375
 dēgō, -ērē, to spend (dē-āgō), 383

dělěō, -ěřě, *to destroy*, 351, 356
dělīgō, -ěřě, *to choose*, 383
dělītescō, -ěřě, *to hide away*, 394
dēmō, -ěřě, *to take away*, 385
dēpellō, -ěřě, *to dispel*, 387
dēpenděō, -ěřě, *to hang down*,
361
dēposcō, -ěřě, *to request*, 393
dēpsō, -ěřě, *to knead*, 390
dērīděō, -ěřě, *to laugh at*, 360
describō, -ěřě, *to describe*, 375
dēsēcō, -ārě, *to cut down*, 347
dēsērō, -ěřě, *to forsake*, 388
dēsīnō, -ěřě, *to leave off*, 388
dēsīpīō, -ěřě, *to be foolish*, 368
despīcīō, -ěřě, *to despise*, 368
desponděō, -ěřě, *to promise*, 361
dēsūm, deessě, *to be wanting*, 306
dētēgō, -ěřě, *to discover*, 378
dētērō, -ěřě, *to wear away*, 388
dēvincīō, -īřě, *to bind*, 398
dēvōvēō, -ěřě, *to vow, devote*, 357
dicō, -ěřě, *to say, tell*, 336, 378
diffērō, -řě, *to defer*, 404
diffītěōr, -ērī, *to disavow*, 364
diffundō, -ěřě, *to pour forth*, 373
dilābōr, -ī, *to fall asunder*, 396
dilīgō, -ěřě, *to love*, 383
dīmīcō, -ārě, *to fight*, 347
dīrīgō, -ěřě, *to direct*, 378
dīrūō, -ěřě, *to destroy*, 366
discernō, -ěřě, *to distinguish*, 388
discerpō, -ěřě, *to tear asunder*,
375
discindō, -ěřě, *to split*, 374
discō, -ěřě, *to learn*, 370, 393
discrepō, -ārě, *to disagree*, 347
dissērō, -ěřě, *to discourse*, 388
dissīděō, -ěřě, *to disagree*, 361
dissīlīō, -īřě, *to burst asunder*,
398
dissuāděō, -ěřě, *to dissuade*, 360

distinguō, -ěřě, *to distinguish*,
378
distō, -ārě, *to be distant*, 349
distribūō, -ěřě, *to distribute*, 366
dītescō, -ěřě, *to grow rich*, 395
dīvidō, -ěřě, *to divide*, 371
dō, -ārě, *to give*, 349, 370
dōcěō, -ěřě, *to teach*, 358
dōmō, -ārě, *to tame*, 347
dūcō, -ěřě, *to lead*, 336, 378
dulcescō, -ěřě, *to become sweet*,
395
dūrescō, -ěřě, *to grow hard*, 395

E.

ēdiscō, -ěřě, *to learn by heart*,
393
ēdō, -ěřě, *to eat*, 373, 410
ēdō, -ěřě, *to give out*, 372
ēducō, -ěřě, *to lead forth*, 378
effērō, -řě, *to carry out*, 404
effervescō, -ěřě, *to boil up*, 394
efflōrescō, -ěřě, *to begin to*
bloom, 394
effōdīō, -ěřě, *to dig out*, 368
effringō, -ěřě, *to break open*, 383
effundō, -ěřě, *to pour out*, 373
ēgěō, -ěřě, *to be in want*, 353
ēlīcīō, -ěřě, *to entice out*, 368
ēlīdō, -ěřě, *to strike out*, 371
ēlīgō, -ěřě, *to elect*, 383
ēmīcō, -ārě, *to shine forth*, 347
ēmīněō, -ěřě, *to be prominent*,
353
ēmō, -ěřě, *to buy*, 389
ēnēcō, -ārě, *to slay*, 347
ěō, īřě, *to go*, 406
ērūbescō, -ěřě, *to turn red*, 394
ērumpō, -ěřě, *to break out*, 376
ērūō, -ěřě, *to dig out*, 366
ēsūrīō, -īřě, *to want to eat*, 398
ēvādō, -ěřě, *to turn out*, 371

ēvānescō, -ērē, to vanish, 395
 ēvertō, -ērē, to overthrow, 373
 ēvōmō, -ērē, to vomit up, 386
 exardescō, -ērē, to take fire, 394
 excellō, -ērē, to excel, 386
 excidō, -ērē, to hew out, 371
 excindō, -ērē, to destroy, 374
 exhauriō, -irē, to exhaust, 398
 expergiscōr, -ī, to awake, 396
 expēriōr, -irī, to try, 399
 explicō, -ārē, to unfold, 347
 explōdō, -ērē, to hiss off, 371
 exposcō, -ērē, to request earnestly, 393
 exprimō, -ērē, to press out, 389
 existō, -ērē, to come forth, 374
 extingūō, -ērē, to put out, 378
 extō, -ārē, to exist, 349
 extendō, -ērē, to stretch out, 371
 extimescō, -ērē, to fear, 394
 exūō, -ērē, to put off, 366

F.

fācessō, -ērē, to accomplish, 390
 fāciō, -ērē, to do, make, 368
 fallō, -ērē, to cheat, 387
 farcīō, -irē, to stuff, 398
 fārī, to speak, 416
 fātēōr, -ērī, to confess, 364
 fāvēō, -ērē, to favor, 357
 fendō, I fend, 373
 fērīō, -irē, to strike, beat, 398
 fērō, -rē, to bear, 336, 389, 403
 fērōciō, -irē, to be unruly, 398
 fervēō, -ērē, to glow, 357
 fidō, -ērē, to trust, confide, 373
 figō, -ērē, to fix, 379
 findō, -ērē, to split, cleave, 374
 fingō, -ērē, to fashion, 379
 tiō, fiērī, to become, 368, 411
 flāvēō, -ērē, to be golden yellow, 354

flāvescō, -ērē, to become yellow, 394
 flectō, -ērē, to bend, 380
 flēō, -ērē, to weep, 356
 fligō, -ērē, to strike, 378
 flōrēō, -ērē, to blossom, 353
 fluctūō, -ārē, to wave, 365
 flūō, -ērē, to flow, 367
 fōdiō, -ērē, to dig, 332, 368
 fōrēm, I should be, 418
 fōvēō, -ērē, to cherish, 357
 frangō, -ērē, to break, 385
 frēmō, -ērē, to growl, 386
 frīcō, -ārē, to rub, 347
 frīgēō, -ērē, to be cold, 359
 frūōr, -ī, to enjoy, 396
 fūgiō, -ērē, to flee, 332, 368
 fulciō, -irē, to support, 398
 fulgēō, -ērē, to shine, 360
 fundō, -ērē, to pour, 373
 fungōr, -ī, to discharge, 396
 fūrō, -ērē, to rage, 389

G.

gaudēō, -ērē, to rejoice, 363
 gēmō, -ērē, to groan, 386
 gērō, -ērē, to carry on, 389
 gignō, -ērē, to beget, 386
 gliscō, -ērē, to grow up, 393
 glūbō, -ērē, to peel, 375
 grādīōr, -ī, to step, 396
 grandescō, -ērē, to grow, 395
 grāvescō, -ērē, to grow heavy, 395
 grūō or rūō? 366

H.

haerēō, -ērē, to hang, 360
 hauriō, -irē, to draw, 398
 hēbēō, -ērē, to be blunt, 354
 hēbescō, -ērē, to grow dull, 394
 hiscō, -ērē, to yawn, 394

horrēō, -ērē, *to shudder*, 353
 horrescō, -ērē, *to stand on end*,
 394
 hūmēō, -ērē, *to be moist*, 354

I.

icō, -ērē, *to strike*, 383
 illinō, -ērē, *to bedaub*, 388
 illūcescō, -ērē, *to grow light*,
 394
 illūdō, -ērē, *to mock*, 371
 imbūō, -ērē, *to dip, dye*, 366
 immīnēō, -ērē, *to threaten*, 354
 immīnūō, -ērē, *to lessen*, 366
 impendēō, -ērē, *to hang over*,
 361
 implēō, -ērē, *to fill (up)*, 356
 implicō, -ārē, *to involve*, 347
 incessō, -ērē, *to fall upon*, 390
 incīdō, -ērē, *to fall into*, 371
 incīdō, -ērē, *to engrave*, 371
 incīpīō, -ērē, *to begin*, 368
 incōlō, -ērē, *to inhabit*, 386
 incrēpō, -ārē, *to scold*, 347
 incūbō, -ārē, *to lie upon*, 347
 indicō, -ērē, *to declare*, 378
 indīgēō, -ērē, *to be in want*, 353
 indōlescō, -ērē, *to feel pain*, 394
 indulgēō, -ērē, *to indulge*, 359
 indūō, -ērē, *to put on*, 366
 inēō, -īrē, *to go into*, 407
 infērō, -rē, *to carry into*, 404
 ingēmiscō, -ērē, *to groan*, 394
 ingrūō, -ērē, *to rush*, 366
 innōtescō, -ērē, *to become known*,
 395
 inquām, *I say*, 416
 inquirō, -ērē, *to inquire*, 389
 insērō, -ērē, *to plant in*, 388
 insērō, -ērē, *to insert*, 388
 insīdēō, -ērē, *to sit upon*, 361
 instrūō, -ērē, *to instruct*, 367

insūm, īnessē, *to be in*, 306
 intēgrascō, -ērē, *to begin anew*,
 395
 intellēgō, -ērē, *to understand*,
 383
 interēō, -īrē, *to perish*, 407
 interficiō, -ērē, *to kill*, 368, 413
 intersūm, intēressē, *to be between*,
 306
 intūnescō, -ērē, *to swell*, 394
 invēnīō, -īrē, *to find out*, 398
 invētērascō, -ērē, *to grow old*,
 394
 invīdēō, -ērē, *to envy*, 361
 irascōr, -ī, *to grow angry*, 396
 irrēpō, -ērē, *to creep into*, 375

J.

jācīō, -ērē, *to throw*, 368
 jūbēō, -ērē, *to order*, 360
 jungō, -ērē, *to join*, 378
 jūrō, -ārē, *to swear*, 278
 jūvenescō, -ērē, *to grow young*,
 395
 jūvō, -ārē, *to assist*, 348

L.

lābōr, -ī, *to glide, roll on*, 396
 lācessō, -ērē, *to excite*, 390
 lācīō, *I entice*, 368
 laedō, -ērē, *to violate, hurt*, 371
 lambō, -ērē, *to lick*, 376
 languēō, -ērē, *to be weary*, 353
 lātēō, -ērē, *to be hid*, 353
 lāvō, -ārē, *to wash*, 348
 lēgō, -ērē, *to read*, 383
 lībēt, *it pleases*, 420
 līcēt, *it is lawful*, 420
 līnō, -ērē, *to smear*, 388
 linquō, -ērē, *to leave*, 383
 līquēfācīō, -ērē, *to liquefy*, 413
 līquēō, -ērē, *to be fluid*, 353

liquet, *it is clear*, 420
 livēō, -ērē, *to be pale*, 354
 lōquōr, -ī, *to speak*, 396
 lūcēō, -ērē, *to shine*, 359
 lūdō, -ērē, *to play*, 371
 lūgēō, -ērē, *to mourn*, 359
 lūō, -ērē, *to atone for*, 366
 lūō, -ērē, *to wash*, 366

M.

macrescō, -ērē, *to grow meager*,
 395
 mādēō, -ērē, *to be wet*, 353
 maerēō, -ērē, *to grieve*, 354
 mālō, mallē, *to be more willing*,
 405
 mandō, -ērē, *to chew*, 373
 mănēō, -ērē, *to remain*, 360
 mansuēfācīō, -ērē, *to tame*, 413
 mātūrescō, -ērē, *to ripen*, 395
 mēdēōr, -ērī, *to cure*, 364
 mēmīnī, -issē, *to remember*, 415
 mergō, -ērē, *to dip in*, 384
 mētīōr, -īrī, *to measure*, 399
 mētō, -ērē, *to reap*, 374
 mētūō, -ērē, *to fear*, 366
 micō, -ārē, *to shine*, 347
 mīniscōr, *I recollect*, 396
 mīnūō, -ērē, *to lessen*, 366
 miscēō, -ērē, *to mix*, 358
 mīsērēōr, -ērī, *to have pity*, 364
 miseret, *it excites pity*, 420
 mītescō, -ērē, *to become mild*,
 395
 mittō, -ērē, *to send*, 374
 mōlō, -ērē, *to grind*, 386
 mordēō, -ērē, *to bite*, 361
 mōrīōr, -ī, *to die*, 396
 mōvēō, -ērē, *to move*, 357
 mulcēō, -ērē, *to soothe*, 360
 mulgēō, -ērē, *to milk*, 360

N.

nanciscōr, -ī, *to get*, 396
 nascōr, -ī, *to be born*, 396
 nectō, -ērē, *to tie*, 380
 neglēgō, -ērē, *to neglect*, 383
 nēō, -ērē, *to spin*, 356
 nēquēō, -īrē, *not to be able*, 409
 nīgrescō, -ērē, *to become black*,
 395
 ningō, -ērē, *to snow*, 381
 nītēō, -ērē, *to glitter*, 353
 nītōr, -ī, *to stay one's self on*, 396
 nōlō, nollē, *to be unwilling*, 405
 noscō, -ērē, *to (learn to) know*,
 393
 nūbō, -ērē, *to marry*, 375
 nūō, *I nod*, 366

O.

obdormiscō, -ērē, *to fall asleep*,
 394
 ōbēō, -īrē, *to meet*, 407
 objīcīō, -ērē, *to throw to*, 368
 obliviscōr, -ī, *to forget*, 396
 obmūtescō, -ērē, *to grow dumb*,
 395
 obrūō, -ērē, *to cover*, 366
 obsīdēō, -ērē, *to besiege*, 361
 obsistō, -ērē, *to oppose*, 374
 obsōlēō, -ērē, *to go out of use*,
 356
 obsōlescō, -ērē, *to become ob-*
solete, 394
 obsūm, ōbessē, *to be in the way*,
 306
 obtīnēō, -ērē, *to occupy*, 358
 obtundō, -ērē, *to stun*, 371
 occīdō, -ērē, *to set*, 371
 occīdō, -ērē, *to kill*, 371
 occūlō, -ērē, *to conceal*, 386
 occurō, -ērē, *to meet*, 387
 ōdī, -issē, *to hate*, 415

offendō, -ērē, to offend, 373
 ōlēō, -ērē, to smell, 353
 ōlēō, I grow, 356
 oportet, it is needful, 420
 oppērīōr, -īrī, to await, 399
 oppōnō, -ērē, to oppose, 386
 ordīōr, -īrī, to begin, 399
 ōrīōr, -īrī, to rise, 399
 ostendō, -ērē, to show, 371

P.

pāciscōr, -ī, to strike a bargain, 396
 paenītēt, it causes sorrow, 420
 pallēō, -ērē, to look pale, 353
 pallescō, -ērē, to turn pale, 394
 pandō, -ērē, to spread, 374
 pangō, -ērē, to strike, drive, 382
 pangō, -ērē, to bargain, 382
 parcō, -ērē, to spare, 382
 pārīō, -ērē, to bring forth, 368
 pascō, -ērē, to graze, 393
 pascōr, -ī, to feed, 396
 pātēfācīō, -ērē, to open, 332, 368
 pātēō, -ērē, to stand open, 353
 pātīōr, -ī, to suffer, 396
 pāvēō, -ērē, to fear, 357
 pectō, -ērē, to comb, 380
 pellicīō, -ērē, to allure, 368
 pellō, -ērē, to drive (away), 387
 pendēō, -ērē, to hang, 361
 pendō, -ērē, to weigh, 371
 pērāgō, -ērē, to accomplish, 383
 percellō, -ērē, to beat down, 386
 percensēō, -ērē, to survey, 358
 perdō, -ērē, to ruin, 372
 pērēō, -īrē, to perish, 408
 perficīō, -ērē, to finish, 368
 perfrūōr, -ī, to enjoy fully, 396
 pergo, see perrīgo
 pērīmō, -ērē, to slay, 389
 perlēgō, -ērē, to read through, 383

permittō, -ērē, to permit, 374
 permulcēō, -ērē, to appease, 360
 perpētīōr, -ī, to endure, 396
 (perrīgō) pergō, -ērē, to go on, 378
 perrumpō, -ērē, to break through, 376
 persuādēō, -ērē, to persuade, 360
 pertīnēō, -ērē, to pertain, 358
 pessumdō, -ārē, to ruin, 349
 pētō, -ērē, to seek, 374
 pīget, it grieves, 420
 pingō, -ērē, to paint, 379
 pinguescō, -ērē, to grow fat, 395
 pinsō, -ērē, to pound, 390
 plangō, -ērē, to beat, lament, 378
 plaudō, -ērē, to applaud, 371
 plectō, -ērē, to beat, 380
 plectōr, 396
 plēō, I fill, 356
 plicō, I fold, 347
 plūmescō, -ērē, to get feathers, 395
 plūō, -ērē, to rain, 366
 pollēō, -ērē, to be powerful, 354
 pōnō, -ērē, to place, 386
 poscō, -ērē, to demand, 370, 393
 possidēō, -ērē, to possess, 361
 possūm, possē, to be able, 401
 pōtō, -ārē, to drink, 278, 347
 praecellō, -ērē, to excel, 386
 praecinō, -ērē, to sing to one, 387
 praedicō, -ērē, to predict, 378
 praefērō, -rē, to prefer, 404
 praescribō, -ērē, to prescribe, 375
 praesidēō, -ērē, to preside, 361
 praestō, -ārē, to afford, 349
 praesūm, praessē, to be over, 306
 praetērēō, -īrē, to pass by, 407
 prandēō, -ērē, to breakfast, 361
 prēhendō, -ērē, to seize, 373

prēmō, -ērē, *to press*, 389
 prōfīciscōr, -ī, *to set out, start*, 396
 prōflīgō, -ārē, *to strike down*, 378
 prōmittō, -ērē, *to promise*, 374
 prōmō, -ērē, *to take out*, 385
 prosternō, -ērē, *to overthrow*, 388
 prōsum, prōdessē, *to be useful*, 306
 prōtēgō, -ērē, *to protect*, 378
 prōvidēō, -ērē, *to provide*, 361
 psallō, -ērē, *to play on the cithern*, 389
 pūdēt, *it shames*, 420
 pūēascō, -ērē, *to become a child*, 395
 pungō, -ērē, *to pierce, sting*, 382
 pūtrescō, -ērē, *to rot*, 394

Q.

quaerō, -ērē, *to seek, desire*, 389
 quaeso, *I beseech*, 418
 quātīō, -ērē, *to shake*, 332, 368
 quēō, -īrē, *to be able*, 409
 quērōr, -ī, *to complain*, 396
 quiescō, -ērē, *to rest*, 393

R.

rādō, -ērē, *to scrape*, 371
 rāpīō, -ērē, *to seize*, 332, 368
 rēcensēō, -ērē, *to review*, 358
 rēcrūdescō, -ērē, *to break open afresh*, 395
 rēcurreō, -ērē, *to run back*, 387
 rēdargūō, -ērē, *to refute*, 366
 reddō, -ērē, *to give back*, 372
 rēdēō, -īrē, *to return*, 407
 rēdimō, -ērē, *to buy back*, 389
 rēfellō, -ērē, *to refute*, 387
 rēfercīō, -īrē, *to cram*, 398
 rēfērō, -rē, *to bring back*, 404

rēflūō, -ērē, *to flow back*, 367
 rēgō, -ērē, *to rule, govern*, 378
 rēlēgō, -ērē, *to read over*, 383
 rēlinquō, -ērē, *to leave (behind)*, 383
 rēmānēō, -ērē, *to remain*, 360
 rēmīniscōr, -ī, *to remember*, 396
 rēnīdēō, -ērē, *to shine*, 354
 rēōr, -ērī, *to think*, 364
 rēpellō, -ērē, *to repel*, 387
 rēpērīō, -īrē, *to find*, 398
 rēpētō, -ērē, *to repeat*, 374
 rēplēō, -ērē, *to fill (up)*, 356
 rēpō, -ērē, *to creep, crawl*, 375
 rēposcō, -ērē, *to demand back*, 393
 rēquiescō, -ērē, *to rest*, 393
 rēsīdēō, -ērē, *to remain behind*, 361
 rēsīpiscō, -ērē, *to come to one's self again*, 394
 rēsōnō, -ārē, *to resound*, 347
 respīcīō, -ērē, *to consider*, 368
 respondēō, -ērē, *to answer*, 361
 restītūō, -ērē, *to restore*, 366
 rēvertōr, -ī, *to turn back*, 396
 rēvīviscō, -ērē, *to revive*, 394
 rīdēō, -ērē, *to laugh*, 360
 rīgēō, -ērē, *to be stiff*, 353
 rōdō, -ērē, *to gnaw*, 371
 rūbēō, -ērē, *to be red*, 353
 rumpō, -ērē, *to break*, 376
 rūō, -ērē, *to rush forth*, 366

S.

saepīō, -īrē, *to hedge in*, 398
 sālīō, -īrē, *to leap*, 398
 salvē, *hail*, 417
 sancīō, -īrē, *to sanction*, 398
 sāpīō, -ērē, *to be wise*, 368
 sarcīō, -īrē, *to mend*, 398
 sātīsdō, -ārē, *to give bail*, 349

scābō, -ērē, to scratch, 376
 scalpō, -ērē, to carve, 375
 scandō, -ērē, to climb, 373
 scātēō, -ērē, to gush, 354
 scindō, -ērē, to cut, 374
 sciō, -irē, to know, 338
 sciscō, -ērē, to decree, 394
 scribō, -ērē, to write, 375
 sculpō, -ērē, to chisel, 375
 sécō, -ārē, to cut, 347
 sēdēō, -ērē, to sit, 361
 sēnescō, -ērē, to grow old, 394
 sentiō, -irē, to feel, perceive, 398
 sēpēliō, -irē, to bury, 398
 sēquōr, -ī, to follow, 396
 sērō, -ērē, to sow, 388
 sērō, -ērē, to join, 388
 serpō, -ērē, to creep, 375
 sīdō, -ērē, to sit down, 374
 sīlēō, -ērē, to be silent, 353
 sīnō, -ērē, to let, 388
 sistō, -ērē, to stop, 374
 sōlēō, -ērē, to be wont, 363
 solvō, -ērē, to loose, 366
 sōnō, -ārē, to sound, 347
 sorbēō, -ērē, to sip, 353
 sordēō, -ērē, to be dirty, 353
 spargō, -ērē, to scatter, 384
 spēciō, *I see*, 368
 spernō, -ērē, to despise, 388
 splendēō, -ērē, to gleam, 353
 spondēō, -ērē, to pledge, 361
 spūō, -ērē, to spit, 366
 squālēō, -ērē, to be filthy, 354
 stātūō, -ērē, to set, place, 366
 sternō, -ērē, to strew, 388
 sternūō, -ērē, to sneeze, 366
 stertō, -ērē, to snore, 373
 stingūō, *I put out*, 378
 stō, stārē, to stand, 349, 370
 strēpō, -ērē, to make a noise, 376
 strīdēō, -ērē, to whiz, creak, 361

stringō, -ērē, to bind, 379
 strūō, -ērē, to build, 367
 stūdēō, -ērē, to be zealous, 353
 stūpēō, -ērē, to be amazed, 353
 suādēō, -ērē, to advise, 360
 sūbēō, -irē, to come under, 407
 sūbigō, -ērē, to subdue, 383
 subjiciō, -ērē, to subject, 368
 subsūm, subessē, to be under, 306
 succensēō, -ērē, to be angry, 353
 succurrō, -ērē, to succor, 387
 suescō, -ērē, to become used, 393
 sūgō, -ērē, to suck, 378
 sum, essē, to be, 303
 sūmō, -ērē, to take, 385
 sūō, -ērē, to sew, 366
 sūperbiō, -irē, to be proud, 398
 sūpersēdēō, -ērē, to forbear, 361
 sūpersum, sūpēressē, to remain
 over, 306
 supprimō, -ērē, to keep back, 389
 (surrīgō) surgō, -ērē, to rise, 378
 suspendō, -ērē, to hang, 371

T.

taedet, *it wearies*, 420
 tangō, -ērē, to touch, 382
 tēgō, -ērē, to cover, 378
 temnō, *I despise*, 385
 tendō, -ērē, to spread, 371
 tēnēō, -ērē, to hold, 358
 tēnērescō, -ērē, to grow tender,
 395
 tergēō, -ērē } to wipe, 360, 384
 tergō, -ērē }
 tērō, -ērē, to rub, wear out, 388
 texō, -ērē, to weave, 390
 tīmēō, -ērē, to fear, 353
 tingō (tingūō), -ērē, to stain, 378
 tollō, -ērē, to lift, take away, 389
 tondēō, -ērē, to shear, 361
 tōnō, -ārē, to thunder, 347

torpěō, -ěřě, *to be numb*, 353
 torquěō, -ěřě, *to torture*, 359
 torrěō, -ěřě, *to roast*, 358
 trādō, -ěřě, *to deliver*, 372
 trāhō, -ěřě, *to draw*, 378
 transěō, -īřě, *to pass over*, 407
 trēmō, -ěřě, *to tremble*, 386
 trībūō, -ěřě, *to confer on*, 366
 trūdō, -ěřě, *to thrust*, 371
 tūměō, -ěřě, *to swell*, 353
 tundō, -ěřě, *to thump*, 371
 turgěō, -ěřě, *to swell*, 360

U.

ulciscōr, -ī, *to avenge*, 396
 ungō (ungŭō), -ěřě, *to anoint*, 378
 urgěō, -ěřě, *to urge*, 360
 űrō, -ěřě, *to burn*, 389
 űtōr, -ī, *to use*, 396

V.

vādō, -ěřě, *to go*, 371
 vālě, *farewell*, 417

věhō, -ěřě, *to carry*, 378
 vellō, -ěřě, *to pluck, pull*, 389
 vendō, -ěřě, *to sell*, 372
 vĕněō, -īřě, *to be for sale*, 408
 vĕnĭō, -īřě, *to come*, 398
 vĕnumdō, -āřě, *to sell*, 349
 vergō, -ěřě, *to verge*, 384
 verrō, -ěřě, *to sweep*, 389
 vertō, -ěřě, *to turn*, 373
 vescōr, -ī, *to feed upon, eat*, 396
 vĕtō, -āřě, *to forbid*, 347
 vĭděō, -ěřě, *to see*, 361
 vĭgĕō, -ěřě, *to be vigorous*, 353
 vĭlescō, -ěřě, *to become vile*, 395
 vincĭō, -īřě, *to bind*, 398
 vincō, -ěřě, *to conquer*, 383
 vĭrĕō, -ěřě, *to be green*, 353
 vĭsō, -ěřě, *to visit*, 390
 vĭvō, -ěřě, *to live*, 367
 vōlō, vellĕ, *to be willing*, 405
 volvō, -ěřě, *to roll, turn*, 366
 vōmō, -ěřě, *to vomit*, 386
 vōvĕō, -ěřě, *to vow*, 357

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

The references are to paragraphs.

A.

-a, Nouns in, of 1st decl., 56; of 3d decl., 83; acc. sing. 3d decl., 153; changed in compounds, 517

ā, ab, abs, 655; with abl. of separation, 620; of agent, 603; in compounds, 519; with negative force, 531. 2

Abbreviations, 944

abesse — non multum abest quin, nihil abest quin, 766; tantum abest ut...ut, 760

abhinc, denoting time, 674

abhorrere, with abl., 620, 621

ABLATIVE, 49; sing. of 3d decl., 140, 144; SYNTAX, 603-628; abl. of agent, 603; of cause, 603, 604; of comparison, 609-612; of difference, 612; of limitation, 608; of manner, 613, 614; with opus est, 624; of means or instrument, 605-607; of plenty and want, 622, 623; of price, 617-619; of quality, 615, 616; of separation, 620, 621; in special constructions, 625; of time, 672; with prepositions, 445, 446, 655-671; of place, 687, 688; with names of towns, 683-686; of distance how far, 681

Ablative absolute, 836, 837

absolvere, with gen., 570

absque, 656

abstinere, with abl., 620

Abstract substantives, 37; for concretes, 691, 693; in the plur., 694, 695; derivation, 488, 493

abundare, with abl., 622

-ābūs for -īs, 1st decl., 59

abūti, with abl., 626

ac, atque, 849

Acatalectic verses, 907

Accent, rules of, 29-31

acceptus, with dat., 598

accidit, with ut, 759

accipere, with dat. of purpose, 595; with acc. & infin., 812; with gerundive, 841

accusare, with gen., 570

ACCUSATIVE, 49; sing. 3d decl., 143; plur., 148; in -ās, 157; SYNTAX, 574-586; with active transitive verbs, 574; with intransitive verbs, 575, 576; with compound verbs, 577; with verbs of naming, 578; with verbs of teaching and asking, 579-582; with impersonal verbs, 583, 584; in exclamations, 585; used adverbially, 586; with prepositions, 629-654; with names of towns, 683; to denote space, 679, 680; time how long, 674; how old, 678

Accusative with Infin., 810-820; as subject, 811; as object, 812; after verbs of wishing, &c.,

814, 815; *tenses*, 818, 819; in *indirect* discourse, 825; how to *translate*, 816

Active voice, 272; its participles, 829

ād, 629; *assimilated* in composition, 520; in compounds with **dat.**, 592; with *gerund*, 845; with *interest*, 573; with *adjectives* signifying *useful, suitable*, 599

adducere, with *ut*, 758

-**ādēs**, *suffix* in *patronymics*, 487
adipisci, with *ut*, 758

ADJECTIVES, 32, 198-227; of **1st** and **2d decl.**, 72-77; of **3d decl.**, 137-142; of three terminations, 199; of two terminations, 200; of one termination, 141, 201; defective, 203, 204; indeclinable, 205; indefinite, 268; pronominal, 269; comparison, 207-227; used as *substantives*, 701, 702; used instead of *adverbs*, 550; used instead of *possessives*, 703; denoting a *part* of a thing, 704; *appositive*, 550; *attributive*, 546; *predicative*, 536, 544; in *relative* clauses, 554; with **gen.**, 567; with **dat.**, 598-600; with **abl.**, 623, 625; position, 559, 561; derivation, 496-511; special uses, 701-709; in **abl. absol.**, 836

Adjuncts of the predicate, 558; of the subject, 558

adjuvare, with **acc.**, 589

admonere, with **gen.**, 568; with *ut*, 758; with **acc. & inf.**, 814

Adonic verse, 925. 1

adspargere, with **dat. & acc.**, 593

adulescens for in *adulescentia*, 691; in *adulescentia*, 673

Advantage, *dative* of, 587

advenire, with *in* & **acc.**, 690

adventu, **abl.** of *time*, 673

Adverbial accusative, 586; phrases, 431

ADVERBS, 32, 424-446; derivation of, 425-434; from *adjectives* of the **1st & 2d decl.**, 425; of the **3d decl.**, 426; of *time*, 437; of *manner*, 438; of *order*, 242; *numeral*, 241; of *place*, 436; used as *prepositions*, 436; comparison, 440-442; with **gen.**, 566. 6; correlative, 439; position, 562

Adversative conjunctions, 451, 853
adversus, adversum, 632

ae, changed in compounds, 517

aedes & templum omitted, 566. 9

aeger, with **abl.**, 604

aequalis, w. **gen.**, 598

aequare, w. **acc.** 589

aeque ac, 849

aestimare, w. **gen.**, 569; w. **abl.**, 617

aetate, **abl.** of *time*, 673

-**aeūs**, *suffix*, 508

affatim, w. **gen.**, 566. 6

afferre, w. **dat.**, 592

afficere, w. **abl.**, 607

affirmare, with **acc. & infn.**, 812

Agent, **abl.** of, with **ā** or **āb**, 603;

dat. of, 596, 597; w. *opera*, *per*, 606

agere, with *annus*, to express how

old, 678; *id agere*, with *ut*, 758

agnomen, 194

Agreement of predicate and subject, 536-539; of attribute and substantive, 546, 547; of apposition and substantive, 548-550; of pronoun & antecedent, 551-557

ajo, conjugated, 416; its use, 823

-**āl**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 91

Alcaic verses, 925. 9. 10; stanza, 927. 1
 Alcmanian stanza, 927. 9
ālī- in *alīquis* rejected, 723, 762
alienāre, with *ā* and *abl.*, 621
aliēnus, with *abl.*, 925
alīquanto, with *comparatives*, 706
aliquantum, w. *gen.*, 566. 6
alīquid, with *gen.*, 566. 5; used *ad-verbially*, 586
alīquis, 266; its use, 722; after *si emphatic*, 723
-ālīs, *suffix*, 501
alīter atque, 849
aliūs, 202, 728; *aliūs. . aliūs*, *alīi. . alīi*, 729; quantity in *gen.*, 861
 Alphabet, 3; vowels and diphthongs, 4, 5; consonants, 6, 7
alter, 202, 728; *alter. . alter*, 729
 Alternative questions, 798
altēro tanto, 612
alterūter, 202
amans, w. *gen.*, 567. 2
amīcus, w. *dat.* & *gen.*, 598
amplius, without *quam*, 610
an, *interrog.*, 797, 798; *annon*, 798
Anacrūsīs, 925. 10
anceps syllāba, 908
animadvertēre, w. *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 Animals, Names of, 47
anīmo, *abl.* of *manner*, 613; *anīmo aequo*, without *cum*, 613
 Answer, Form of, 799
ante, 631; in composition, 521; in compounds with *dat.* 592; to denote distance of *time*, 675; with *quam*, 675; *ante diem*, 931
 Antecedent of relative, 553; incorporated in the relative clause, 719; agreement, 551-557
antepenult, 25
antēquam, 779, 780
-ānus, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507

anxīus, with *abl.*, 604
Apocōpe, 894
Apodōsis, 787
apparēre, with *two nom.*, 540
appāret, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
appellāre, with *two acc.*, 578
appellāri, with *two nom.*, 540
 Appendix to 3d conjugation, 331
 Apposition, 548; in relative clause, 554; *gen.* of *specification* in its stead, 566. 7; expressing *time*, 549; with names of *towns*, 684, 685; agreement, 548-550
aptus, with *dat.*, 598; with *gerund.* & *gerundive*, 844; with *qui* & *sub-junct.*, 793
apud, 630
-ār, Nouns in, 3d decl., 94, 95
arbitrāri, with *two acc.*, 578; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
arcessēre, with *gen.*, 570
 Archilochian verse, 925. 11; stanzas, 927. 10-13
arguēre, with *gen.*, 570
-ārīs, *suffix*, 501
 Aristophanic verse, 925. 2
-ārīūm, *suffix*, 482
-ārīūs, *suffix*, 501
 Arsis, 900
 Article, not in Latin, 57
ās, Unit of *value*, 937
-ās, Nouns in, 1st decl., 60; 3d decl., 105-107; **-ās**, Greek *acc. pl.* 3d decl., 157; *suffix*, 507
 Asclepiadean verses, 925. 7. 8; stanzas, 827. 4-8
-asco, Verbs in, 472
assēqui, with *ut*, 758
 Assimilation of prepositions, 518
assuescēre, with *inf.*, 809
Asyndēton, 850
at, 553

atque, 849; atque is, 715
 atqui, 853
 Attraction of mood, 826
 Attribute, its agreement, 546, 547
 Attributive adjective, 546
 -**ātūs**, *suffix*, 503
au, changed in compounds, 517
 audēre, with **inf.**, 809
 audire, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812; *with*
 pres. participle, 813, 835
 auditu, 848
 aurēus, *the coin*, 938
 -**aus**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 123
 aut, 852
 autem, 853; its place, 564
 AUTHORS, LATIN, 945
 Auxiliary *essē*, 303
 -**ax**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 132; *suffix*,
 498

B.

b changed to **p**, 375
 belli, in connection with domi,
 686; bello Antiōchi, 673; bello
 Persico, 673; in bello, 673
 bene, compared 441; with emēre
 & vendēre, 619
 benedicēre, with **dat.**, 589
 -**bēr**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96
 -**bīlīs**, *suffix*, 498
 bini, instead of duo, 238
 bis die, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 blandīri, with **dat.**, 589
 -**bs**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124-126
 -**būlūm**, *suffix*, 494
 -**bundūs**, *suffix*, 496

C.

-**c**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 89
 caelum, *decl.*, 191
 Caesūra, 909-911; of the hexa-
 mēter, 915; of the trimēter, 924

Calendar, Roman, 929-936
 Calends, 929
 capīo, -**ēre**, conjugated, 331
 Capital initial letters, 3
 capītis et capite damnāre, 570
 caput, 129
 Cardinal numerals, 228-233
 carēre, with **abl.**, 622
 carus, with **dat.**, 598
 CASE-ENDINGS of the 5 declen-
 sions, 54
 Cases, 35, 49; dependent, 50; in-
 dependent, 50; of adjectives &
 nouns used adverbially, 430;
 construction of, 566-690
 casu, **abl.** of manner, 614
 casus oblīqui, 50; recti, 50
 Catalectic verses, 907
 causa, w. **gen.** & mea, tua &c., 566. s,
 604; w. **gerund** & **gerundive**, 843
 Causal clauses, w. *subjunctive*, 782
 Causal conjunctions, 452, 456;
 their uses, 781-786, 851
 cave, cave ne, *in prohibitions*, 806
 cavēre, with **dat.** & **acc.**, 591
 -**cē**, -**cīnē**, appended to hic, 254
 celāre, with two **acc.**, 579
 celer, special forms of, 138, 140
 -**ceps**, Compounds in, 3d decl., 126
 cernēre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812; with
 pres. part., 813
 cernēres, *potential subjunct.*, 750
 certe, certo, 430
 certum est, w. **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 cetēri, *defective*, 204, 728
 Characteristic of *stem*; 52
circa, **circum**, 634; in composi-
 tion, 522; compounds of, w. **acc.**,
 577
 circiter, 635
 circuire, 522
 circumdāre, w. **acc.**, 593

cis, citra, 633

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS, 346-399

coarguere, w. **gen.**, 570

cogere, with **in** & **acc.**, 690

cogitare, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812

cognomen, 194; with **dat.**, 594

cognoscere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812

Collective noun, 38; with plural verb, 543

collocare, *to let*, w. **abl.**, 617; with **in** & **abl.**, 689

cōm = **cum**, in composition, 523; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592

Common gender, 45; common noun, 38; common quantity, 27, 863

commonere, commonefacere, with **gen.**, 568

communis, w. **gen.**, 567. 3; w. **dat.**, 598

Comparative, how formed, 209; how declined, 139; wanting, 224; with **abl.**, 609; with the force of *too, unusually, somewhat*, 705; used in reference to *only two* objects, 709; its force increased, 706; with **-cūlus**, 510; followed by *quam ut, quam qui* w. **sub-junct.**, 795

Comparative conjunctions, 461, 772; comparative value with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, 619

Comparison of adjectives, 207-227; irregular and defective, 220-227; of participles, 227; of adverbs, 227, 440-442; of two qualities of the *same* object, 708

comperire, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812

complere, with **abl.**, 622

complures, **decl.**, 221

compos, with **gen.**, 567. 1

COMPOSITION OF WORDS, 465, 512-531

Compound adjectives, 531; **comp.** forms of the verb, 303-315; **comp.** numerals, 231, 232; **comp.** substantives, 530; declined, 192; **comp.** tenses of the passive, 309; **comp.** verbs, 513-529; **comp.** verses, 903, 925

Compounds, *Quantity*, 883; *syllabification*, 24; of *dāre*, 572; of *essē*, 306; of *facere*, 413; of *ire*, 407; of *prepositions* with **dat.**, 592; of *prepositions* with **acc.**, 577

con see **com**

concedere, with **ut**, 758

Concessive conjunctions, 458; uses, 767-771

Concessive subjunctive, 753

Concrete substantives, 37; used for abstracts, 691

condemnare, with **gen.**, 570

Conditional conjunctions, 457; use, 787-790; conditional sentences, 787-788; conditional wishes w. **dūm, mōdō**, 790

conducere, *to hire*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841

conducit, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811

confidere, with **dat.** or **abl.**, 628

congregari, with **in** & **acc.**, 690

CONJUGATION, 35, 270, 295; *First*, 316, 317, 327, 346-350; *Second*, 318, 319, 328, 351-364; *Third*, 320, 321, 329, 365-396; appendix to *Third*, verbs in **īō**, 331, 332; *Fourth*, 322, 323, 330, 397, 398; of deponents, 324-330; *periphrastic*, 311-314; *special* forms in **conjug.**, 333-338; of *irregular* verbs, 400-413; of *defective*

verbs, 414-418; of *impersonal verbs*, 419-423

CONJUNCTIONS, 32, 447-462; co-ordinating, 448-453; use of, 849-857; subordinating, 454-462; use of, 749-790; place of, 564

Conjunctive clauses, 755 ff.

Consecutive conjunctions, 460; use of, 756-766

consēqui, with *ut*, 758

considerē, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

consilīo, *abl.* of *manner*, 613

Consonants, Classification of, 6

Consonant-stems, 3d decl., 79, 81; of *verbs*, 339, 345

constāre, *to cost*, with *abl.*, 617

constat, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

constituēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

CONSTRUCTION OF CASES, 566-690

consul, used for *consulātus*, 692

consulēre, its construction, 591; with *ut*, 758

contendēre, with *ut*, 758

contentus, with *abl.*, 625

Continental pronunciation, 15

continēre; *vix me continēo quin*, 766

contingit, with *ut*, 759

contra, 636

Contracted syllables, *Quantity of*, 860; contracted vowels in *conjugation*, 344

convenīre, with *in* & *acc.*, 690

convēnit, *w. acc.* & *inf.* 811

convincēre, with *gen.*, 570

Co-ordinating conjunctions, 448-453; use of, 849-857

Copulative conjunctions, 449; use of, 849-851

coram, 658

Correlatives, 269, 439

Corresponsive conjunctions, 858

Countries, Gender of names of, 42

creāre, with *two acc.*, 578

creāri, with *two nom.*, 540

credēre, with *dat.*, 589; with *two acc.*, 578; in the *pass. w. two nom.*, 540; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

credēres, potential subjunct., 750

credibile est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811

crime or charge, *gen.* of, 570

crimīne or nomīne, with *gen.*, 570

-crūm, *suffix*, 495

cujas, *patrial* *adject.*, 264

-cūlūm, *suffix*, 494

-cūlūs, *suffix*, 480, 510

cum, *prep.*, 659; with *abl.* of *manner*, 613; in composition, 523

cum, *conjunction*; *cum temporal*, 774; *cum, whenever*, 740; *cum causal*, 786; *cum concessive*, 769; *cum historical*, 774; *cum primum*, 773; *cum quis*, 723, 762

cum-tum, 857

cunctus, Nouns with, in *abl.* without *prep.*, 687

-cundūs, *suffix*, 496

-cunque, appended to pronouns, 258; followed by *indic.*, 748

cupēre, *w. inf.* or *w. acc.* & *inf.*, 814

cupīdus, with *gen.*, 567. 1

cura, *ut*, *imperat.* phrase, 806

curāre, *w. ut*, 758; *w. gerundive*, 841

D.

Dactylic Hexamēter, 914 ff.

damnāre, with *gen.*, 570. 1

dāre, 349; with *two acc.*, 578; with *two dat.*, 595; with *gerundive*, 841

Dates, Roman, 931; of year, 935; how to turn into English, 934

DATIVE, 49; *pl. 3d decl.*, 149; *4th decl.*, 172; SYNTAX, 587-602; *indirect* object, *advantage*, 587; with

intransitive verbs, 589; with *transitive* verbs, 588; with *compounds* of *ad*, *ante*, &c., 592; with verbs of *twofold* construction, 593; of *purpose*, with verbs of *giving* and *receiving*, 595; *ethical*, 602; of *agency*, with *gerundive*, 596, 741, 840; with *passives*, 590, 597; of *possession*, 594; with *adjectives*, 598–600; with *substantives*, 601

de, 657; with *accusare*, 570; negative meaning in compounds, 531. 2

dea, deus, *decl.*, 59, 67

debēre, with *inf.*, 809; with the force of the *potential*, 747

decedēre, with *abl.*, 620

decet, dedēcet, with *acc.*, 583

declarāre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

DECLENSION, 35, 51; general rules, 55; *First*, 56–62; *Second*, 63–71; *Third*, 78–170; *Fourth*, 171–175; *Fifth*, 176–180; of *adjectives*, 72–77, 137–142; of *compounds*, 192. *Case-endings* of the 5 declensions, 54

Defective substantives, in *case*, 182–185; in *number*, 186–188; defective adjectives, 203, 204; defective comparison, 224, 225; of adverbs, 442; defective verbs, 414–418

deficēre, with *acc.*, 589

defigēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

Degree of difference, in the *abl.*, 612

delectāri, with *abl.*, 604

demergēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689

demonstrāre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

Demonstrative pronouns, 252–254; position, 561; agreement, 551, 552; where not used, 716

Denominative inceptives, 391, 395; denominative verbs, 475–479

depellēre, with *abl.*, 620

Dependent cases, 50

Dependent clause, 742; in *indirect* discourse, 825; dependent uses of the *subjunctive*, 755 ff.

Deponents, 276; conjugation of, 324–330; of the *first* conj., 350; of the *second*, 364; of the *third*, 396; of the *fourth*, 399; principles, 831

DERIVATION OF WORDS, 465, 467–511; of adjectives, 496–511; of verbs, 470–479; of substantives, 480–495; of adverbs, 425–434

Desiderative verbs, 473

designāre, with *two acc.*, 578

desinēre, with *inf.*, 809

Determinative pronouns, 255

deterre, with *abl.*, 620; with *ne* or *quomīnus*, 764

deus, *decl.*, 59, 67

Diaerēsis, in pronunciation, 13; in prosody, 892, 909

Diastōle, 895

dicēre, with *two acc.*, 578; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812

dici, with *two nom.*, 540; with *nom.* & *inf.*, 821

dictu, 848

—**dīcus**, Adjectives in, 216; quantity, 886

dies, 180; in *diem*, 670; *ante diem*, 931

differre, with *ā* & *abl.*, 621

difficilis, 215; *adverb.*, 429; with *dat.*, 598; with *gerund.* or *supine*, 848

diffidēre, with *dat.*, 589, 628

dignāri, with *abl.*, 625

dignus, with **abl.**, 625; dignus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. c
 diligens, with **gen.**, 567. 2
 Dimēter, 904
 Diminutive substantives, 480, 481; adjectives, 510; verbs, 474
 Diphthongs, 5
 Dipody, 906
 Direct discourse, 823; dir. object, in the **acc.**, 574-577; direct questions, 796-800
dis-, inseparable **prep.**, 516; compounds of, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 discēre, with **inf.**, 809; with **ā**, for docēri, 579
 discernēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 discessu, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 discrepāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Disjunctive conjunctions, 450; use of, 852
 dispar, with **dat.**, 598
 displicēre, with **dat.**, 589
 displicet, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 dissentīre, with **ā** and **abl.**, 621
 dissimilis, 215; with **dat.**, 598
 Distance *how far* in the **acc.** or **abl.**, 681; of *time how long* before or after, 675
 distāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Distich, 926; Elegiac D., 919
 distinguēre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
 Distributive numerals, 237, 238
 docēre, with **two acc.**, 579
 dolēre, with **acc.**, 575; with **abl.**, 604; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; with **quod**, 783
 dolo, fraude, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 domi bellique, 686; domus, 173; used like name of *town*, 686
 donāre, with *twofold* construction, 593
 donec = *quamdiu*, 776, 777

Double questions, 798
 Dubitative subjunctive, 754
 dubito & non dubito quin, 766
 dubium non est quin, 766
 ducēre, with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595; with **gen.**, 569
 dulcis, with **dat.**, 589
 dum, *while*, with **pres.**, 734, 776; *until*, 777; *if only*, 790
 dummodo, 790

E.

e, Quantity of, in **-ei**, 5th decl., 178, 861; changed to **-i**, 517
-ē, Greek nouns in, 1st decl., 60
-ē, Nouns in, 3d decl., 84; **abl. sing.**, 3d decl., 144
ē, **ex**, 660; in composition, 524; with *negative* power, 531. 2
 edicēre, with **ut**, 758
 edocēre, with **two acc.**, 579
 efficēre, with **two acc.**, 578; with **ut**, 758
 egēnus, *compar.*, 217
 egēre, with **abl.** or **gen.**, 622
-ēis, *suffix* in *patronymics*, 484
 ejicēre, with **abl.**, 620
 ejus, eōrum, eārum, as *posses-sives*, 247, 711
 ejusmodi, w. **ut** or **qui** & **subjunct.**, 793. a
-ēlā, *suffix*, 489
 Elegiac Distich, 919; E. Pentameter, 918
 eligēre, with **two acc.**, 578
 Elision, 887-889
-ellūs, *suffix*, 481, 510
 emēre, w. **abl.**, 617; bene, male, 619
 Emotion, verbs of, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; with **quod**, 785
 Emphasis, as affected by the *order* of words, 565

-en, Nouns in, 3d decl., 93
 Enclitics, control accent, 31; quantity, 880
 Endings in declension, 54; in comparison, 209; in conjugation, 294
-endūs, -undūs, endings of *gerundive*, 337
 English method of pronunciation, 16-20
 enim & nam, 854; position, 564
 Ennehemimēres, 912
-ensīs, *suffix*, 501, 507
-entiōr, -entissimūs, 216
-entūs, *suffix*, 502
 Epenthēsis, 896
 Epicene nouns, 47
 Epistolary tenses, 740
 eques, in *collective* sense, 698
 Equivalentents of supine, 848
-ēr, Nouns in, 2d decl., 64, 65
-ēr, -ēr, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96-98
-ēr, -ā, -ūm, Adject. in, 74-76
-ēr, -īs, -ē, Adjectives in, 138; *superl.*, 213
-ērē for **-ērūnt** (*Perf. Ind.*), 334
erga, 637
 ergo, 855; with *gen.*, 566. s
 erudire, w. *abl.*, 607
 erumpere, with *ā* & *abl.*, 620
-ēs, Greek nouns in, 1st decl., 60;
-ēs, -ēs, nouns in, 3d decl., 108-110; **-ēs, nom. plur.**, Greek nouns, 157; proper names in **-ēs**, 151
-escō, verbs in, 472
 esse, conjugated, 303; with *abl.*, 617; with *gen.* as *predicate*, 571; with *gen.* of *value*, 569; with *gen.* & *abl.* of *quality*, 556. s., 615; with *dat.* of *possessor*, 594; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; the *inf.* esse as *subject*, 808; as *object*, 809

est, qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. b.
 ēt, 849; used after multi, 850; et is, et is non, 715
 etēnim, 854
 Ethical Dative, 602
 etiam, 849; with *compar.*, 706
 etiamsi, w. *indic.* & *subjunct.*, 770
 etsi, 771
-ētūm, *suffix*, 482
 ETYMOLOGY, 1, 32-464
eu, 11; vocative-ending, 69
-eus, Greek nouns in, 2d decl., 69
-ēūs, *suffix*, 500; **-ēūs**, *suffix*, 506
 evadere, with two *nom.*, 540
 evēnit, with ut, 759
-ex, Nouns in, 3d decl., 133
 Exclamations, in *acc.*, 585
 Existence, General expressions of, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b
 existimāre, with two *acc.*, 578; *pass.* w. two *nom.*, 540
 expedit, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 expers, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 explere, with *abl.*, 622
 exsistere, with two *nom.*, 540
 exsistunt qui, with *subjunct.*, 793
 expectatiōne, *abl.* of *comparison*, 611
 External qualities in the *abl.*, 616
extra, 638
 extrēmus, with *subst.* to denote *part* thereof, 704

F.

faba, in a *collective* sense, 698
 fac, with ut or *subjunct.*, 806
 facere, with two *acc.*, 578; with *gen.*, 569; with ut, 758; with *pres. partic.*, 835; facere non possum quin, 766
 facilis, 215; *adv.*, 429; w. *dat.* 598; w. *ad* & *gerund* or w. *supine*, 848

factu, 848
 fallit, with *acc.*, 583
 fama est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 familiāris, with *gen.* or *dat.*, 598
 familiās, old *gen.*, 58
 fas est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811; with
 supine, 847
 fatēri, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 favēre, with *dat.*, 589
 Feet, metrical, 898
 Feminine, Rule of gender, 42, 43
 fertur, with *nom.* & *inf.*, 821
 -*fīcus*, Adjectives in, *compared*,
 216
 fidēre, with *dat.* or *abl.*, 589, 628
 fiēri, with *two nom.*, 540; with *gen.*,
 571; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595;
 quantity, 412, 861
 fiēri non potest quin, 766
 Fifth Declension, 176-178
 Figures of prosody, 887-897
 filiā, filius, 59, 67
 Final conjunctions, 459; *use of*,
 756-766
 Final syllables, *Quantity*, 877-879
 Finite verb, 285
 First Conjugation, *Active*, 316;
 Passive, 317; *Deponent*, 327;
 Verbs of, 346-350
 First Declension, 56-62
 fit, with *ut*, 759
 flagitāre, with *two acc.*, 580; with
 ut, 758
 flocci, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 for, corresponding to *dat.*, 588
 fore *ut*, to express *fut. inf.*, 819
 Formation of the *Genitive*, 3d
 decl., 82-136; of the *Principal*
 Parts, 339-399; of the *Tenses*,
 298-302
 the former, hic, ille, 713
 Fourth Conjugation, *Active*, 322;

Passive, 323; *Deponent*, 330;
Verbs of, 347-399
 Fourth Declension, 171-175
 Fractions, denoted by ordinals,
 236; of weight, 942
 fraude, *abl.* of *manner*, 614
 Frequentative verbs, 471
 fretus, w. *abl.*, 625
 frugi, *indecl.*, 205; *compar.*, 222
 frui, with *abl.*, 626
 fugit, with *acc.*, 583
 fungi, with *abl.*, 626
 Future I & II, 280; how formed,
 298, 300; *wanting* in the sub-
 unct., 302, 746; *Fut. Inf.*, 819;
 Fut. Inf. Pass., 315, 847; *Fut. Inf.*
 of *deponents*, 325; *Fut. Parti-*
 ciple, 301; *syntax*, 736-739
 futūrum esse, *ut for fut. inf.*, 819

G.

gallīna, in a *collective* sense, 698
 gaudēre, with *abl.*, 604; with *quod*,
 783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815
 GENDER, 35; natural or grammatical,
 39, 48; of adjectives, 48;
 in *1st decl.*, 61, 62; in *2d decl.*,
 70, 71; in *3d decl.*, 158-170; in
 4th decl., 174, 175; in *5th decl.*,
 179, 180; of the predicate, 544
 General relatives, 258, 259; fol-
 lowed by the *indic.*, 748
 General value, expressed by the
 abl., 618
 GENITIVE, 49; endings of, 51; for-
 mation in *3d decl.*, 82; *gen. pl.* in
 -*ūm* for -*ōrūm*, *2d decl.*, 68; of
 3d decl. in -*īūm*, 146, 147; in -*ōn*,
 156; in -*īūs*, 77; SYNTAX, 566-
 573; with substantives, 566; sub-
 jective, 566. 1. 4; in predicate
 571; objective, 566. 2; of personal

pronouns, 566.3; partitive, 566.6; of quality, 566.5; answering the question *how old?* 678; of specification, 566.7; with adjectives, 567; with verbs of *valuing*, 569; with verbs of *remembering*, 568; with verbs of *accusing*, 570; with *esse* & *feri*, 571; with *impersonals*, 572, 584; of *gerund*, 843

GERUND & GERUNDIVE, 288, 289, 298; uses, 839–846; with *est*, 840; gerund changed into gerundive, 842; *gen.*, 843; *dat.*, 844; *acc.*, 845; *abl.*, 846; gerundive with verbs of *giving*, *taking*, *sending* &c., 841

gloriāri, w. *abl.*, 604; w. *quod*, 783

Glyconic verse, 925.4

gracilis, *superlat.*, 215

gratīa, with *gen.*, 566.8; with *gerund* & *gerundive*, 843

gratīam agēre, with *quod*, 783; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 815

gratus, with *dat.*, 598

gravis, with *dat.*, 598

Greek nouns of 1st decl., 60; of 2d decl., 69; of 3d decl., 83, 88, 117, 122, 150–157

H.

habēre, with two *acc.*, 578; *pass.* with two *nom.*, 540; with *gen.*, 569; with *dat.* of *purpose*, 595; habēo quod, with *subjunct.*, 793. b

Hephthemimēres, 912

Heroic verse, 914

Heteroclitics, 190

Heterogeneous nouns, 191

Hexamēter, 904; Dactylic Hexamēter, 914–917

hiātus, 888

hic, 252; its use 712; hic, ille, *the latter, the former*, 713; hicine, hiccē, 254

Historical Infinitive, 809; Historical Perfect, 737; Historical Present, 732; Historical tenses, 743

hora nona, *abl.* of *time*, 673

Horace, *Metres* of, 926–928

horrēre, with *acc.*, 575

hortāri, with *ut*, 758

Hortatory subjunctive, 752

hostis, in a *collective* sense, 698 *how old?* 678

humi, like name of *town*, 686

humilis, *superl.*, 215

Hypothetical sentences, 787, 788

I.

i & j, but one character, 2, 891

ī, *gen.* ending of the 2d decl., 63; for –īi from nouns in –īūs, –īūm, 63; *voc.* ending, 2d decl., 67; *dat.* ending, 2d decl., 77; stems in i, 3d decl., 79, 80; Greek nouns in ī, 3d decl., 88; *voc.* ending of 3d decl., 154; *abl.* ending of the same, 140, 142, 144; i, *connecting* vowel in compound subst., 530

–īa, *neut. pl.* 3d decl., 140, 142, 145

–īā, *suffix*, 488

–īādēs, *suffix*, 487

Iambic Strophe, 927. 15

Iambic Trimēter, 922–924

–īānūs, *suffix*, 505

–īās, *suffix*, 487

–īcīūs, *suffix*, 501

Ictus, 900

–īcūs, *suffix*, 501, 506, 509

id, *adverbially*, 586

id agēre, with *ut* & *subjunct.*, 758

id quod = quod, 581

idem, 255, 533; used *adverbially*, 717

Ides of the Calendar, 929

-*īdēs*, -*īdēs*, *suffixes*, 487

idonēus, with *ād*, 599; idonēus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c; with *gerund & gerundive*, 844

-*īdūs*, *suffix*, 497

igītur, 855; its place, 564

ignārus, with *gen.*, 567

-*ilē*, *suffix*, 484

-*īlīs*, -*īlīs*, *suffixes*, 498, 501; *superl.* of adjectives in -*īlīs*, 215

Illative conjunctions, 453, 855

ille, 255; its use, 712, 713

-*illīmūs*, *superl.* ending, 215

-*illūs*, *suffix*, 481

-*īm*, *acc.* ending, 3d decl., 143; ad-verbs in, 432, 433

immēmor, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imminēre, with *dat.*, 589

immo, in *answers*, 800

Imparissyllabic nouns, 3d decl., 81

impatiens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

impedīre, w. quomīnus or ne, 764

impellēre, with *ut*, 758

imperāre, with *dat.*, 589; with *ut*, 758

Imperative, 283; personal endings, 294; of dicēre, ducēre, &c., 336; of scire, 338; uses, 804-806; supplied by *cura ut*, *fac ut*, 806; by the *subjunctive*, 752, 805

Imperative phrases, 806

Imperative sentence in *indirect discourse*, 825

Imperfect, 280, 298, 299; its use, 735; in letters, 740; *Imperf. Subjunct.* in conditional sentences, 788. III

Impersonal verbs, 419-423; their

conjugation, 421; with *acc.* 583; with *acc. & gen.*, 584

impetrāre, with *ut*, 758

implēre, with *abl.*, 622

imponēre, with *dat.*, 592

impos, impōtens, with *gen.*, 567. 1

imprimēre, with *in & abl.*, 689

imus, to denote a *part*, 704

in, with the *acc.*, 670; with verbs of *assembling*, 690; to denote *time for how long*, 677; with the *abl.*, 671; to denote *time when*, 673; with verbs of *placing*, 689; to denote *place*, 682; in composition, 525; with *negative power*, 531. 2; in compounds with *dat.*, 592

-*īnā*, *suffix*, 485

inānis, with *abl.*, 625

Inceptive (Inchoative) verbs, 392-395, 472

incipēre, with *inf.*, 809

incitāre, with *ut*, 758

incusāre, with *gen.*, 570

Indeclinable nouns, 181; gender of, 44; adjectives, 205, 226

Indefinite adjectives, 268; Indefinite pronouns, 265-267; use, 721

Independent cases, 50

Independent uses of the *Subjunctive*, 749-754

INDEX OF VERBS, *pag.* 274; Index to the metres of Horace, 928

Indicative, 282; use of, 747, 748

indigēre, with *abl.* or *gen.*, 622

indignus, with *abl.*, 625; indignus qui, with *subjunct.*, 793. c

Indirect discourse, 824-829

Indirect object, 587

Indirect questions, 801-803

inducēre, with *pres. partic.*, 835

induĕre, construction of, 593
 indulĕre, with **dat.**, 589
 ab infante, 691
 infĭmus, to denote a *part*, 704
 INFINITIVE, 287; its use, 807–809;
 as object, 809; as subject, 808;
 its tenses, 818; historical inf.,
 809; fut. inf. with fore, 819
 Inflection, 34, 35
infra, 641
 ingrĕtus, with **dat.**, 598
 inimĭcus, with **dat.** or **gen.**, 598
 initĭo, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 injucundus, with **dat.**, 598
 injuriĕ, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 inquam, 416; its use, 823
 inscius, with **gen.**, 567. 1
 inscribere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689
 Inseparable prepositions, 516
 insimulare, with **gen.**, 570
 institũere, with **abl.**, 607
 intellegere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
inter, 640; in compounds with
 dat., 592; inter se, for *reciprocal*
 action, 711
 interdicere, constr., 621
 interesse, with **dat.**, 592
 interest, with **gen.**, 572; degree of
 importance, 573; with reference
 to *which*, 573
 INTERJECTIONS, 32, 463–464
 intermittere nihil quin, 766
 interrogare, with **two acc.**, 580
 Interrogative adverbs, 796; con-
 junctions, 462, 797; pronouns,
 260–264, 796; place thereof, 562;
 use of Interrogatives, 796–803
 Interrogative sentences, 796 ff.,
 in *indirect* questions, 825
intra, 639
 Intransitive verbs, 273; *imper-*
 sonal passive, 590; with **dat.**,

589; w. **acc.** of *kindred* mean-
 ing, 576; becoming *transitive*
 by composition, 577
-inũs, *suffix*, 504, 505, 507
 inutilis, with **dat.**, 598, 599; with
 gerund, 844
 invidere, with **dat.**, 589
-iō, Verbs in, of **3d conjug.**, 331
 Ionic rhythm, 927. 19
 ipse, 255; use, with reflexive, 718
-ir, Nouns in, **2d decl.**, 64, 66
 irasci, with **dat.**, 589
 Irregular adjectives, 77; irreg.
 comparison, 220–223; of ad-
 verbs, 441; irreg. conjugation,
 400; irreg. nouns, 181–192
 is, 247; use, 553, 714; is qui, with
 subjunct. 793. a
-is, **-is**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 111–
 114; **-is**, **acc. pl.** ending, **3d decl.**,
 148; Greek nouns in, **3d decl.**,
 154; **-is**, *suffix* in *patronymics*,
 487
-is, **-ē**, Adjectives in, 139, 140
-iscō, Verbs in, 391
 Islands, *Gender* of names of, 42;
 constr. like names of *towns*, 683
 isque, 715
-issimũs, in **superl.**, 211
 iste, 252; use of, 712
 ita ut, 759; ita est, *yes*, 799
 itaque, 855
-itārē, Frequentatives in, 471
-itās, **-itĭā**, **-itĭēs**, **-itũdō**, *suf-*
 fixes, 488
-itũs, *suffix*, 503; adverbs in, 434
-iũm, **gen. pl. 3d decl.**, 98, 140, 146
-iũm, **gen.** of nouns in, 63; *suffix*,
 486
-iũs, **gen. sing. 2d decl.**, 77
-iũs, **gen.** of nouns in, 63; proper
 nouns in, 67; *suffix*, 501, 508, 509

-**ivūs**, *suffix*, 501
 -**ix**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 134

J.

j & **i**, 2; affecting the quantity of the syllable, 864
 jubēre, with **acc.**, 589; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822
 jucundus, with **dat.**, 598; with **gerund** or **supine**, 848
 judicāre, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** w. **two nom.**, 540
 jugum, its quantity, 864
 Juppiter, 97
 jurātus, *active*, 278
 jure, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 jussu, **abl.** of *cause*, 604
 justum est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 juvāre, with **acc.**, 589
 Juvenālis, **abl. sing.**, 144. 4
 juvēnis, **abl. sing.**, 144. 3; **gen. pl.**, 146. 2; how compared, 224. III
juxta, 642

L.

-**i**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 90-92; *adjectives* in, 141
 laborāre, w. **abl.**, 604; w. **ut**, 758
 laetāri, with **abl.**, 604
 laetus, with **abl.**, 604
 Latin Authors, 945
 Latin Grammar, 1
the latter, hic, ille, 713
 Lesser Ionics, 927. 19
 Letters, 3-7; names of, 3; gender of, 181
 liber, with **abl.**, 623
 liberāre, with **abl.**, 620
 libet, with **dat.**, 421
 libra, *weight*, 942
 licēre, *to be for sale*, with **abl.**, 617
 licet, w. **dat.**, 421; *conjunction*, 768

Like cases in substantives, 55
 liquet, with **dat.**, 421
 locāre, *to let*, with **abl.**, 617; with **gerundive**, 841
 Locative case, 683
 loco, locis, 687
 Logaoedic verse, 925
 Long vowels, 10, 859
 longe, with **superl.**, 707
 longius, without *quam*, 610
 longum est, 747
 longus, with **acc.**, 679
 -**ls**, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 127
 ludis, **abl.** of *time*, 673

M.

maerēre, with **abl.**, 604
 magis, maxīme, in *adverbial comparison*, 218, 708
 magni, parvi, **gen.** of *value*, 569
 magno, parvo, **abl.** of *value*, 618
 major, minor natu, 608, 678
 male emēre, vendēre, 619
 maledicēre, with **dat.**, 598
 malle, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814
 mandāre, with **ut**, 758
 manēre, with **two nom.**, 540
 Masculine caesūra, 911
 Masculine gender, 40, 41
 Materials, Names of, 38
 matūrus, compared, 214
 maximam partem, *adverbially*, 586
 maxīme, in forming **superl.**, 218
 Means or instrument, **abl.** of, 605-607
 Measure in prosody, 905, 906; Roman measures, 937-943; of length how expressed, 680
 medēri, with **dat.**, 589
 mediūs, to denote a *part*, 704
 memīni, with **gen.** or **acc.**, 568

memor, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 -*mĕn*, *suffix*, 494
 mente, *abl.* of manner, 613
 -*mentŭm*, *suffix*, 494
 mercāri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 617
 -*mĕt*, appended to pronouns, 251
 Metres of Horace, 926, 927
 Metrical Feet, 898
 metuĕre, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591;
 with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 metus est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 meum est, 571
 Middle syllables, Quantity, 866-
 876
 miles, in collective sense, 698
 mille, 230
 mināri, with *dat.*, 589
 minĭmi, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 minĭmo, *abl.* of *value*, 618
 minor natu, 608, 678
 minōris, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 misĕret, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584
 mittĕre, w. *dat.* of *purpose*, 595;
 with *gerundive*, 841
 Mobilĭa substantĭva, 46
 moderāri, with *dat.* & *acc.*, 591
 Modification in compounds, 512
 modo, *abl.* of manner, 613
 modo, *if only*, w. *subjunct.*, 790
 molestus, with *dat.*, 598
 monĕre, with *ut*, 758
 Money, Roman, 937
 -*mōnĭā*, *suffix*, 488
 Monomĕter, 904
 Monosyllabic nouns, defective,
 184, 185
 Monosyllables, Quantity of, 880-
 882
 Months, Gender of, 40; in Ro-
 man calendar, 929
 Moods of the verb, 35, 281-285;
 attraction of, 826

mora, 899
 more, *abl.* of manner, 613
 mori, w. two *nom.*, 540
 mos est, with *ut*, 759
 movĕre, with *ut*, 758
 -*ms*, Nouns in, 3d *decl.*, 124-126
 multāre, with *abl.*, 570
 multi et., 850
 Multiplicative numerals, 239
 multo, degree of *difference*, 612;
 abl. of *price*, 618; with *compar.*
 & *superl.*, 706, 707
 muta cum liquĭda, *in prosody*, 863

N.

nam, appended to *interrogatives*,
 263; nam, namque, 854
 Names of men and women, 193-
 196
 Names of towns, Construction of,
 683-686
 Names of verses, 904
 narrāre, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 812
 nasci, w. two *nom.*, 540
 natus, with *acc.*, 678; natu, with
 grandis, 608
 navĭbus, *abl.* of manner, 614
 nĕ, *that not*, 756, 762; after verbs
 of *hindering*, 764; after verbs
 of *fearing*, 761; in *prohibi-*
 tions, 805; ne quis, 723, 762; with
 optative subjunct., 751; with
 concessive subjunct., 753, 769
 nĕ, interrogative particle, 797;
 ne..an, 798; ne..quidem, 564
 nec..nec, 857
 necessariŭs, with *gen.* or *dat.*, 598
 necesse est, with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811
 necne, or not, 798, 803
 necŭbi, 762
 nefas, 181; with *acc.* & *inf.*, 811;
 with *supine*, 847

negāre, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
Negative Conditions (nisi, si non), 789; negative *Imperative*, with **ne**, 752, 805; negative of *Optative* subjunct., **ne**, 751; negative of *Potential* subjunct., non, 750; negative of *Concessive* subjunct., **ne**, 753; negative of *Dubitative* subjunct., non, 754; negative with **partic.**, 834
nemo, 182; equivalent to nullus, 700; **nemo est qui**, with **subjunct.**, 793. **b**
nequam, **indecl.**, 205, 222
neque, *and not*, **neque quisquam**, **neque ullus**, etc., 851; **neque.. neque**, 857
neque is, 715; **neque enim**, &c., 856
nesciūs, w. **gen.**, 567. **1**
Neuter adjectives or pronouns used *adverbially*, 429, 586
Neuter gender, 44; like cases, 55
Neutral passives, 279
neve, with **subjunct.**, 757
nihil, 181; its oblique cases, 700; used *adverbially*, 586; **nihil abest quin**, 766; **nihil antiquiūs habēre quam**, w. **ut**, 758; **nihil est quod**, w. **subjunct.**, 793. **b**; **nihil praetermitto**, **intermitto quin**, 766
nihīli, **gen.** of *value*, 569
nihīlo, **abl.** of *value*, 618
nimis, with **gen.**, 566. **6**
nisi & **si non**, 787, 789; **nisi quis**, 723, 762
niti, with **abl.**, 627; with **ut**, 758
no, 799
nobilitas, used for **nobīles**, 693
nocēre, with **dat.**, 589
noli, with **inf.** in *prohibitions*, 806

nolle, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814
nomen, 194; **nomen est**, w. **dat.**, 594
nomināre, with **two acc.**, 578; **pass.** with **two nom.**, 540
NOMINATIVE, 49; **plur.** in **-īā**, **3d decl.**, 140, 142, 145; in **-ēs**, 157; case of *subject*, 534; of the *predicate*, 540
Nominative with **Infin.**, 821, 822
non quin, with **subjunct.**, 785
non quo, **non quod**, w. **subjunct.**, 785
Nones, in the Roman month, 929
nonne, *interrog. particle*, 797
nostras, *patrial* adjective, 250
nostri, **nostrum**, 566. **3**
Noun, see **Substantive**
Nouns substantive & adjective, 33
-ns, **Nouns** in, **3d decl.**, 127, 128
nubēre, with **dat.**, 589
nudāre, with **abl.**, 622
nudus, with **abl.**, 623
num, 797; **num quis**, 723, 762
Number, 35, 49; of the *predicate*, 541, 542
Numbers & persons of verbs, 293
NUMERALS, 228-242; **numeral** adjectives, 228-233; **num. adverbs**, 241; position, 561
nuntiāre, with **in** & **acc.**, 690; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
-nūs, *suffix*, 501
nusquam, with **gen.**, 566. **6**

O.

-ō, **Nouns** in, **3d decl.**, 85-87; **-ō**, **Greek nouns** in, 152
o, with **acc.** in exclamations, 585
ob, 643; in composition, 526; in compounds with **dat.**, 592
Object, *direct*, 574; *indirect*, 587; of transitive verbs becomes *subject* in **pass.**, 574

Objective genitive, 566. 2
 oblivisci, with **gen.**, 568
 oboedire, with **dat.**, 589
 obsecrāre, with **ut**, 758
 obsistere, obstāre, with **ne**, **quo-**
 mīnus, 764
 obtrectāre, with **dat.**, 589
 odiōsus, with **dat.**, 598
 Official titles to indicate *time*, 692
 -**ōlūs**, *suffix*, 481, 510
 omnes, 726
 -**ōn**, for -**ūm**, *Greek ending*, 2d
 decl., 69; -**ōn**, **gen. pl.**, 3d **decl.**, 156
 onustus, with **abl.**, 623
 opēra alicūjus, to denote the
 agent, 606
 opēram dare, with **ut**, 758
 opinio est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 opiniōne, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
 oportet, w. **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 oppidum, in apposition with na-
 mes of *towns*, 684, 685
 optāre, with **ut**, 758
 Optative subjunctive, 751
 opus, with **supine**, 847; opus est,
 with **abl.**, 624; with **acc.** & **infin.**,
 811
 -**ōr**, Nouns in, 3d **decl.**, 99-101;
 suffix, 489
 -**ōr**, -**ūs**, Adjectives in, 139, 209,
 210
 orāre, with **two acc.**, 580; with **ut**,
 758
 oratio obliqua, 824; or. recta, 823
 orbāre, with **abl.**, 622
 orbus, with **abl.**, 623
 Order of words, 558-565
 Ordinal numerals, 234-236
 ordine, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 Origin, expressed by **abl.**, 604
 Orpheus, 154
 -**ōs**, for -**ūs**, *Greek ending*, 2d **decl.**,

69; -**ōs**, *Latin nouns*, 3d **decl.**,
 115-117; *Greek nouns*, 3d **decl.**,
 153; -**os**, **gen.** 3d **decl.**, 153; **nom.**
 3d **decl.**, 155
 -**ōsūs**, *suffix*, 502
 -**ox**, Nouns in, 3d **decl.**, 135

P.

in pace, **abl.** of *time*, 673
 paenitet, with **acc.** & **gen.**, 584
 par, with **dat.**, 598; with **acc.** &
 inf., 811; par est, *it would be*
 fair, 747

PARADIGM CHARTS, 54, 302

parcēre, with **dat.**, 589
 Parisyllabic nouns, 3d **decl.**, 80
 particeps, with **gen.**, 567. 1

Participial adjectives with **gen.**,
 567. 2

PARTICIPLE, 290, 291; of depo-
 nents, 325; how declined, 198;
 comparison, 227; use of, 829-
 835; used appositively, 833; at-
 tributively, 832; with negative,
 834; in compound **infin.**, 817

Particles, 36

Partitive genitive, 566. 6

Parts of the body in the **plur.**, 696

Parts of speech, 32

parvi, parvo, **gen.** & **abl.** of *value*,
 569, 618

a parvūlo, 691

Passive voice, 271, 276; **pass.**
 tenses how formed, 302, 309;
pass. participles, 830; **passive**
 used *impersonally*, 423; of in-
 transitives, 590; followed by
 dat., 597

paterfamilias, 58

pati, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814

patiens, with **gen.**, 567. 2

Patrial adjectives, 250, 264, 507

Patronymics, 487
 pauci, *defective*, 204
 pedes, in *collective* sense, 698
 pedibus, *abl.* of manner, 614
 pendēre, with *gen.*, 569
penes, 644; quantity, 879. 2
 Pentamēter, 904; Elegiac, 918–921
 Penthemimēres, 912
 penult, 25
per, 645, 674; in composition, 527;
 in compounds with *acc.*, 577; to
 denote the *agent*, 606
PERFECT, 280; its formation, 344;
 tenses formed upon it, 300;
 Perf. Ind. special terminations,
 294; special forms, 333; Perfect
 Infin., 300; Perf. Part., 301; Perf.
 Subjunct., 300; its uses, 737;
 Perf. definite, 737; its *sequence*
 of tenses, 744; in letters, 740
 perficēre, with *ut*, 758
 perfrūi, with *abl.*, 626
 perfungi, with *abl.*, 626
 pergere, with *infin.*, 809
 pericūlum est, with *ut* & *ne*, 761
 Periphrastic conjugation, 311–
 315; uses, 741; Indic., 747
 perire, *pass.* to perdēre, 408
 peritus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 permittēre, with *ut*, 758; with *ge-*
rundive, 841
 Personal endings of the verb, 294
 Personal pronouns, 244–247; not
 expressed, 710; expressed in
acc. with *infin.*, 820
 Persons, 35, 243, 293; names of,
 193–196; with different termi-
 nations, 46
 persuadēre, w. *dat.*, 589; w. *ut*, 758
 petēre, w. *two acc.*, 580; with *ut*, 758
 Pherecratean verse, 925. 3
 Phonetic pronunciation, 9–14

PHONOLOGY, 1, 2–31
 piget, with *acc.* & *gen.*, 584
 Place, Relations of, 682–690
 placēre, with *dat.*, 589
 placet, with *acc.* & *infin.*, 811
 plenus, with *gen.*, 567. 1
 plerique, *defective*, 204
 Pluperfect, 280, 300; use, 738
 Plural, 49; with change of mean-
 ing, 189; wanting, 187; plural
 expressions to be noted, 697;
 of proper names, 699
 Pluralia tantum, 188
 plurimi, *gen.* of *value*, 569
 plurimo, *abl.* of *value*, 618
 plūris, *gen.* of *value*, 569, 619
 plus, 221; without *quam*, 618
POETICAL FORMS, 858–927
 Polysyndeton, 850
 ponēre, with *in* & *abl.*, 689
 porcus, in a *collective* sense, 698
 poscere, with *two acc.*, 580
 Position, in prosody, 862
 Positive, 208; wanting, 224
 Possessive pronoun, 249; not ex-
 pressed, 710; as subjective *gen.*,
 566. 4
 Possessor, *dat.* of, 594
 possum, potēram, *I might, I*
could, 747; with *infin.*, 809
post, 646; to denote distance of
time, 675; in compounds with
dat., 592
 posteritas, used for postēri, 693
 postquam (posteaquam) w. *perf.*,
 737, 773
 postulāre, w. *two acc.*, 580; with
ut, 758
 Potential subjunctive, 750
 potiri, with *gen.* & *abl.*, 626
 potis, pote, 308
 potus & pransus, *active*, 278

prae, 662; in composition, *very*, 531. 3; in compounds with **dat.**, 592

praebēre se, with **acc.**, 578

praecipēre, with **ut**, 758

praedītus, with **abl.**, 623

praenōmen, 194

Praenomens abbreviated, 197

praestāre se, with **acc.**, 578

praeter, 647; in compounds with **acc.**, 577

praetērit, with **acc.**, 583

praetermittēre nihil quin, 766

praetor, for in praetūra, 692

precāri, with **ut**, 758

PREDICATE, 534; its place, 558; its number, 541-543; its gender, 544; with different persons, 545; predicate adjective & substantive in **acc.** & **inf.**, 817; predicate **gen.**, 571; pred. **abl.**, 616

PREPOSITIONS, 32; List of, 443-446; uses, 629-671; with the **acc.**, 629-654; with the **abl.**, 655-664; with the **acc.** & **abl.**, 665-671; place, 563; in composition, 516; assimilation of, 518

PRESENT Indicative, 280; tenses formed upon it, 298; Pres. Subjunct., 298; Pres. Imperat., 299; Pres. Infinitive, tenses formed upon it, 299; Pres. Partic., 298; Present, its uses, 731-734; to express a past action, 733; for the historical perfect, 732; with **dum**, 734

Price, **abl.** of, 617

pridie, with **acc.**, 930

prima pueritiā, 673

Primitive adverbs, 424; primitive verbs, 470; primitive and derivative words, 466

primus, to denote a *part*, 704

Principal clause, 742, in *indirect* discourse, 825

Principal parts of verb, 296; their formation, 339-399

Principal tenses, 743

Principal term of compounds, 512

principio, **abl.** of *time*, 673

prior & primus instead of *ad-verbs*, 550

priusquam, 779, 780

privāre, with **abl.**, 622

pro, 661; its *quantity* in compounds, 884

prodesse, with **dat.**, 589

prodest, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811

prohibēre, with quomīnus, 764

Prohibitions, 805

proinde, 855; proinde ac si, 772

Pronominal adjectives, 269

PRONOUNS, 32, 243-269; special uses, 710-729; personal, 244; reflexive, 248; demonstrative, 252; determinative, 255; relative, 265; interrogative, 260; indefinite, 256; their agreement, 551-557

Pronunciation of Latin, 8

prope, 648

Proper names, 38, 193-197; in **plur.**, 699

propior, propius, with **acc.**, 600

Proportional numerals, 240

proprius, *own*, 567. 3

propter, 649

PROSODY, 858-897; figures of, 887-897

prospicēre, with **ut**, 758

Protāsis, 787

providēre, with **dat.** & **acc.**, 591; with **ut**, 758

providus, compared, 217

proximus, proxime, with **acc.**, 600
-ps, Nouns in, 3d decl., 124–126
-pte, appended to pronouns, 251
 pudet, with **gen.** & **acc.**, 584
 puer, instead of in pueritiā, 691
 in pueritiā, prima pueritiā, 673
 Punishment, **abl.** of, 570
 Purpose, subjunctive of, with **ut**,
 ne, 758; **quo**, 763; with relative,
 792; expressed by **ad** with **gerund**, 845
 putāre, with **gen.**, 569; with **two**
 acc., 578; **pass.** with **two nom.**, 540
 putāres, *potential* subjunctive,
 750
 Pythiambic strophe, 927. 16. 17

Q.

quaerere, with **two acc.**, 580
 Quality, **gen.** of, 566. 5; **abl.** of, 615
 quam, with comparatives, 609;
 regularly *omitted* in relative
 sentences, 610; *omitted* after
 plus, amplius, longius, 610; with
 posse & **superl.**, 707; quam quis-
 quam, ullus, 724; quam qui,
 quam ut, w. **subjunct.**, 795, 759
 quamquam, 771
 quamvis, 768
 quandoquidem, 781
 quanti, **gen.** of value, 659, 619
 QUANTITY, 859–896; general rules,
 28; in compounds, 883; of the
 radical syllable, 865; of middle
 syllables, 866–876; of final syl-
 lables, 877–879; of monosyllab-
 les, 880–882; marks of, 10
 quantumvis, 768
 quantus potuit, with **superl.**, 707
 quasi, 772
 que, 849
 quemadmodum, with **indic.**, 772

Question, 532; direct, 796, 797;
 alternative, 798; question and
 answer, 799; indirect, 801, 802;
 indirect disjunctive, 803; in in-
 direct discourse, 825
 qui, 256; its agreement, 551; =
 cum ego, &c. with **subjunct.** 792;
 = ut ego, &c. with **subjunct.**, 792;
 qui? 720; qui dicitur, 555
 quia, 781
 quidam, 725
 quidem, its place, 564
 quilibet, 726
 quin = qui non in clause of re-
 sult, 765; after verbs of *hinder-*
 ing, 764; after *negative* clau-
 ses, 765
 quippe qui, with **subjunct.**, 791
 quis = quibus, 257
 quis, 720, 723
 quisquam, 724
 quisque, 727
 quisquis, with **indic.**, 748
 quivis, 726
 quo = ut eo, with **subjunct.**, 763
 quoad, w. **indic.** & **subjunct.**, 776–778
 quod, in *explanatory* clauses,
 784; quod, quia, *because*, 781;
 quod, *as to*, 785
 quodsi, 787
 quominus = ut eo minus, 764
 quoniam, *since*, 781
 quoque, 849; its place, 564
 quotiens, with **perf.** & **pluperf.**, 740
 quotquot, with **indic.**, 748
-quus, adjectives in, 219

R.

-r, Nouns in, 3d decl., 94–103; ad-
 jectives, 141
 Radical syllables, quantity of, 865
 ratione, **abl.** of *manner*, 613

-rĕ, for -rīs in the *pass.*, 335
rĕ-, rĕd-, inseparable prep., 516
 READING-CHARTS, 8
 Reciprocal, how expressed, 640
 recordāri, with *gen.*, 568
 recusāre, w. *ne* & *quomīnus*, 764
 reddĕre, with *two acc.*, 578
 redimĕre, with *abl.*, 617
 Reduplicated perfects, 349, 361,
 370; quantity of, 867
 Reduplication in compounds, 349,
 361
 refert, with *gen.*, 572
 refertus, with *abl.*, 623
 Reflexive pronouns, 248, 711; in
 indirect discourse, 828
 Reflexive verb, 275
 Relative pronoun, 256-259; agree-
 ment, 551, 552; relative for de-
 monstr. at the *beginning* of
 sentence, 556; in *abl.* of *compa-*
 rison, 610; *never* omitted, 557;
 place, 562; general relatives w.
 indic., 748; relative clauses with
 subjunct., 791-795
 relinquĕre, with *two acc.*, 578; with
 dat. of *purpose*, 595; with *ge-*
 rundive, 841
 reliquus, to denote a *part*, 704;
 reliquum est, ut, 759
 reminisci, with *gen.*, 568
 reperiuntur qui, w. *subjunct.*, 793. b
 replĕre, with *abl.*, 622
 resistĕre, with *dat.*, 589
 respondĕre, with *acc. & inf.*, 812
 Responsives, 799
 restat, with *ut*, 759
 Result, *subjunct.* of, with *conjunc-*
 tions, 759, 760
 retinĕri non possum quin, 766
 reum facĕre, with *gen.*, 570
 Rhythm, 900; Ionic, 927. 19

Rhythmical feet, 902
 ridĕre, with *acc.*, 575
-rīmūs, superl. ending, 213
 ritu, *abl.* of *manner*, 613
 Rivers, gender of names of, 40
 rogāre, with *two acc.*, 580; with
 ut, 758
 rogātu, *abl.* of *cause*, 604
 Roman method of pronunciation,
 9-14
 Root, 467, 468
-rs, Nouns in, 3d decl., 127
 rus, like name of *town*, 686

S.

-s, Nouns in, 3d decl., 103-128; ad-
 jectives in, 141
 salutāris, with *dat.*, 598
 Sapphic stanza, 927. 2. 3; verse,
 925. 5. 6
 satiāre, with *abl.*, 622
 satis, with *gen.*, 566. 6
 Scanning, 913
 scire, w. *inf.*, 809; scito for *sci*,
 338
-scō, Inceptives in, 391
 scribĕre, with *acc. & inf.*, 812
se-, sed-, inseparable prep., 516;
 compounds of *se* with *ā & abl.*,
 621
 secernĕre, with *ā & abl.*, 621
 Second Conjugation; *Active*, 318;
 Passive, 319; *Deponent*, 328:
 Verbs of, 351-364
 Second Declension, 63-77
 secundum, 650
 secus ac, 849
 sed, 853
 sejungĕre, with *ā & abl.*, 621
 Semi-deponents, 277, 278; 2d con-
 jug., 363; 3d conjug., 373
 in senectūte, 673

senex, instead of in senectūte, 691; compared, 224
Sentence, 532, 533; of result, sequence of tenses, 745
sententia mea, 608
sentire, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 812
separāre, with **ā** & **abl.**, 621
Separation, **abl.** of, 620
Sequence of tenses, 742-746; in sentences of result, 745; in sentences of comparison, 772
sequitur, with **ut**, 759
sescenti, *indefinitely*, 233
sestertius, sestertium, 938, 939
Short vowels, 10, 861
si, with **indic.** & **subjunct.**, 787; si quis, 723, 762
si modo, 790
si non & nisi, 787, 789
sic ut, 759
sicut, with **indic.**, 772
silentio, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
similis, **superl.** 215; with **dat.** or **gen.**, 598, 600
Simple feet, 902; simple forms of verb, 298-302; simple verse, 903
simulac, simulatque, 773; with **perf.**, 737, 740
sin, 787
sine, 664; sine, w. quisquam, ullus, 724
sinere, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822
Singular, 49; used for the plural, 698; wanting, 188
Singularia tantum, 187
singuli, *defective*, 204
siquidem, *since*, 781
sitire, with **acc.**, 575
sive, 852; sive..sive, w. **indic.**, 748
Small islands, Names of, 683
so-called, qui dicitur, 555

solito, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
solus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a
-sor, *suffix*, 489
Space, Relation of, 679-681
spe, **abl.** of *comparison*, 611
Special Forms in conjugation, 333-338
Specification, **gen.** of, 566. 7
id spectare, with **ut**, 758
spes est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
spoliare, with **abl.**, 622
Spondaic Hexameter, 914
Stanza, 926; stanzas of Horace, 927
stare, *cost*, with **abl.**, 617
statuere, with **in** & **abl.**, 689; with **inf.**, 809
STEM, 52, 468; in the 5 declensions, 53; 1st decl., 56; 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 79; 4th decl., 171; 5th decl., 176; in the 4 conjugations, 295; in **a**, 340; in **e**, 341; in **i**, 342; in **u** (**v**), 343, 365-367; in consonants, 365-396; in **d**, **t**, 369-374; in **b**, **p**, 375, 376; in **c**, **g**, **q**, **h**, **ct**, 377-384; in **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, 385-389; in **s**, **x**, (**cs**), 390; in **sc**, 391-395
Stem-words, 466
Strophe, *see* Stanza
studere, with **dat.**, 589
studiōsus, with **gen.**, 567. 1
suadere, w. **dat.**, 589; w. **ut**, 758
sub, 666-667; in composition, 528; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592
SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, 534, 535; place, 558; adjuncts, 558
Subjective genitive, 566. 1; as predicate, 571
SUBJUNCTIVE, 283; of the future tenses wanting, 746; uses, 749-803; with conjunctions, 755-790; with relatives, 791-795; in

indirect questions, 801-803; to express the thought of some other person, 794, 827; in causal clauses, 782

Subordinating conjunctions, 454-462; uses, 755-790

Subordination of sentences, 742

Substantiva mobilia, 46

SUBSTANTIVES, 32, 37, 38; gender, 39-48; number, 49; declensions, 51-192; indeclinable, 181; defective, 182-186; heteroclitics, 190; heterogeneous, 191; derived from adjectives, 488; derived from substantives, 480-487; derived from verbs, 489-495; used as adjectives, 206; substantive predicate, 536; with **dat.**, 601; special uses, 691-700; in **abl. absol.**, 836

subter, 669

Suffixes, 469

sui, sibi, se, 711; w. quisque, 727

sumere, with **two acc.**, 578

summus, *top of*, 704

sunt qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. b

super, 668; in compounds w. **dat.**, 592

superbus, with **abl.**, 604

superlative, 211; its declension, 212; with the force of *very*, 705; strengthened, 707; wanting, 224; requires more than two objects, 709

SUPINE, 292, 344; tenses formed upon it, 301; its uses, 847; its equivalents, 848; not changed in **acc. & inf.**, 817

supplicare, with **dat.**, 589

supra, 651

-**sūrā**, *suffix*, 494

-**sūs** & -**tūs**, Nouns in, 4th decl., 183; *suffixes*, 493

suus, its use, 711

Syllables, 21-25; long & short, 860, 861, 899; long by position, 862; common, 863; middle, 866-876; final, 877-879; syllaba anceps, 908

Synaëresis, 890, 891

Syncöpe, 893

SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSIONS, 54

SYNOPSIS OF TENSES, 298-302

SYNTAX, 1, 532-857

Systöle, 895

T.

-**t**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 129

taedet, with **acc. & gen.**, 584

talis, 269; talis qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a; talis ut, with **subjunct.**, 759

tam w. **adject. & qui**, 793. a

tam w. **adject. & ut**, 759

tamen, 853

tametsi, 771

tamquam, 772

tanti, tantidem, **gen. of value**, 569, 619

tantum abest, **ut. . ut**, 760

tantus qui, with **subjunct.**, 793. a; tantus ut, with **subjunct.**, 759

-**tē**, appended to pronouns, 251

temperare, with various cases, 591; temperare mihi non possum quin, 766

templum, *omitted*, 566. 9

Temporal conjunctions, 455; uses, 773-780

in tempore, temporibus, 673

TENSES, 35, 280; formation of, 298-302; *principal* and *historical*, 743; uses, 730-741; sequence of tenses, 742-746; tenses of the **inf.**, 818, 819; tenses in letters, 741

tenus, 663

-**tēr**, Nouns in, 3d decl., 96, 97
 terra marique, 688
 Tetramēter, 904
 Tetrastich, 926
that & those, not expressed in Latin, 716
 Thesis, 900
 Third Conjugation, *Active*, 320; *Passive*, 321; *Deponent*, 329; in -**īō** (appendix), 331, 332; *Verbs* of, 365-396
 Third Declension, 78-170
 Time, Relation of, 672-678; for how long, 677; how long, 674; how long *before*, 675; how long *since*, 674; when, 672, 673; with- in which, 676
 timēre, with *ut*, *ne*, 761
 -**tīō**, *suffix*, 493
 Tmesis, 897
 -**tōr**, *suffix*, 490, 491
 totus, 202; nouns with, in *abl.* with- out *prep.*, 687
 Towns, Names of, Gender, 42; con- struction of, 683
trans, 652; in composition, 529; in compounds with *acc.*, 577
 Transitive verbs, 271; transitive & intransitive, 575
 Trees, Gender of names of, 42
 Trimēter, 904; Iambic, 922-924
 trini, for terni, 238
 Tristich, 926
 Trithemimēres, 912
 -**trix**, *suffix*, 492
 Trochaic strophe, 927. 18
 -**trūm**, *suffix*, 495
 -**tūrā**, *suffix*, 493
 turpis, with *dat.*, 598
 -**tūs**, *suffix*, 493

U.

u & v, but *one* character, 2, 891
u, Stems, 3d decl., 79; 3d conjug., 343
 -**ū**, Nouns in, 4th decl., 171
 ubi, with *gen.*, 566. 6; *when*, 773; ubi, ubi primum, with *perf.*, 737
 -**ūbūs**, *dat. & abl. pl.*, 4th decl., 172
 ullus, 202; its use, 724
 ultīma, 25
 ultīmus, to denote a *part*, 704
 ultor, ultrix, *adject.*, 206
 ultra, 654
 -**ūlūm**, *suffix*, 494
 -**ūlūs**, *suffix*, 480, 499, 510
 -**ūm**, *suffix*, 489
 -**ūm**, for -**ārūm**, -**ōrūm**, 1st & 2d decl., 68; -**ūm**, *gen. pl.* of *ad-* *ject.*, 3d decl., 147
 -**undī**, -**undūs**, for -**endi**, -**en-** **dus**, 337
 Unit of measure, 899
 unus, 202; in the plur., 229; in- stead of singuli, 238; unus om- nīum, with *superl.*, 707; unus qui, * with *subjunct.*, 793. a
 unusquisque, 267; its use, 726
 -**ūō**, Verbs in, 1st conjug., 365
 -**ūr**, Nouns in, 2d decl., 66; 3d decl., 102, 103
 urbs, in *apposition* with names of towns, 684, 685
 -**ūrīō**, Verbs in, 473
 -**us**, Nouns in, 2d decl., 63; 3d decl., 118-122; 4th decl., 171
 -**ūs**, -**ā**, -**ūm**, Adjectives in, 72
ut, *comparat.*, 772; *final & con-* *secutive*, 756-761; *concessive*, 769; *temporal*, 773; *as soon* *as*, 737
ut primum, 773; with *perf.*, 737
ut si, w. *subjunct.*, 772
uti, with *abl.*, 626

utīlis, with **dat.** or **ad** & **acc.**, 598;
 with **gerund** & **gerundive**, 844; **uti-**
lius fuit, 747
 utīnam, with **subjunct.**, 751
 utpōte qui, with **subjunct.**, 792. II
 utrum, 797; utrum. .an, 798
 -ūtūs, *suffix*, 503
 -ux, Nouns in, 3d decl., 136

V.

vacāre, with **abl.**, 622
 vacūus, with **abl.**, 623
 Value, in the **gen.**, 569, 619; in the
abl., 618
 vapulāre, **neutral pass.**, 279
 ve, 852
 vel, 852; with **superl.**, 707
 velle, with **inf.** or **acc.** & **inf.**, 809,
 814
 velut si, with **subjunct.**, 772
 vendēre, w. **abl.**, 617; bene, male, 619
 venēo, **pass.** to vendēre, 408
 venīre, with **dat.** of *purpose*, 595
 Verba sentiendi et declarandi, 812
 Verbal nouns & adjectives, 286-
 292
 Verbal inceptives, 392-394
 Verbal predicate, 536
 VERBS, 32, 270-423; voices, 271;
 tenses, 280; moods, 281; finite
 verb, 285; persons, 293; conju-
 gations, 295; formation of the
 tenses, 298; verb-stem, 295; for-
 mation of the principal parts,
 339; of the 1st conjug., 346-349;
 of the 2d conjug., 351-364; of the
 3d conjug., 365-396; of the 4th
 conjug., 397-399; in -īō, 3d con-
 jug., 331, 368; compounded
 with *prepositions*, 516; derived
 from *verbs*, 471-474; derived
 from *subst.* & *adj.*, 475-479;

place, 558; SYNTAX, 730-848;
 Verbs of *reminding*, *remem-*
bering, *forgetting* with **gen.**,
 568; of *accusing*, *convicting*,
condemning, *acquitting*, with
gen., 570; of *valuing*, with **gen.**,
 569; of *naming*, *making*, *tak-*
ing, *choosing*, with **two accus.**,
 578; of *asking*, *demanding*,
requesting, *inquiring*, with
two acc., 580; of *benefitting*,
pleasing, *obeying*, *command-*
ing &c., with **dat.**, 589; of *giving*
 & *putting*, with **dat.**, 593; of *buy-*
ing & *selling*, with **abl.**, 617; of
removing, *abstaining*, with
abl., 620; of *plenty* & *want*, *fil-*
ling and *depriving*, with **abl.**,
 622; of *placing*, with **in** & **abl.**,
 689; of *assembling*, with **in** &
acc., 690; of *willing*, *wishing*,
warning, *beseeching*, *urging*,
demanding, *resolving*, *endea-*
voring, *forcing*, *permitting*,
 with **ut** & **ne**, 758; of *wishing*,
desiring, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 814; of
fearing, with **ut**, **ne**, 761; of *hin-*
dering, with **quomīnus**, 764; of
emotion, *joy*, *grief*, with **quod**,
 783; with **acc.** & **inf.**, 815; verbs
signifying to be able, *must*, *dare*,
begin, *continue*, *cease*, *be accu-*
stomed, *learn*, *wish*, *desire*,
resolve, with **infin.**, 809; verbs
 of *perceiving*, with **pres. part.**,
 813, 835; of *perceiving* and *de-*
claring, with **acc.** & **infin.**, 812;
 with **nom.** & **inf.**, 821
 verēri, with **ut** & **ne**, 761
 vero, verum, 853, 564; place, 564
 Verses, 898; names of, 904; com-
 pound, 903; simple, 903

VERSIFICATION, 898 ff.
 versus, 653
 vertēre, with **dat.** of purpose, 595
 verum, vero, 564, 853
 verum est, with **acc.** & **inf.**, 811
 vesci, with **abl.**, 626
 vestis, in a *collective* sense, 698
 vestras, *patrial* **adject.**, 250
 vestrum & vestri, 566. 3
 vetāre, with **acc.**, 589; with **acc.** & **infin.**, 814; with **nom.** & **inf.**, 822
 vetus, *superl.*, 240
 vi, vi et armis, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 via, *without prep.*, 688
 via et ratiōne, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
 vicinītas = vicīni, 693
 vicīnus, with **dat.** & **gen.**, 598
 victor, victrix, *adjectives*, 206
 vidēre, with **ut**, 758; with **acc.** & **infin.**, 812; with **pres. part.**, 813, 835
 vidēres, *potential* **subjunct.**, 750
 vidēri, with **two nom.**, 540; with **nom.** & **infin.**, 822
 vis, 114; per vim, 645
 visu, 848
 vix, with **quisquam**, **ullus**, 724
 vocāre, with **two acc.**, 578; vocāri, with **two nom.**, 540

Vocative, 49; of nouns in **-iūs**, **2d decl.**, 67; in **3d decl.**, 154
 Voices, 35, 271-279
 voluntāte, **abl.** of *manner*, 614
-vōiūs, *Adjectives* in, 216
 Vowel-changes in *compound verbs*, 517
 Vowels, 4
 Vowel-stems, in **decl.**, 79, 80; in **conjug.**, 339, 344
 vox, with **gen.**, 566. 7

W.

w, not in Latin, 2
 Way by which, **abl.**, 688
 Week, Days of the, 936
 Weights, Roman, 942
 Winds, Gender of names of, 40
without, with **partic.** 834
 Women, Names of, 196
 Word-formation, 1, 465-531

X.

-x, Nouns in, **3d decl.**, 130, 131, 141

Y.

-y, Nouns in, of Greek origin, 88
 Year, Date of, 935
 yes, 799
 -ys, Nouns in, 154

STEIGER'S German Series.

AHN'S German Primer. Edited by W. GRAUERT. Boards \$0.45.

AHN'S German Reading Charts. 25 Plates with Hand-book for Teachers. By Dr. P. HENN. \$1.00.

The same. The 25 Plates mounted on 13 boards. \$1.50 net. Varnished \$6.00 net.

AHN'S German Script Charts. 4 Plates mounted on 4 boards, varnished \$1.25 net.

AHN'S First German Book. By Dr. P. HENN. (Exercises in Reading, Writing, Translation, and Conversation. Printed in bold type and containing a very large amount of German Script. Designed for the lowest two grades.) Boards \$0.25.

AHN'S Second German Book. By Dr. P. HENN. (Exercises in Reading, Writing, Translation, and Conversation. Containing much German Script. With Dialogues, Paradigms, Vocabularies [with the pronunciation of all German words], Conversational Exercises, Uncommon Styles of German Type, and Specimens of German Business Handwriting.) Boards \$0.45, Half Roan \$0.60.

These two books together form :

AHN'S Rudiments of the German Language. By Dr. P. HENN. First Course. Boards \$0.65, Half Roan \$0.80.

**Key* to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Third German Book. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.45, Half Roan \$0.60.

**Key* to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Fourth German Book. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80.

**Key* to same. Boards \$0.25 net.

AHN'S Rudiments of the German Language. By Dr. P. HENN. Second Course. (This contains AHN-HENN's *Third* and *Fourth German Books* together.) Boards \$1.00, Half Roan \$1.25.

AHN'S Complete Method of the German Language. By Dr. P. HENN. (AHN-HENN's *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and *Fourth German Books* together.) Strongly bound in Half Roan \$1.75.

AHN'S Synopsis of German Grammar. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60. Half Roan \$0.80.

AHN'S First German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80.

The same. With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$0.60, Half Roan \$0.80.

**Key* to same. Boards \$0.30 net.

AHN'S Second German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. By Dr. P. HENN. Boards \$1.00, Half Roan \$1.20.

The same. With Foot-notes and Vocabulary. Boards \$1.00, Half Roan \$1.20.

-*Key* to same. Boards \$0.50 net.

[* These *Keys* will be supplied to teachers only upon their direct application to the publishers]

AHN'S German Dialogues. Dramatic Selections. Number One. Boards \$0.25, Cloth \$0.35.

AHN'S Rudiments of the German Language. (Old Edition of 1870.) Boards \$0.35.

AHN'S Method of Learning the German Language. Revised by GUSTAVUS FISCHER. First Course, Boards \$0.50.—Second Course, Boards \$0.50.—Both Courses bound together, Half Roan \$1.00.

Key to same. Boards \$0.30 net.

AHN'S New Practical and Easy Method of Learning the German Language. With Pronunciation by J. C. OEHLSCHLÄGER. Edition of 1873. First Course. (Practical Part.) Boards \$0.60.—Second Course. (Theoretical Part.) Boards \$0.40.

AHN'S First German Reader. With Notes by W. GRAUERT. Boards \$0.50.—*Second German Reader.* With Notes and Vocabulary by W. GRAUERT. Boards \$0.70.—The two *Readers* bound together, Half Roan \$1.20.

Key to **AHN-GRAUERT'S First German Reader.** Boards \$0.30 net.—to *Second German Reader*, Boards \$0.35 net.

AHN'S German Handwriting. With Notes by W. GRAUERT. Boards \$0.40.

AHN'S Manual of German Conversation. Revised by W. GRAUERT. Cloth \$1.00.

AHN-OEHLSCHLÄGER'S Pronouncing Method of the German Language. Designed for Instruction in Schools, and for Private Study. (Edition of 1880.) First Course: *Exercises, Reader, Pronouncing Vocabularies, Conversations, Collections of Words, etc.* Boards \$0.80, Half Roan \$1.00.—Second Course: *Synopsis of German Grammar.* Boards \$0.40, Half Roan \$0.60.—Both Courses bound together, Boards \$1.15, Half Roan \$1.40.

Key to same. Boards \$0.40 net.

GRAUERT'S Manual of the German Language. First Part, Boards \$0.40.—Second Part, Boards \$0.40.—Both together, Boards \$0.70, Half Roan \$0.90.

REFFELT'S First Book for School and House. With Vocabulary. Boards \$0.30.

REFFELT'S Second Book for School and House. With Vocabulary. Bds. \$0.50.

Collegiate Course.

SCHLEGEL'S German Grammar for Beginners. Half Roan \$1.25.

SCHLEGEL'S First Classical German Reader. With Notes and Vocabulary. Half Roan \$1.00.—*Second Classical German Reader.* With Notes and Vocabulary. Half Roan \$1.50.

E. Steiger & Co., 25 Park Place, New York.

German in the Public Schools.

The AHN-HENN German Course with its **alternating exercises for translation** meets the expectations of the friends of German instruction, while at the same time it answers the objections of all opponents.

The AHN-HENN books **combine all the qualities** needed to make the **study of German easy and popular**, and for this reason the series has been adopted for use in the Public Schools of very many of our leading cities. No other method enables School-Boards to retain the study of German without an accompanying increase of expense and **no other method** can present so many acceptable arguments in favor of the continued study of the language in the **Public Schools**.

I prefer AHN's method, because it introduces the learner to language before it discourages him with the complicated difficulties of technical grammar. This method has reason and nature on its side, and is growing in favor among progressive educators. In —'s books this method seems to be reversed, and the young learner is precipitated at once into the intricacies of grammar. The exercises in the AHN books seem to me to be far more practical and satisfactory than those given by —.

The exercises in AHN's books in letter-writing, business forms, advertisements, German script, etc., are very valuable. These matters are almost entirely omitted in —'s books. For these and other reasons I decidedly prefer the AHN series.

(J. M. B. SILL, Supt. of Schools, Detroit, Mich.)

We have been using the AHN-HENN German series for some three years. Our children are doing excellent work in the language by the use of this series.

(W. W. JAMIESON, Supt. of Schools, Keokuk, Iowa.)

It gives me great pleasure to certify to the uniform excellence of AHN-HENN's French and German text-books after a use of them since their first publication. I recommend them unhesitatingly as the best books for class use.

(J. C. JONES, Supt. of Schools, East Saginaw, Mich.)

We, last year, began the introduction of your German series — the AHN-HENN method — and we are so pleased with it that we shall, as fast as we can work out the old books, substitute this. Thus far the series has given eminent satisfaction.

(CHAS. C. SNYDER, Supt. of Schools, Freeport, Ill.)

We use your AHN-HENN series of German Books. I consider it the best course for our Public Schools.

(THOS. W. HUBBARD, Supt. of Schools, Perrysburg, O.)

I desire to tell you of my own free will that I have used the AHN-HENN German Course over two years and that I consider it without a rival as a text-book for common schools.

(WM. McK. BLAKE, Supt. of Schools, New Castle, Ind.)

We are using very successfully AHN-HENN's German Method, which we prefer to any other work we have seen.

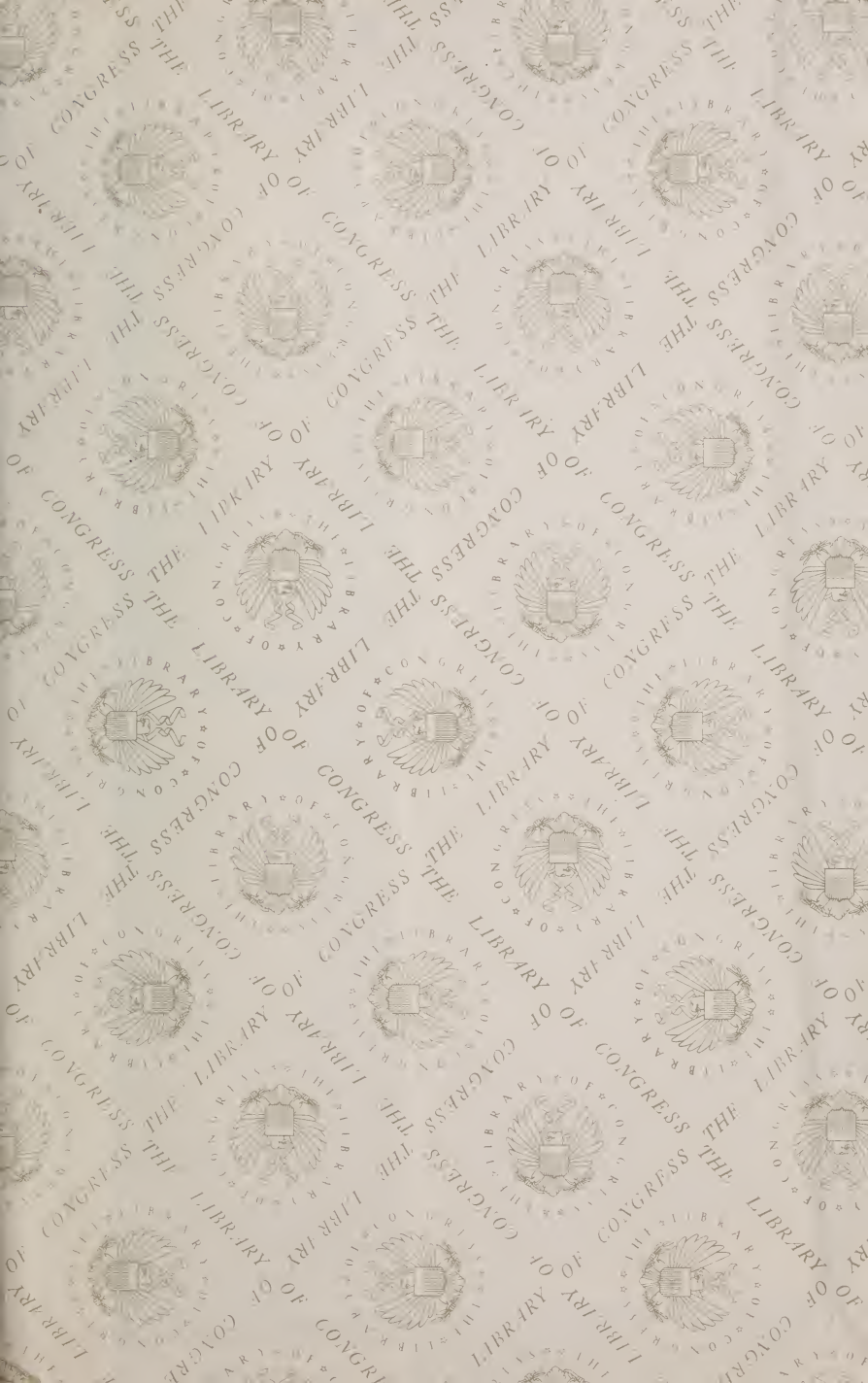
(W. W. SHARPE, Prin. Orwell Normal Institute, Orwell, O.)

We have concluded to use AHN's German Series in the Mansfield Normal College. The books are prepared on a rational basis, and merit a general introduction. (J. FRAISE RICHARD, President Mansfield Normal College, Mansfield, O.)

Many similar testimonials have been sent to the Publishers. More significant, however, is the fact that after several years' trial the AHN-HENN German Text-books are being used in **constantly increasing quantities** in the Public Schools of New York, Hoboken, Buffalo, Cleveland, Sandusky, Detroit, San Francisco, Rochester, Hartford, Dubuque, Louisville, Galena, Davenport, Kansas City, La Crosse, Elmira, Pittsburg, Elizabeth, Newark, Wheeling, Worcester, Indianapolis, as also in those of hundreds of smaller cities, **other books being discarded** entirely.

4006





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 039 945 6

